MINT YARD
York

York: Gateway to history - Conservation Management Plan

LOTTERY FUNDED

Simpson & Brown *Architects*
With Addyman Archaeology

August 2012

Contents **Page**

1.0 EXECUTIVE SUMMARY 3

2.0 INTRODUCTION 11
2.1 Objectives of the Conservation Plan 11
2.2 Study Area 11
2.3 Heritage Designations 13
2.4 Structure of the Report 13
2.5 Adoption & Review 14
2.6 Other Studies 15
2.7 Limitations 15
2.8 Orientation 15
2.9 Project Team 15
2.10 Acknowledgements 16
2.11 Abbreviations and Definitions 16

3.0 UNDERSTANDING THE MINT YARD 17
3.1 Introduction 17
3.2 The Roman fortress (cAD71-c400) 17
3.3 Anglian and Anglo-Scandinavian (l.C6th - Conquest) 21
3.4 The medieval hospital of St Leonard's and the city's defences 22
3.5 13th century – early 14th century expansion 29
3.6 The post-Reformation period – c.1675 31
3.7 Later 17th century – early 19th century 33
3.8 Antiquarianism and civic improvement (1683-late 19th century) 36
3.9 20th century - present 38
3.10 Summary Chronology – Historical Development 60

4.0 GAZETTEER OF HERITAGE ASSETS: BUILDINGS & STRUCTURES 65
4.1 Introduction 65
4.2 Multangular Tower, fortress wall to SE and associated features 69
4.3 St Leonard's Hospital ruin 89
4.4 City Wall and Roman fortress wall from Multangular Tower to rear of number 8 St Leonard's Place, with the Anglian Tower 101
4.5 Later structures and features within the inner site area 125
4.6 Central Library (York Explore) 133
4.7 Wider medieval topography of St Leonard's Hospital 149
4.8 1-9 St Leonard's Place 151
4.9 2 and 4 Museum Street 153

5.0 GAZETTEER OF HERITAGE ASSETS: OPEN SPACE CHARACTER AREAS 155
5.1 Introduction 155
A Library Square 157
B Library Lawn 159
C Between the city walls and the Kings' Manor 161
D Rear of the library within the city walls 163
E Lane to the north east of the library 165
F Museum Gardens 167

6.0 ASSESSMENT OF HERITAGE VALUE 171
6.1 Introduction 171
6.2 Evidential Value 172
6.3 Historical Value 178
6.4 Aesthetic Value 187
6.5 Communal Value 193

6.6 Summary Matrix 200
6.7 Summary of Significance 202

7.0 CONSERVATION ISSUES 209
7.1 Introduction 209
7.2 Statutory & Non-Statutory Constraints 210
7.3 Ownership, Management & Use 215
7.4 Condition 216
7.5 Archaeological Issues 219
7.6 Collections and Archives 223
7.7 Vulnerability matrix 225

8.0 CONSERVATION POLICIES 227
8.1 Introduction 227
8.2 Resolution, Vision & Adoption 227
8.3 Conservation Theory and Practice 228
8.4 Retention of Significance 233
8.5 Polices for York Explore building 235
8.6 Policies for Collections 247
8.7 Policies for ruins of St Leonard's Hospital 247
8.8 Policies for other buildings and structures 250
8.9 Materials 258
8.10 Views 266
8.11 Archaeology 266
8.12 Access, Interpretation and Management 267

Appendix 1 - Bibliography 273

1.0 EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This conservation plan was initiated to inform design decisions in the city archives project, which is intended to move the York City Archives to the former York Central Library, now called York Explore. The relocation of the archives to the library is a logical step and it offers an opportunity to carry out works to the existing listed building which could both enhance its significance by works of repair and restoration, and also improve the way that it is interpreted and understood.

The York Explore building was built at the centre of an area of great historical significance for the history of York. The site is known as the Mint Yard, a name that stems from the use of former monastic buildings, dissolved during the Dissolution, by the Royal Mint. Its importance is indicated by the large proportion of the site and its structures which are a Scheduled Ancient Monument. Many of the buildings are also listed Grade I, with others at Grade II* and II. The site is also adjacent to the Museum Gardens which are a Registered Park and Garden. Each of the elements that make up the Mint Yard area has been assessed in detail, through visual inspection and documentary research.

The heritage value of the site as a whole has been assessed following English Heritage's *Conservation Principles* guidance (2008). The evaluation of heritage values leads to a conclusion that the site is of the highest category of significance. From this assessment, the issues and risks affecting values and significance of the site have been identified, and a series of policies developed to sensitively manage change in the site in the future.

The key conclusions are that all the buildings and structures on the site should be considered strategically, as a single entity. The future of the most significant elements is important and should be prioritised. These most important elements include the ruins of the Roman walls, Anglian Tower, and the medieval St Leonard's Hospital.

To ensure the best survival of these elements into the future, apart from ensuring appropriate and regular maintenance and repair, solutions range from consolidation, and protecting parts of them from the effects of the weather, to potential new uses and more architectural solutions. It is vital that these are of the highest possible design quality, and that every step is monitored and recorded by archaeologists.

Additionally, storage conditions in the library itself should be improved, and the interiors enhanced to meet modern requirements with original features restored where appropriate. In general, it is important that interpretation is improved across the site.

Figure 1 Oblique aerial view from the south showing the Mint Yard site, with the Yorkshire Museum and Museum Gardens to the left, the King's Manor above, and St Leonard's Place to the right. *bing.com/maps*

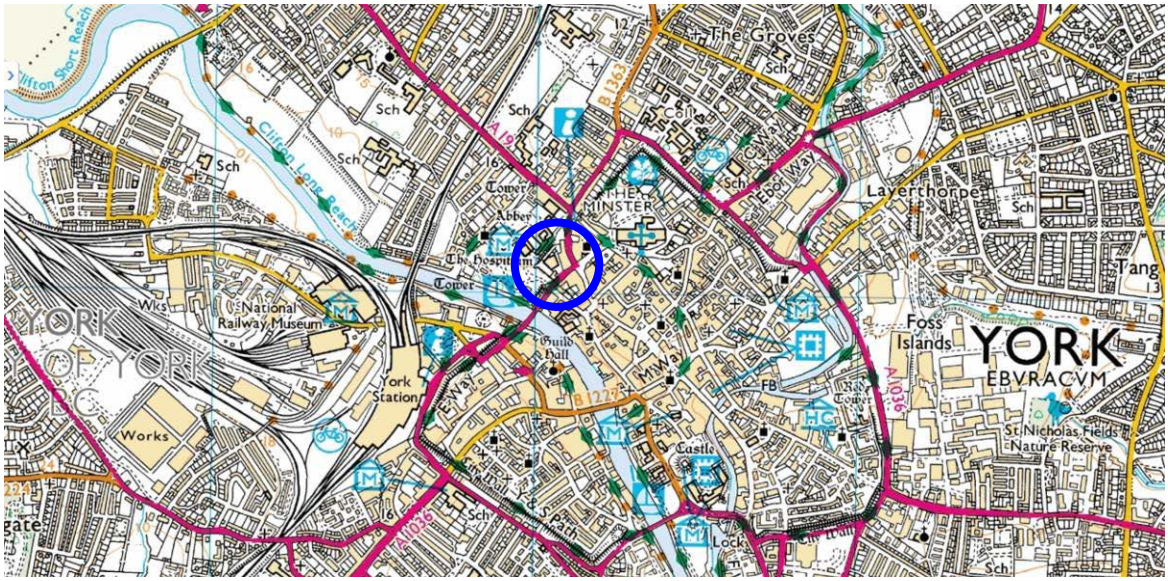


Figure 2 Extract from the Ordnance Survey Explorer series (1:25,000) with site circled. *Ordnance Survey © Crown copyright. All rights reserved. Licence number 100006772*

Figure 3 The York Explore building seen from the ruined vaults of St Leonard's Hospital. *S&B*

Figure 4 A fragment of the Roman fortress walls next to St Leonard's Hospital. *S&B*

Figure 5 Vertical satellite view, showing the Mint Yard area circled. *Bing.com/maps*

Figure 6 The Multangular Tower, the surviving south west corner of the Roman fortress. *S&B*

Figure 7 The interior of the Multangular Tower, with the 13th century upper addition. *S&B*

Figure 8 The most extensive stretch of the Roman fortress wall, from the Museum Gardens, with the Multangular Tower on the left. The masonry patch by the left hand tree may be a repair after a canon ball impact during the English Civil War. *S&B*

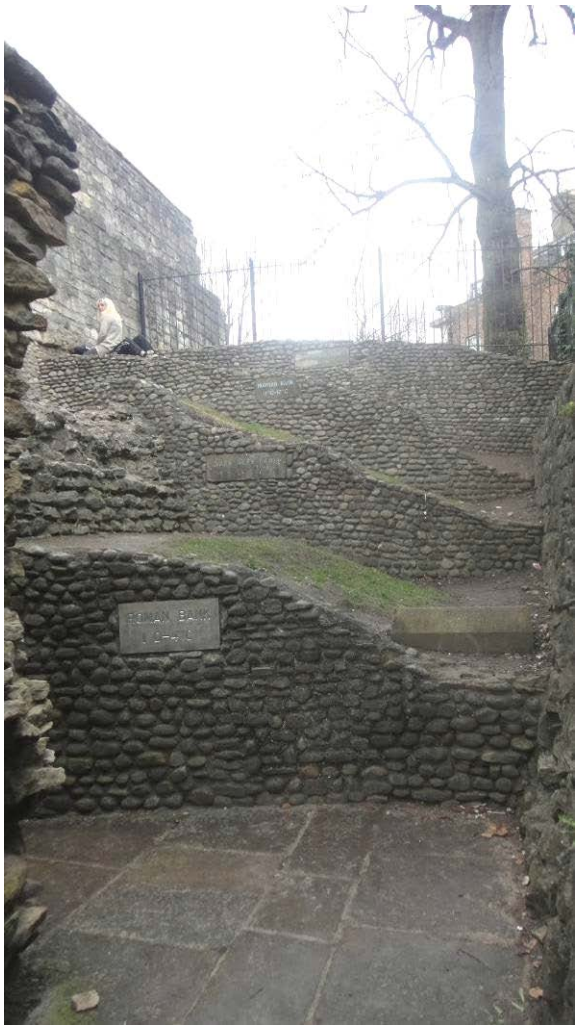


Figure 9 1970s interpretation of the successive Roman, Viking, and medieval ramparts. S&B

Figure 10 The excavated area of the ramparts, which once covered the Anglian Tower. S&B

Figure 11 The Anglian Tower, from the sub or post Roman period, buried c.800 and unearthed in the 1960s. *S&B*

Figure 12 The narrow path between the Roman wall on the right, and the 1960s underpinning of the medieval city walls on the left, looking north east. S&B

Figure 13 The 13th century City Walls, running down to the Multangular Tower, including the upper extension of the Multangular Tower. The buttresses were possibly robbed in the late 18th century. *S&B*

Figure 14 13th century south west façade of St Leonard's Hospital. *S&B*

Figure 15 Vaulted undercroft of St Leonard's Hospital. *S&B*

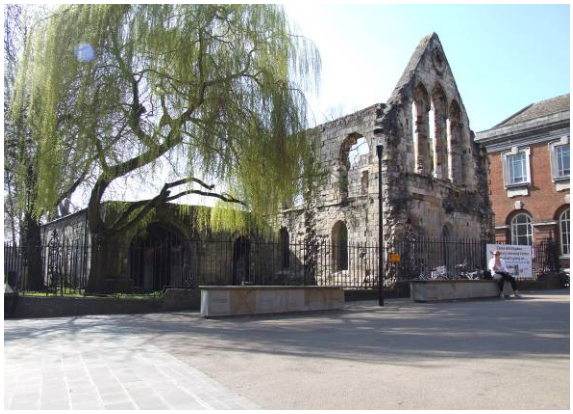


Figure 16 The north east elevation of St Leonard's Hospital, with the vaulted entrance passage on the left and the chapel on the right. *S&B*

Figure 17 Looking north east, up the lane that connected St Leonard's Hospital to its watergate. The visual connection was lost in the 19th century, with the laying out of Museum Gardens. *S&B*

Figure 18 St Leonard's Place looking north. The area was cleared in the early 1830s of small houses, stables, lanes and yards that had developed in the 18th century. The street was cut through, but the terrace of palace-façade houses was not begun until the mid 1830s. *S&B*

Figure 19 Nos. 2 & 4 Museum Street, built in the mid 1850s, and intended to look like a grand symmetrical house. The door to no. 2 is tucked in on the right. *S&B*

Figure 20 The remaining mews buildings that express the character of how the Mint Yard area appeared in the early 19th century. *S&B*

Figure 21 The south west façade of the York Explore building built in the late 1930s. The building, the Central Library, was begun around the end of the First World War, and built in stages, completed in the late 1930s. *S&B*

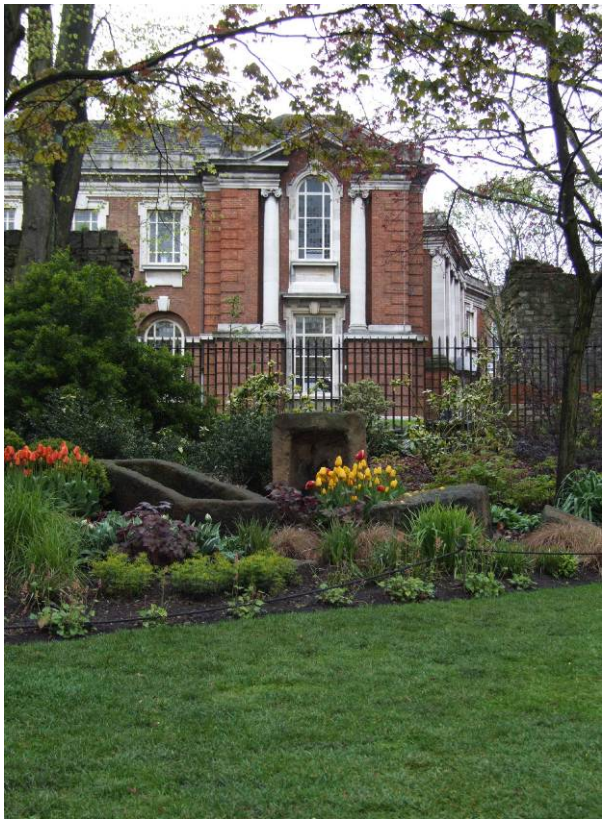


Figure 22 The south west elevation of York Explore, from the Museum Gardens, which were laid out from the 1830s. *S&B*

Figure 23 The lower entrance hall of York Explore from one of the landings of the stair. *S&B*

Figure 24 The main non-fiction library of York Explore. *S&B*

Figure 25 The upper entrance hall, looking down the staircase. *S&B*

Figure 26 The glass dome over the upper entrance hall, seen through the oculus from the lower entrance hall. *S&B*

Figure 27 South east entrance elevation. S&B

Figure 28 Urban York. View looking north east up Museum Street, the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital on the left. *S&B*

2.0 INTRODUCTION

2.1 Objectives of the Conservation Plan

This conservation plan has been commissioned by the City of York Council to inform the conservation, repair, use, management and future alteration of the buildings, structures, covered remains and open spaces known as the Mint Yard.

This report includes an appraisal of the heritage value of the site, an examination of main conservation-related issues and guidelines for the area.

The conservation plan assesses and sets out in summary what is important about Mint Yard (its significance), based upon readily available information. The information gathered is then considered in an assessment of cultural significance, for the site as a whole and for its various parts, to be summarised in this report with a statement of significance.

The purpose of establishing the importance of the site is to identify and assess the attributes which make a place of value to our society. Once the heritage significance of the building is understood, informed policy decisions can be made which will enable that significance to be retained, revealed, enhanced or, at least, impaired as little as possible in any future decisions for the site. A clear understanding of the nature and degree of the significance of the site will not simply suggest constraints on future action. It will introduce flexibility by identifying the areas which can be adapted or developed with greater freedom.

Based on all of this information and opinion, a set of policies, or guidelines, have been established that will inform the conservation, repair, management and use of the buildings and structures on the site according to best conservation practice.

2.2 Study Area

Mint Yard is located in the centre of the city of York, on Museum Street, which forms the effective south-east boundary of the site. To the north-east, the site is enclosed by the rear boundary walls and access lane behind the terraced townhouses of St Leonard's Street. To the south-west the boundary of the site is formed by and includes the city wall, and the Multangular Tower at the west corner. The north-west boundary extends to include both the remains of the city wall and an area to the north-west.

The site specified in the brief for this document is shown on figure 29 and earlier figures. For the purposes of the report, reference will be made to Library Square, and St Leonard's Place – both important in understanding the historical development and wider context of the site. The wider study area comprises character area four of the York Central Historic Core conservation area – shown in figure 30.

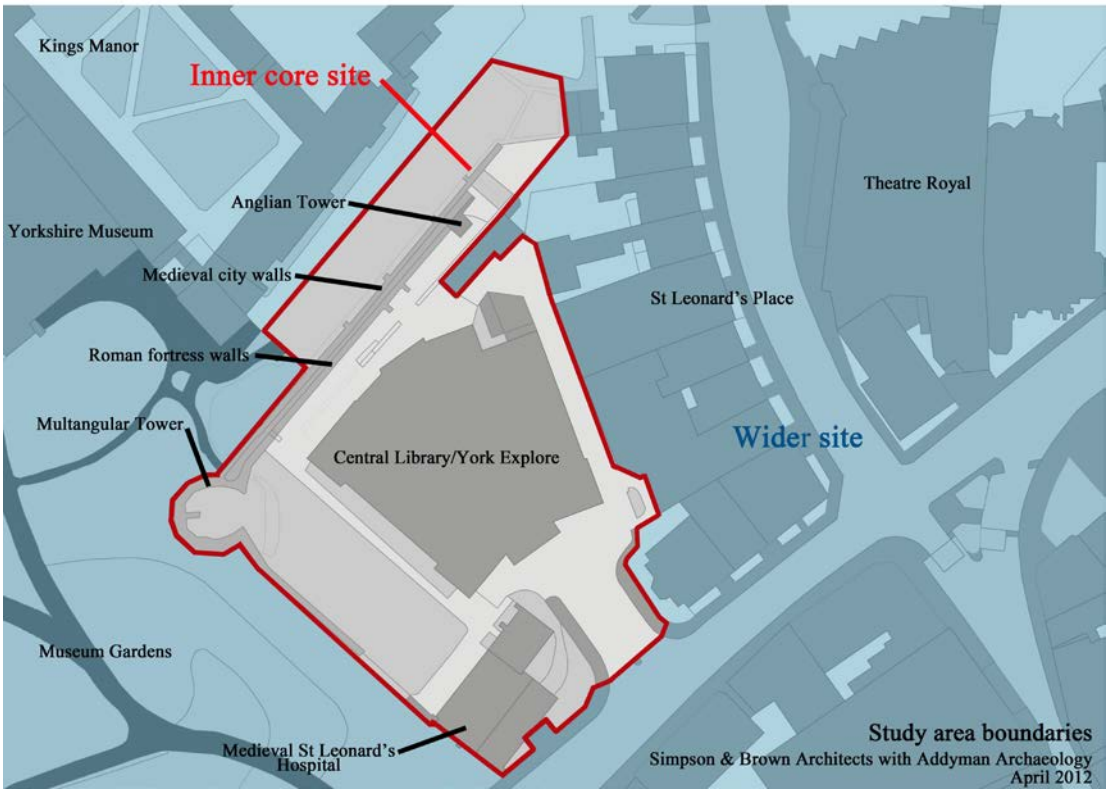


Figure 29 Map showing Mint Yard site. *City of York Council and S&B.*

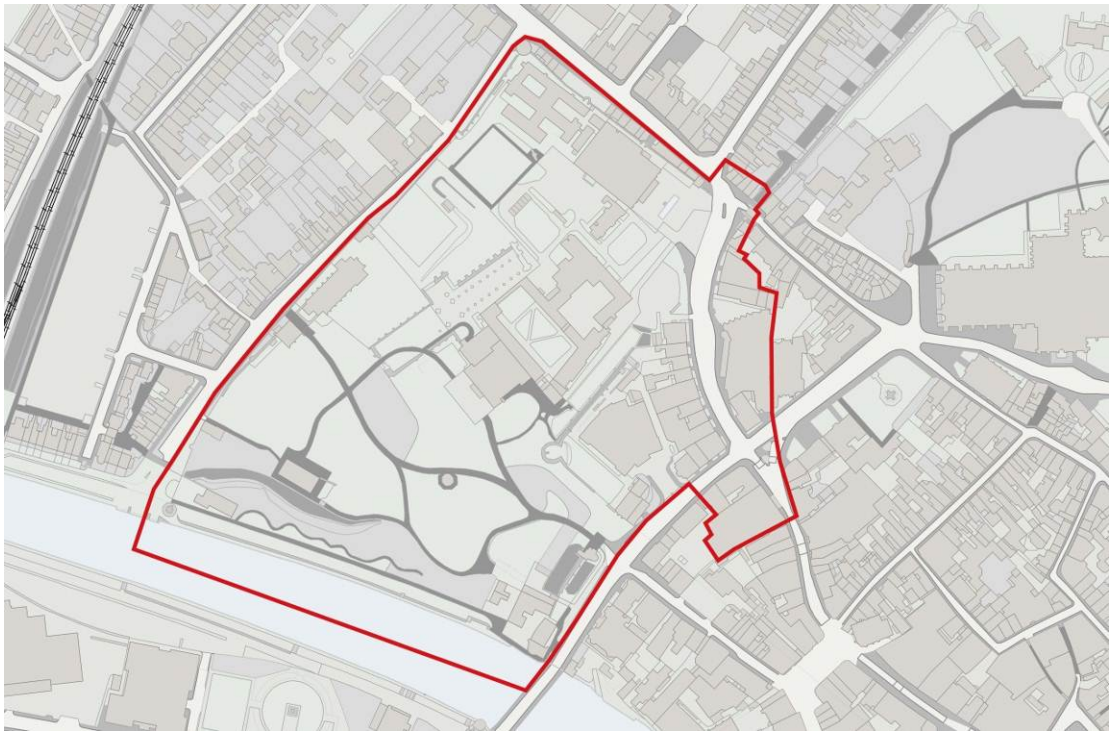


Figure 30 Map showing wider study area. *City of York Council.*

2.3 Heritage Designations

2.3.1 Scheduled Ancient Monuments

Most of the site is recognised as a Scheduled Ancient Monument (SAM) (Figure 31). The remains of the city walls, Multangular Tower, Anglian Tower, remains of St Leonard's Hospital, the Library Lawn, and open spaces immediately adjacent to the city walls comprise part of list entry number 1004910 (see Appendix). The site is also adjacent to the St Mary's Abbey SAM, list entry 1004919.

2.3.2 Listed Buildings[1]

Grade I

A grade I listed building is recognised as being of exceptional interest, sometimes considered to be internationally important (Figure 31).

- The remains of St Leonard's Hospital (list entry 1257087).
- The Multangular Tower and city wall extending to the south east from the tower (list entry 1257120).
- The city wall extending between the Multangular Tower and St Leonard's Place (list entry 1259292).
- The Anglian Tower (list entry 1257157).

Grade II*

A grade II listed building is recognised as being a particularly important building of more than special interest.*

- Numbers 1-9 (consecutive) St Leonard's Place including front railings (list entry 1256761).

Grade II

A grade II listed building is recognised as being nationally important and of special interest.

- The Central Library is a grade II listed building (list entry 1257077).

2.3.3 Conservation Area

The Mint Yard site is part of Museum Gardens and Exhibition Square character area of the York Central Historic Core conservation area, designated 1968.

2.4 Structure of the Report

This conservation plan follows the guidelines set out in the following documents:

- *Conservation principles, policies and guidance for the sustainable management of the historic environment* (English Heritage, 2008)
- *Conservation Management Planning* (Heritage Lottery Fund, 2008) supersedes *Conservation Management Plans Checklist*, *Conservation Management Plans Model Brief* and *Conservation Management Plans: Helping your application* (Heritage Lottery Fund, 2004)

[1] Definitions from http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/caring/listing/listed-buildings/ (accessed July 2012)

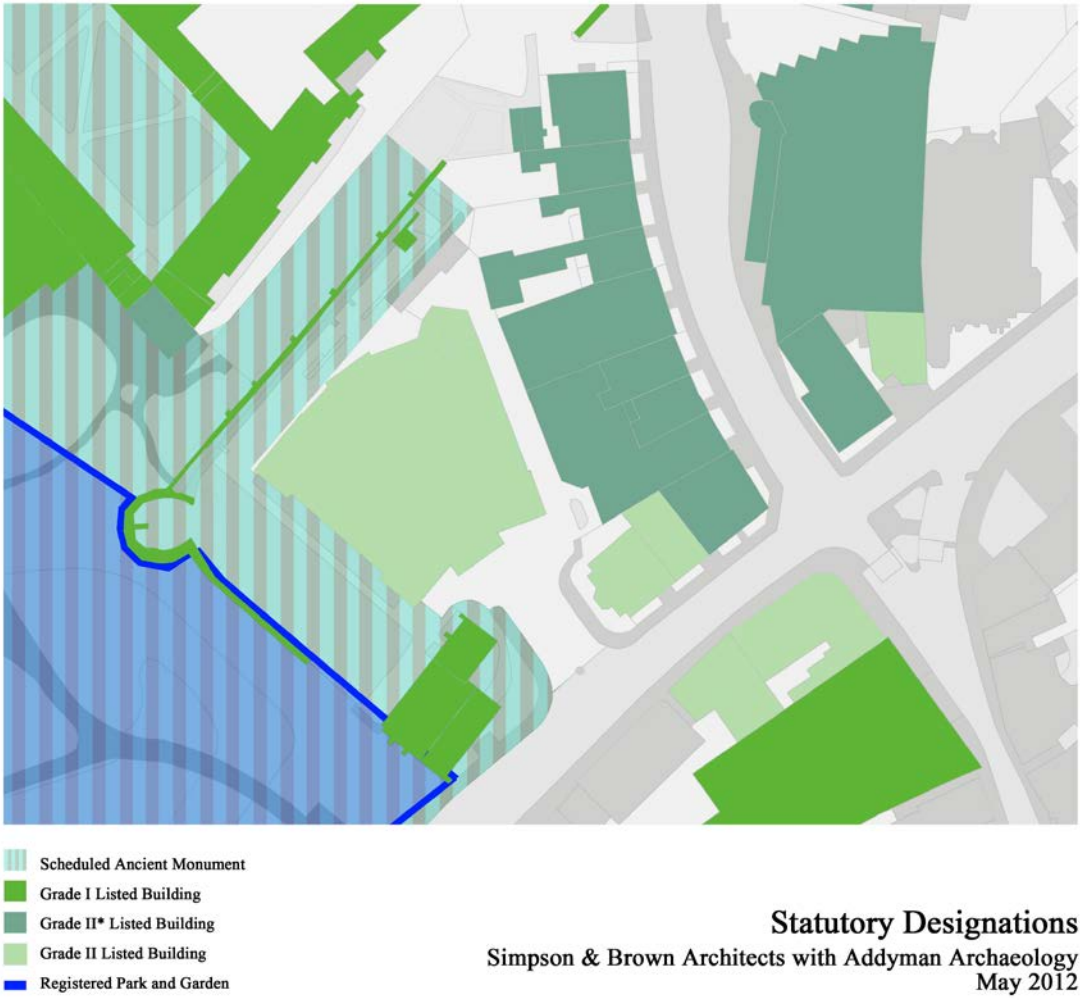


Figure 31 Plan showing statutory designations.

- *The Conservation Plan,* 6th ed., (National Trust of Australia, 2004) by James Semple Kerr
- *The Illustrated Burra Charter: good practice for heritage places* (Australia ICOMOS, 2004) by M Walker and P Marquis-Kyle.
- *Conservation Plans in Action: Proceedings of the Oxford Conference* (English Heritage, 1999) Edited by Kate Clark

Reference is also made to the British Standard *BS 7913 – Guide to the principles of the conservation of historic buildings* (1998).

2.5 Adoption & Review

This conservation management plan is to be used by the City of York Council, stakeholders, consultants and by any future users of the site to aid in the sensitive and appropriate management and use of this historic building complex.

It is a strategic document that will enhance existing management policies and procedures already in place. It is also a dynamic document which should be reviewed every five years to maintain its reliability. It should also be updated when

further information becomes available. Any new material for the project in the future should be kept in a secure location and be accessible along with this conservation management plan.

2.6 Other Studies

A detailed condition survey of the Central Library was prepared by the LHL Group for the City of York Council in 2008.

A design and heritage statement was produced by Nigel Stutt on behalf of the City of York Council's application for internal alterations to the Central Library in 2009.

A conservation statement for the Mint Yard area was prepared by John Oxley, City Archaeologist in 2011. In addition, a similar document was prepared by Richard Taylor, Archives & Local History Development Manager, for the City of York's Archives and Local History Collections. Both these reports were written to support the Stage 1 HLF application for the Gateway to History project.

The significances of this area are considered both in the *Conservation Plan for York City Walls*, PLB Consulting Ltd, August 2004, p53, and in the *St Mary's Abbey Precinct York, Conservation Management Plan*, Bertram Hyde Ltd, Gifford, Donald Insall Associates, August 2005 (*draft),* pp62-66.

2.7 Limitations

It is possible that further information will become available after the completion of this report. Any new information should be acknowledged by the stakeholders and incorporated into revisions of the conservation plan.

The inspection of the buildings and structures was limited to visual inspection from the ground, or accessible interior spaces. There was no opening up. Comments on condition should be read based on this caveat.

2.8 Orientation

For the purposes of this report and convenience, the Central Library is assumed to be on a north-west/south-east axis, with the principal entrance elevation facing south east.

2.9 Project Team

The study team from Simpson & Brown and Addyman Archaeology comprised John Sanders, Tom Addyman, Tom Parnell & Nicholas Uglow. John Sanders and Tom Addyman are both partners with the firm. Tom Parnell and Nicholas Uglow are architectural historians.

2.10 Acknowledgements

Simpson & Brown gratefully acknowledges the assistance provided by the following persons, archives and organisations during the completion of this report:

- Richard Taylor, Archives & Local History Development Manager
- The staff of the University of York Borthwick Institute for Archives
- Adam Strudwick, Bissett Adams Architects
- Diane Green, English Heritage
- Edward Waterson, for his advice on Walter Brierley

2.11 Abbreviations and Definitions

A number of abbreviations have been used throughout this report.

AY - Archaeology of York, York Archaeological Trust's report series

CYC – City of York Council

EH – English Heritage

JRS - Journal of Roman Studies

RCHME - Royal Commission on the Historical Monuments of England

S&B – Simpson & Brown Architects

UoYA – University of York Borthwick Institute for Archives

YAJ - Yorkshire Archaeological Journal

YAT - York Archaeological Trust

YPS - Yorkshire Philosophical Society

All photographs and drawings in this report are by the authors unless stated.

Throughout this document, the library building and institution is referred to as "the Central Library" or "York Explore", as appropriate. The first term is essentially historic as the library was refurbished and rebranded in 2008 and became York Explore.

3.0 UNDERSTANDING THE MINT YARD

3.1 Introduction

An understanding of how the Mint Yard has reached its present form will help determine the importance of various elements of the site, which will then inform policies, or guidelines for management and alterations.

Research was undertaken during the time available for the completion of this report. This conservation plan intends to provide a cohesive view of the historical development of the building complex and its urban site, but further research may be possible. Some details only touched upon in this section, are elaborated in section 4.0.

3.2 The Roman fortress (cAD71-c400)

3.2.1 Introduction - setting

The Romans invaded Britain in AD43, but it took some time to pacify the southern part of the country. Consequently, it was only in 69 that the Romans intervened in a civil war amongst the Brigantes, the largest tribe in northen England. As part of this intervention they established a legionary fortress at York, probably in the year 71. This was a strategically important site, where two roads from London and the south met. The fortress was on higher ground commanding a crossing of the River Ouse, on a routeway that connected the Yorkshire Wolds to the east to the Pennines to the west, along the York Moraine. The site was also accessible from the North Sea along the River Ouse, which was tidal at the time. It is likely that the York Moraine, an area of well-drained higher ground, was occupied by dispersed farmsteads at the time of the Roman conquest, but there is no evidence of a major native settlement in the vicinity of York.

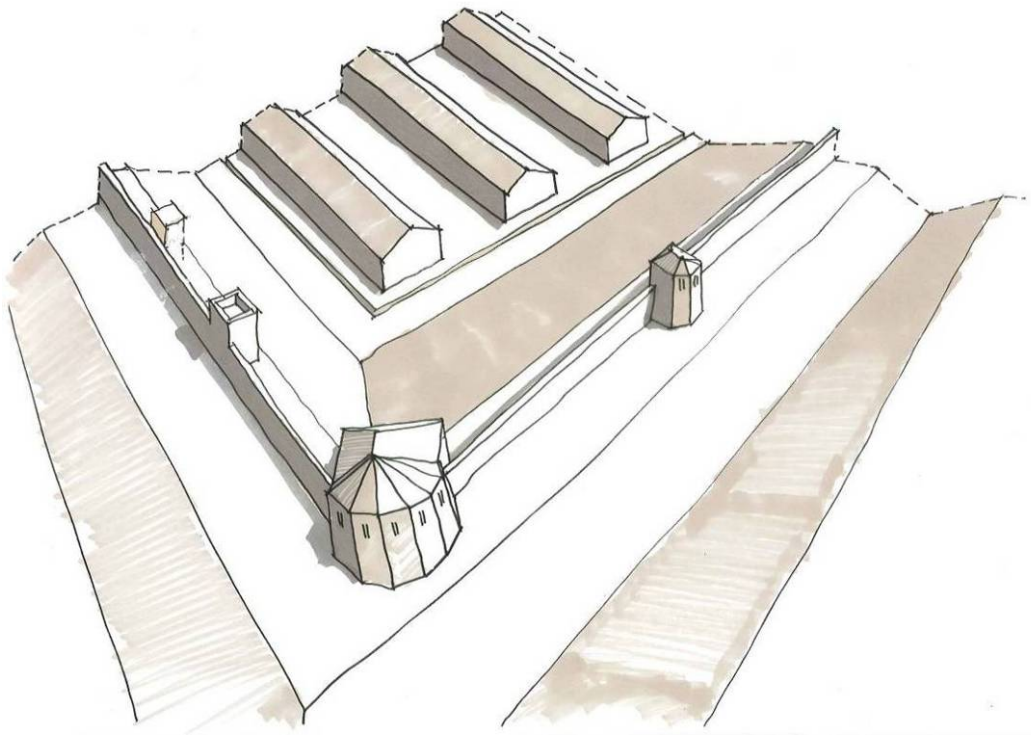


Figure 32 Schematic impression of the Mint Yard site from the west in the late Roman period. *S&B*

3.2.2 The first legionary fortress (cAD71-100)

The fortress was established by the Ninth Legion, which had been moved north from its previous base at Lincoln. It was the usual playing card shape, and extended over some 21 hectares (50 acres). The defences comprised a clay and turf rampart some 3m high, with a timber palisade, towers and gates; and a v-shaped external ditch. The Mint Yard area occupies the west corner of the fortress, and it is likely that this was the location of several long, narrow barrack blocks.

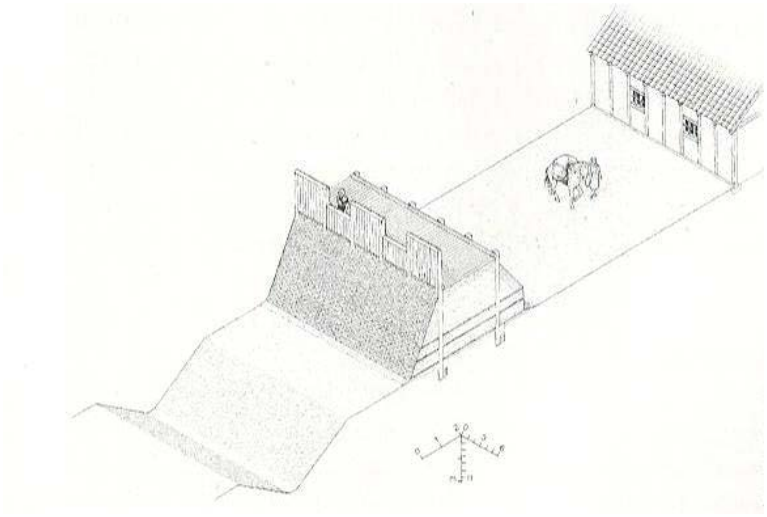


Figure 33 Section through the late 1st century fortress defences. *YAT*

3.2.3 The rebuilding in stone (early 2nd century)

During the 2nd century, rebuilding of the fortress in stone began; the turf face of the rampart was replaced by a stone wall some 6.5m high, and the original rampart was heightened and extended to the rear in order to reinforce the wall.

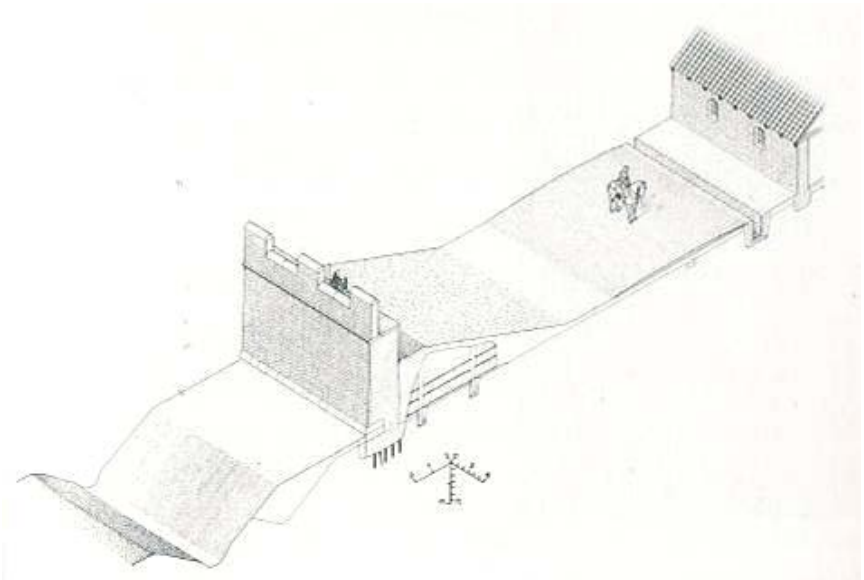


Figure 34 Section through the second century fortress defences. *YAT*

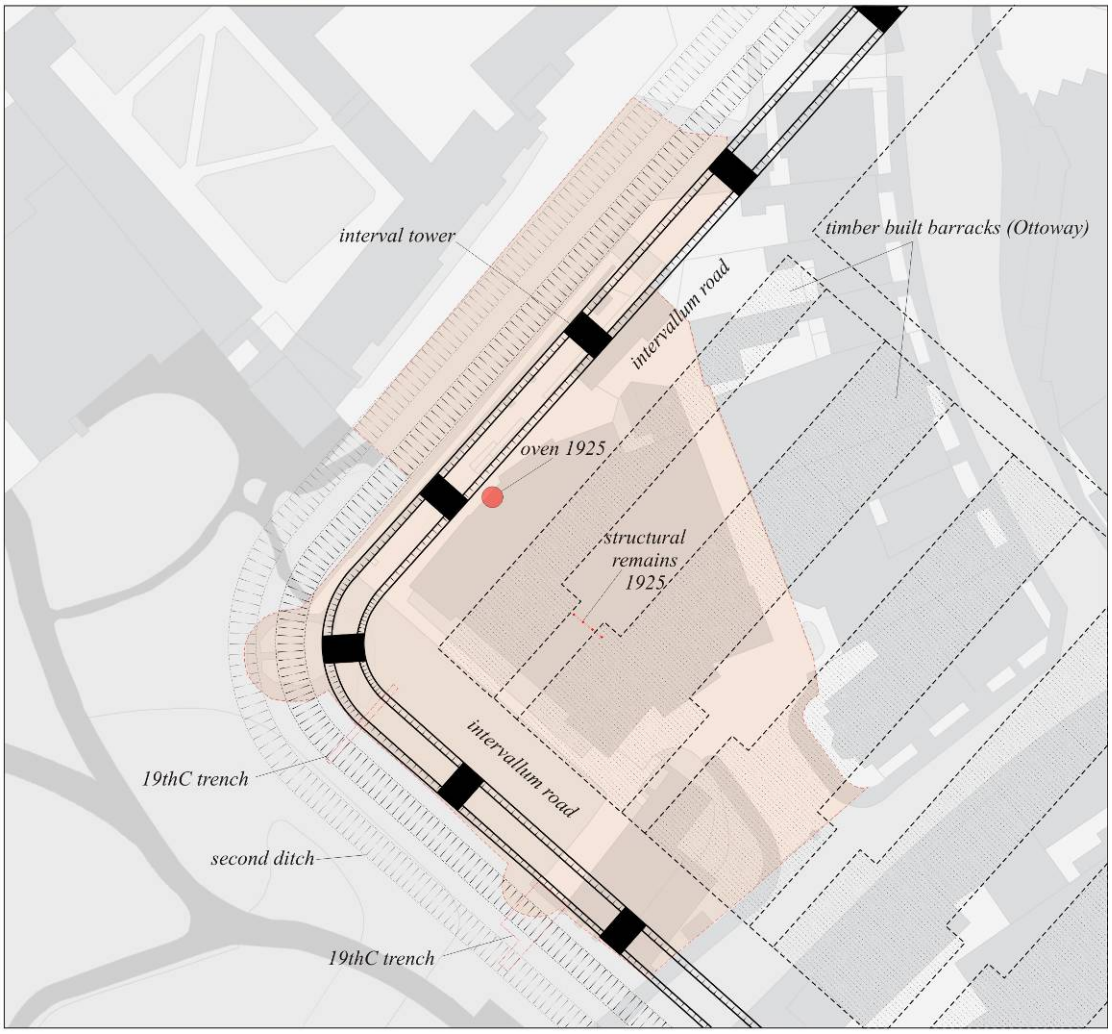


Figure 35 Reconstruction plan of late 1st century fortress defences.

Three sides of the fortress wall were provided with small, square internal stone towers, but the corner and interval towers on the south-west side were much larger and had rounded frontages projecting beyond the line of the fortress wall. Parts of the south-west and north-west walls, the west corner tower (Multangular Tower) and an interval tower (SW6) survive above ground in the Mint Yard area. The original ditch, now encroached upon by the projecting towers, was replaced with a wider ditch further away from the wall. The internal buildings of the fortress were also rebuilt in stone. The Ninth Legion appears to have begun this building programme, and it seems to have continued after that legion was replaced at York by the Sixth Legion around 120.

3.2.4 Dating the fortress' stone defences

There has been considerable variation in the dating assigned to the tower (and to the SW defences generally). As Bidwell (2006, 36) notes the Multangular Tower and interval towers along the SW frontage of the legionary fortress were long thought to have dated to the late third or early 4th century. Richmond in RCHME (1962), 13, suggested this to be likely part of a 4th century remodelling of the SW defences; however Ottoway (2004) suggested a considerably earlier dating, in the Severan period (early 3rd century).

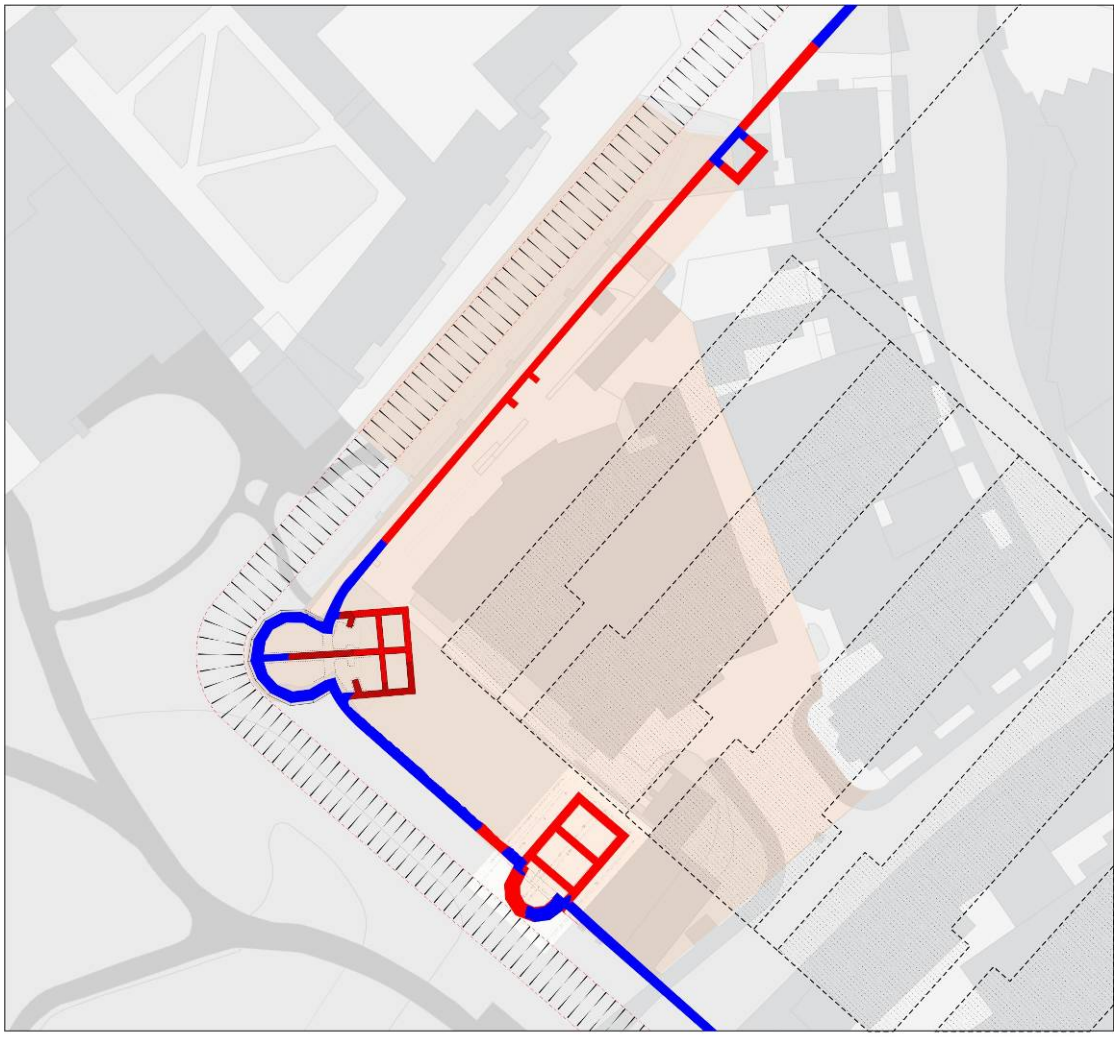


Figure 36 Reconstruction plan of the stone fortress defences.

In spite of reservations Bidwell and Hartley suggested an early 4th century date based on architectural comparison with the towers at the Emperor Galerius' palace at Gramzigrad (Serbia) – the only other incidence of such features (10- and 16-sided towers).

Following YAT's excavations of 2001-4, Kurt Hunter-Mann (2009) proposed a further revision of the dating of the tower – based upon stratigraphic relationships, finds evidence, and dating of timber piles (013), to the early 2nd century AD. Additional subsequent finds analysis by YAT seems to reinforce this conclusion. In the light of these most recently proposed dates Bidwell's comment (2006, 36) has particular resonance, there are difficulties with, the late dating hitherto attributed to the walls at York, the astonishing delay in supplying the fortress with stone defences: at other fortresses founded in the later first century, in Britain and beyond, stone walls were built within a decade or so.

It now seems more likely that York fits the wider pattern; the superficial similarity to the Gamzigrad towers is thus more probably coincidental (the latter attach to the perimeter wall in a different manner and have no structure to the rear).

3.2.5 Fortress interior

To the rear of the rampart an intervallum road (*via sagularis*) formed a circuit around the fortress. The row of barrack blocks inside that road would originally have been of

timber with wattle and daub infill and perhaps rendered on the outside. Their stone replacements would have had walls of cemented cobble and stone rubble cores faced with the typical small limestone blocks (*opus quadratum*). All of the buildings in the fortress were probably roofed with ceramic tiles from the beginning, to reduce the risk of fire.

3.2.6 Later occupation of the fortress (3rd – 6th centuries)

Documentary evidence indicates that the fortress was garrisoned by the Sixth Legion until the end of the Roman period, but little is known about the use of the fortress in later Roman times. The main baths complex, in the southern part of the fortress, may have been largely rebuilt early in the 4th century.

Part of the foundations of the Multangular Tower seems to have been reinforced with a concrete raft, apparently due to structural instability. This work probably took place later in the Roman period. Subsequently, the rear part of the tower was dismantled down to its foundations, and replaced with a backing rampart. Presumably associated with this alteration was a probable timber staircase, which provided access to the walkway from the interior of the fortress. This remodelling of the Multangular Tower is dated to the very end of the Roman period at the earliest, although the presence of 9th/10th century pottery in the top of the surviving rampart could mean that it took place at that date or a little later.

3.2.7 The 'Anglian Tower'

The Anglian Tower was first unearthed in 1839 and re-excavated in 1969-71. It is a small, square internal tower that has been keyed in to the Roman fortress north-west wall, some 60m north-east of the Multangular Tower. It is built of roughly coursed and squared oolitic limestone, in contrast to the use of magnesian limestone in the Roman fortress, and it is not built in the *opus quadratum* style of the Roman defences; this has been taken to indicate that it is a post-Roman construction (hence the name Anglian Tower); a connection with the re-establishment of York as a royal centre by King Edwin of Northumbria in the early 7th century has been proposed. On the other hand, Oolitic Limestone was used elsewhere in Roman York and the tower could have formed a part of the Roman defensive scheme as a replacement of an earlier interval tower (Ottaway 2004). Consequently, the date of the Anglian Tower remains uncertain, although it does reflect remodelling of the fortress defences in the late or post-Roman period seen at the St Leonard's Hospital 2001-4 excavations.

3.3 Anglian and Anglo-Scandinavian (late 6th century to the Norman Conquest)

3.3.1 Anglian

Following the end of the formal Roman occupation of Britain in 410 there was an influx of Germanic settlers for about two centuries. In the northern part of the country, these people were probably mostly Anglians from Denmark and northern Germany. At first the immigrations were tolerated if not instigated by the native population, but by the 7th century the ruling elites in the south and east of the country were dominated by Germanic people and the primary language came to be English, the foundations of what was to become England. Very little is known about activity in York in the early part of the Anglian period, although the presence of two cremation cemeteries in the vicinity of the Roman settlement point to some form of settlement. By the early 7th century York was an important royal centre for the

kingdom of Northumbria, and its name had evolved to Eoforwic. St Paulinus established a church at York, the first Minster; and King Edwin was converted to Christianity there in 627. From 735, York was the seat of an archbishop. There is archaeological evidence of increasing settlement activity outside the former Roman fortress in the 7th - 9th centuries; but there is little such evidence within the fortress, suggesting that it was an administrative and religious centre separate from the settlement. Two carved stones, unearthed during the construction of St Leonard's Place, suggest the presence of a church in the vicinity.

3.3.2 Anglo-Scandinavian defences

York was captured by Viking settlers in 866, and was a focus of Scandinavian political influence in England until 1069. However the settlement continued to thrive as the city of Jorvik, with occupation concentrating closer to and eventually also within the fortress. The streets laid out at this time continue to influence the street system. Nevertheless, large blocks of land within the fortress were granted to the Church; a cemetery found close to the present York Minster suggests there was an important church there by the 9th century, and it is possible that a block of land in the west corner of the fortress was granted to the hospital of St Peter (later St Leonard) during this period. Pits dug into the fortress rampart and a timber building at its foot indicate Anglo-Scandinavian occupation, but it is not clear whether this represents hospital activity. The presence of 9th or 10th century pottery in deposits associated with the demolition of the rear of the Multangular Tower could mean that the tower was reduced at this time, perhaps as a repair of the defences.

3.4 The medieval hospital of St Leonard's and the city's defences

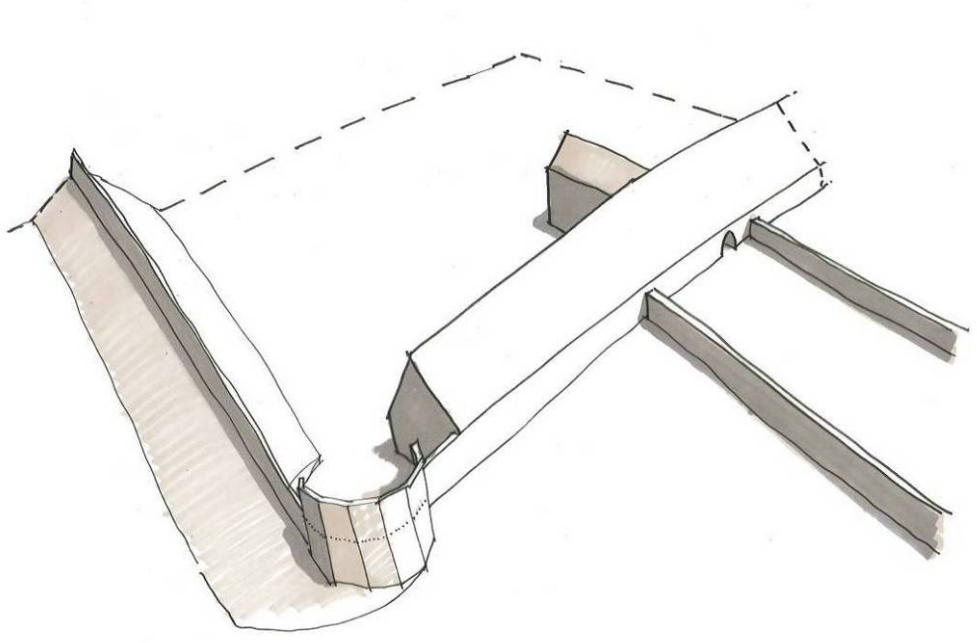


Figure 37 Schematic impression of the Mint Yard site from the west in the late medieval period. *S&B*

3.4.1 Introduction

In the post-Conquest period through to the Reformation, the land that forms the Mint Yard project area occupied the south-western third of the precinct of the Hospital of St Peter which, from the reign of King Stephen (c.1090-1154), became known as St Leonard's Hospital. The wider precinct also took in the area of what is now St Leonard's Place, now occupied by the Theatre Royal, the de Grey Rooms, and the Red House. Its bounds to the SW and NW were defined by the existing city defences, the site extending almost as far as Bootham Bar to the NE. For the purposes of this conservation plan the wider precinct area is considered overall.

Figure 38 The Mint Yard project area in relation to the surrounding medieval townscape, also showing the extent of the St Leonard's precinct – dotted. *York Museums Trust*

The extent of the St Leonard's precinct is reasonably well understood from historic sources and study of the townscape, perpetuation of property boundaries, and so on. While much is known from medieval sources of the individual buildings that occupied the precinct their former locations, with the exception of the part-surviving infirmary range, are far from firmly established.

3.4.2 History

The history of St Leonard's has been variously examined, most notably by Benson (1902 and 1930); Raine (1955); VCH (Tillot, ed., 1961); and was the particular focus of doctoral research by Patricia Cullum (Cullum, 1991 and 1993). Cullum's 1991 paper 'Cremetts and corrodies: care of the poor and sick at St Leonard's Hospital, York, in the Middle Ages' (*Borthwick paper* no. 79) is a concise and useful source for understanding for whom the hospital existed, and how it cared for its patients.

The physical remains of the hospital have been described by Benson (1911, 1919 and 1930); RCHME (1981); Cullum (1993); and YAT (various). A monograph on the excavation on the site of the infirmary range is currently in preparation (YAT/Hunter-Mann).

St Leonard's had originally been a part of York Minster's establishment and was originally known as St Peter's Hospital. According to a history of the hospital written in 1173 it had been endowed by King Athelstan in 936. As Benson notes

> [in 932 Athelstan] … *visited the Minster and became interested in the poor religious people there known as the Culdees who occupied themselves with works of charity. … He*

made them a grant f a piece of ground adjoining a small church, on which they were to erect a hospital to God and St Peter, and endowed it with one thrave of corn out of each plough going in the diocese. On the site a timber-built hospital was constructed … [2]

In spite of problems with this account Cullum suggests it likely preserves a tradition of a pre-Conquest foundation, this is reinforced by a reference to the confirmation of the endowment of 'ancient alms' by William Rufus. However little is known of the foundation before the late 11th century.

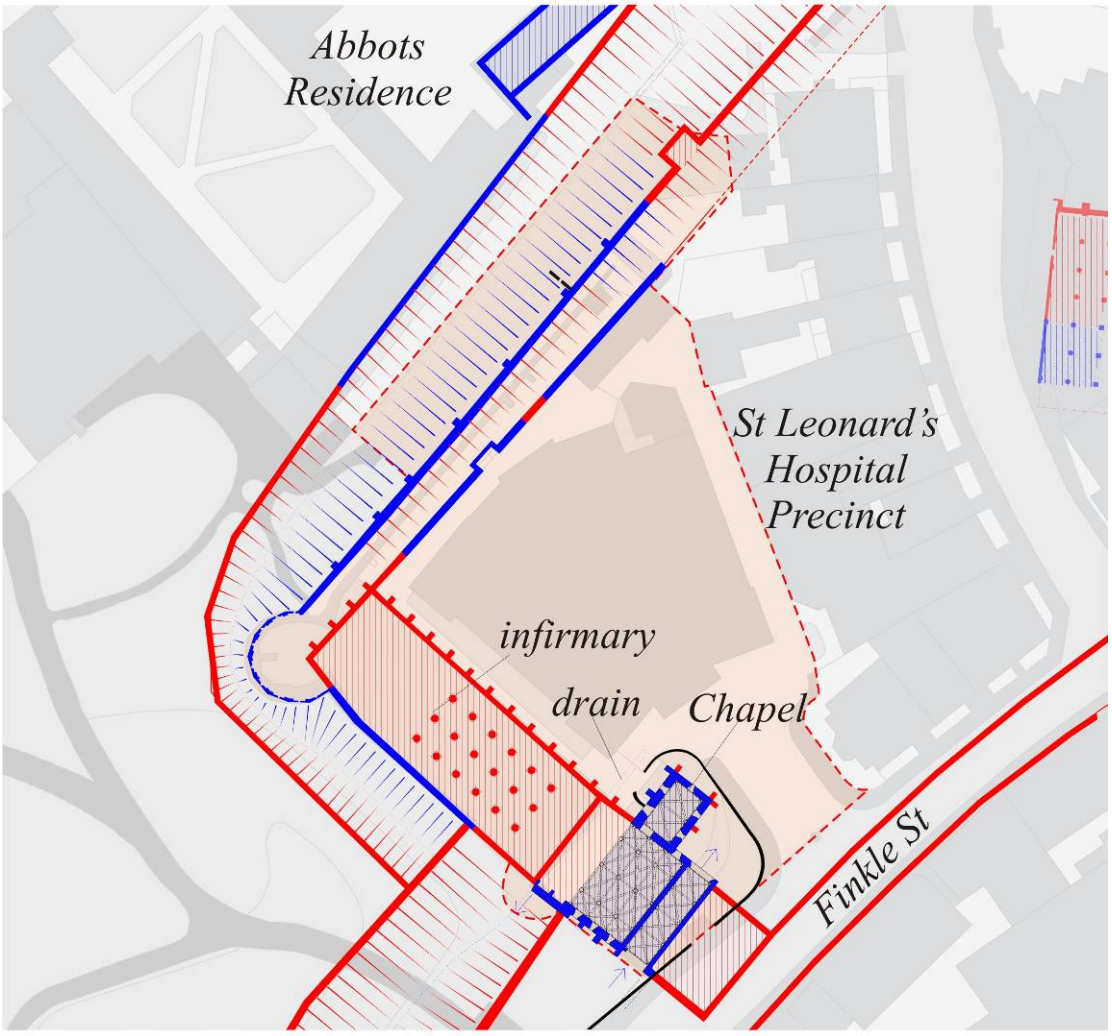


Figure 39 Reconstruction plan of structures from the high medieval period.

With the rebuilding of the Minster under Thomas of Bayeux from 1079, and the expansion of its role, the hospital was relocated in the 1090s to land donated by William II, the site it then occupied until the Dissolution. The early hospital buildings were destroyed by fire in 1137. Following the fire King Stephen built a new church which he dedicated to St Leonard. After this and particularly from the late 12th century onwards the hospital was known as St Leonard's.

At the time of a visitation by the Dean and Chapter of the Minster, in 1276/7, the compliment of staff included a master, at least 13 brethren, lay brothers, eight sisters, a number of clerks, and the inmates – *paupers Christi.*

[2] 1911, 50

At the Dissolution St Leonard's was valued at £300, as a religious institution in York this was second only to the great St Mary's Abbey. As Cullum (1993) notes,

> *Judging by the number of inmates, over 200 for much of the 13th and 14th century, it was possibly the largest hospital in the country, certainly the largest outside London. It was staffed by religious, both male and female, who lived by the Augustinian Rule. The hospital enjoyed the usual privileges of religious status, had a Liberty and occupied a large, and fairly well-defined site within the city walls, by 1100.*

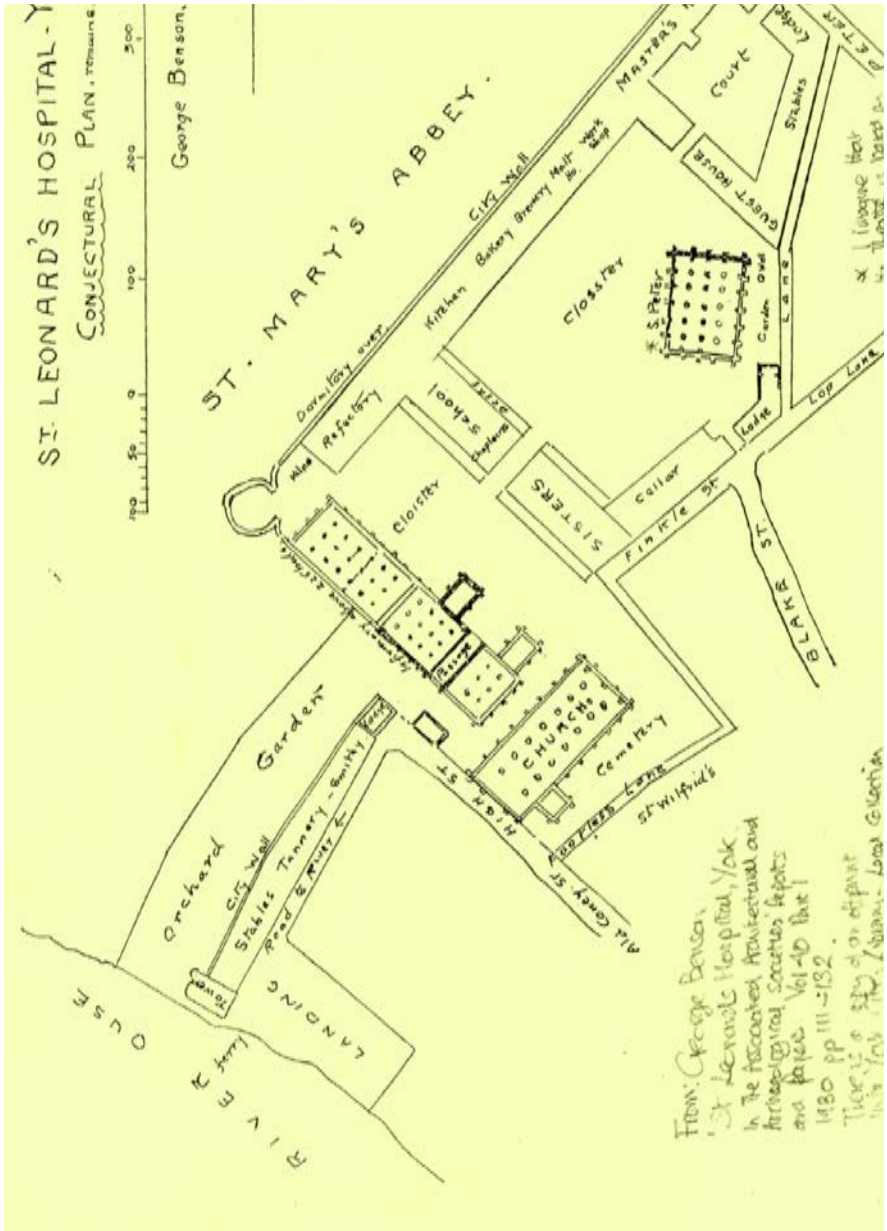


Figure 40 George Benson's projected plan of the medieval precinct; while this illustrates the extensive collection of buildings, documented as existing on the site, the positions of many are not firmly established. *Benson, 1930*

> *... St Leonard's was in many ways no different from any substantial monastery, with the exception that it had a major charitable function, it was also in that sense very rare, few hospitals even approached the same size.*

Relatively few hospitals were as completely independent as St Leonard's. This was a situation that developed through the 12th and early 12th century as the hospital grew away from York Minster on which it had originally been dependent.

In spite of the comparative laxity of Augustinian Rule, whereby the time and movements of its adherents was less circumscribed than that of other monastic houses, the Augustinians nonetheless followed the monastic round and required the same range of buildings as a monastery. Most Augustinian houses used the basic Benedictine ground-plan of church and cloister. In the case of hospitals, in addition to the usual claustral arrangement, it is likely that there was an enlarged infirmary range, or a hospital building or complex.

3.4.3 Medieval precinct

In addition to the remaining fragments of the hospital, the former existence of others is known from antiquarian accounts, archaeological discoveries and cartographic sources. The comparatively extensive medieval documentary sources for St Leonard's specifically mention many of the structures. Benson (1930) and Cullum (1991, 1993) have discussed this evidence and have suggested reconstructions of the medieval topography of the St Leonard's precinct. Benson's is primarily in the form of a reconstructed plan, below; however this has long been recognised as being somewhat speculative and in many respects erroneous (in particular he assumes the presence of two churches and neither of these is correctly placed). However in general terms it is apparent that St Leonard's had had both a church with cloister and an infirmary with its own chapels.

King Stephen's new church dedicated to St Leonard was referred to as located *in the high street adjoining the hospital*. It is not known whether this (or the original church) was also used to house the inmates. This was usual practice in hospitals of the church type, where the nave was where the infirm lived, and the chancel where the priests ministered, so that the inmates could take part in services from their beds.

However by 1220-1255 the inmates were definitely in a separate infirmary, donated to them by John Romanus, the treasurer of the Minster, in which men and women were housed separately (Cullum, 1993, 14).

Precepts and provisions made by Bishop Walter de Langton in 1294 provides information about individual hospital buildings, mentioning the church and choir, the cloister, chapter house, treasury, refectory (including the suggestion of a *pulpitium*, from which the scriptures were read), a communal dormitory, a cellarer's chamber, and a further chamber in the dormitory for bleeding and shaving. At this date the master would have had his own lodging

Report of a visitation in 1364 makes more specific mention of separate refectory accommodation for the sisters. It also refers to a chamber for the imprisonment of brothers who had broken the Rule. A building was also to be provided for the study of Holy Scripture, divided into 13 *studia*. The master had his own lodging (including accommodation for a secular chaplain, two pages, other servants and men). He was also to have eight horses, these clearly requiring accommodation. There were also a considerable number of service buildings. By 1280 there was a grammar school with provision for a grammar, singing master and 19 boys. There was also a guest hall; a cellar; a tannery; a malthouse; a watermill; a workshop for a carpenter, wright and mason; a smithy; several stables; a gatehouse; and 3 ships. There were two kitchens, a bakehouse and brewery, and a cemetery.

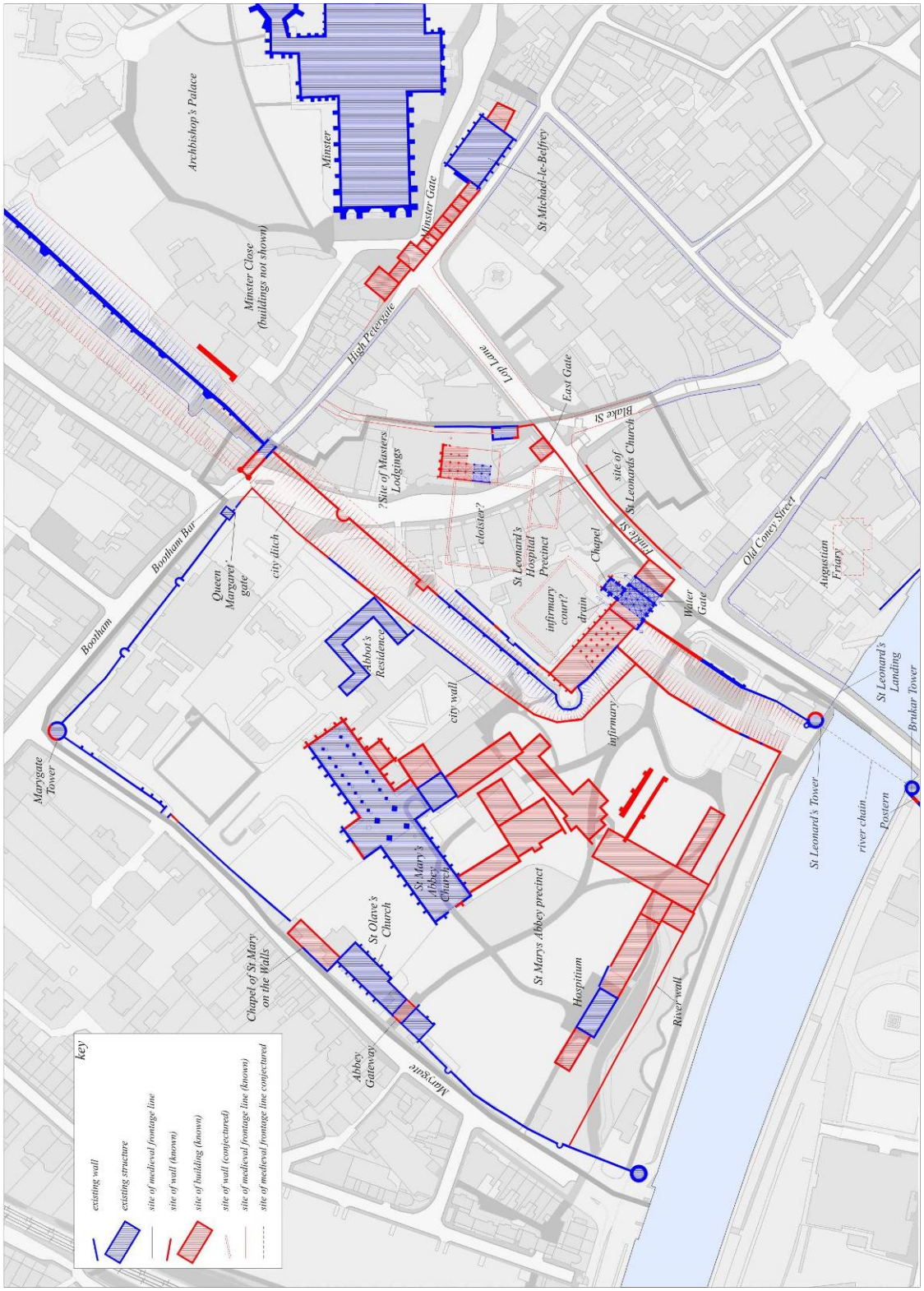


Figure 41 Reconstruction plan of structures from the high medieval period; the wider precincts of St Leonard's Hospital and St Mary's Abbey.

From the late 13th century the hospital was under pressure to take corrodians (who would pay a lump sum or give property in return for support for the rest of their lives); some of the wealthier corrodians clearly had separate purpose-built accommodation within the precinct.

The precinct had two entrances. One faced the river, known as the lower gate and, later, the water gate; this was probably the gate where alms were given. The second gate, the *east gate*, was opposite Blake Street; there was a gatehouse here until the 18th century, this with an arch over the road in which stood a statue of St Leonard.

In 1299 the hospital was to enclose a nearby lane leading from Blake Street to Petergate in order to enlarge the hospital court. The line of this boundary, including parts of the boundary wall itself, still survives. However the precinct itself did not extend as far as Petergate for there were several tenements whose bounds lay between Petergate and St Leonard's.

3.4.4 Surviving architecture and archaeological remains

City defences

A major upstanding component of the medieval site is the city defences. This best survives along the NW perimeter where they overlie the pre-existing Roman and Anglo-Scandinavian defensive system and are themselves composed of individual episodes of work. On the NW perimeter these latter were found to comprise, firstly, a post-Conquest raising of the rampart (c1080), this surmounted by a timber palisade and then, in the 13th century, a further rampart raising with contingent widening and deepening of the external ditch. The walling surmounting the crest of the final rampart dates to the later part of the 13th century and the early 14th.

The city wall at this point comprises the surviving southwestern section of the stretch that extended between the Multangular Tower and Bootham Bar on the NW perimeter of the City. The defensive line also took in the Multangular Tower, whose upper stage dates to c.1300, and the adjacent section of Roman wall extending SE as far as the site of Roman interval tower SW6, demolished with the building of St Leonard's Hospital. It is likely that in this area there had been a medieval upper stage, including wall walk and parapet that corresponded to that of the Multangular Tower; it is also possible that there had been an area of earthen rampart against the exterior of the Roman Wall, since removed. Just within the area of the Museum Gardens entrance the city wall returned to the SW to run down to the River Ouse – the down-slope section of this stretch of walling survives, culminating at Lendal Tower (formerly St Leonard's Tower).

Mint Yard project area – the infirmary

The upstanding remains of St Leonard's Hospital within the present Mint Yard project area are restricted to a fragment of the great infirmary range, with associated lateral chapel extending out to the NE, and a section of apparently medieval retaining wall at the foot of the inner rampart along the NW perimeter. At one point the latter is interrupted by the remains of a large masonry feature built in to the bank (it is only faced internally). On account of its excavation in c1970, unrecorded, and overzealous consolidation, it is now difficult to determine either the function of the structure or its relationship to the retaining wall – is it a fragment of a building partly built back into the face of the rampart, or part of a latrine. The feature is partly obscured by two episodes of subsequent construction.

Norman remains revealed by excavation

Excavation by YAT in the library lawn area (2001-4) revealed during the first half of the 11th century the fortress south-west rampart extending for a considerable distance from the Multangular Tower was reduced by about 3m and the spoil deposited against the foot of the rampart. Insubstantial structures were then erected on this

surface, but the reduction of the rampart clearly anticipated the construction of a very large masonry-built block, which was finally built in the space between the Multangular Tower and Interval Tower SW6 around 1150 – this evidently an infirmary. The two towers and part of the south-west and north-west fortress walls were incorporated. The remains of the infirmary, which had been systematically reduced and robbed, were first revealed in 1845-6 and recorded by the architect GT Andrews (Figure 42); YAT subsequently established that the range had extended into the Multangular Tower itself.

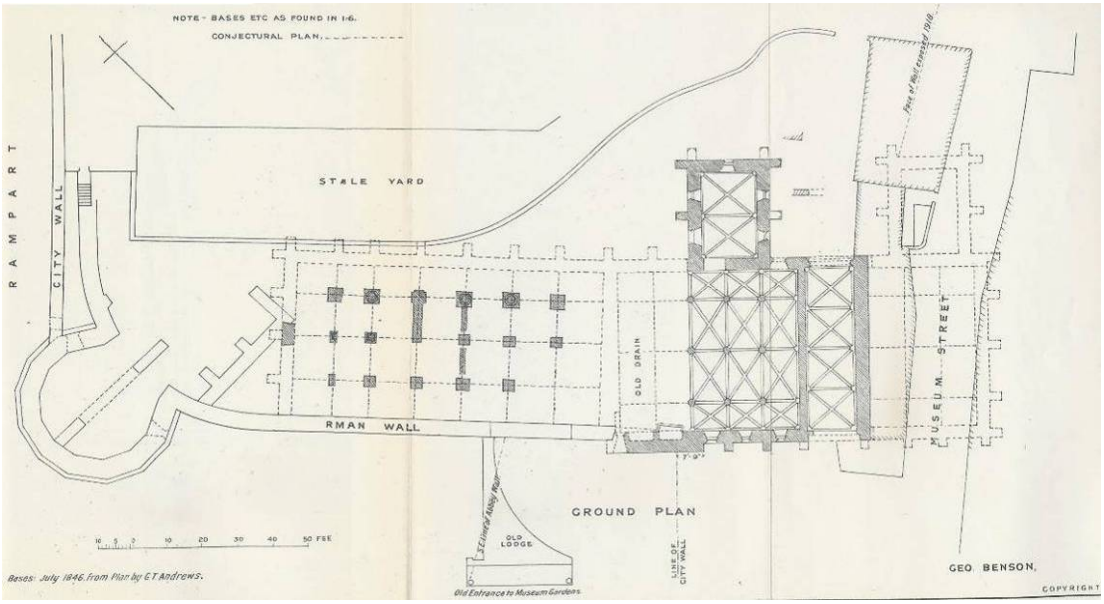


Figure 42 Plan of the infirmary range (*Benson 1919, Figure 12*), in part based on a plan of the excavated remains by GT Andrews (1846); it also conjectures the extent of the range to the SE (area of Museum St.)

3.5 13th century – early 14th century expansion

The infirmary was extended to the south-east at the beginning of the 14th century; it incorporated a chapel annexe and a passageway allowing entrance into the hospital from the water lane to the south-west. This complex evidently continued further south-east beyond the passageway, but its extent and character there is unknown. This building work involved demolition of the Roman fortress wall, and is probably associated with the construction of a new city wall from St Leonard's Hospital south-westwards to the River Ouse.

A particular curiosity of the infirmary ruin is the right-angle chapel, this extending NE from the main range; the most common arrangement is that of a chancel-like relationship to the 'nave' of the infirmary hall proper. The restricted nature of the precinct at York may have dictated this arrangement, also, perhaps, in relation to the issue of correct liturgical orientation. Prescott (10-12) notes of the infirmary hall type of plan, that the right-angled chapel is a particular characteristic of Kentish hospitals but is also seen at St Leonard's.

> *The right-angled chapel, as well as the infirmary hall, were divided across the width into two halves, enabling each section of the hall to communicate with its individual chapel.*

She suggests that such a plan well suited the segregation of the sexes.

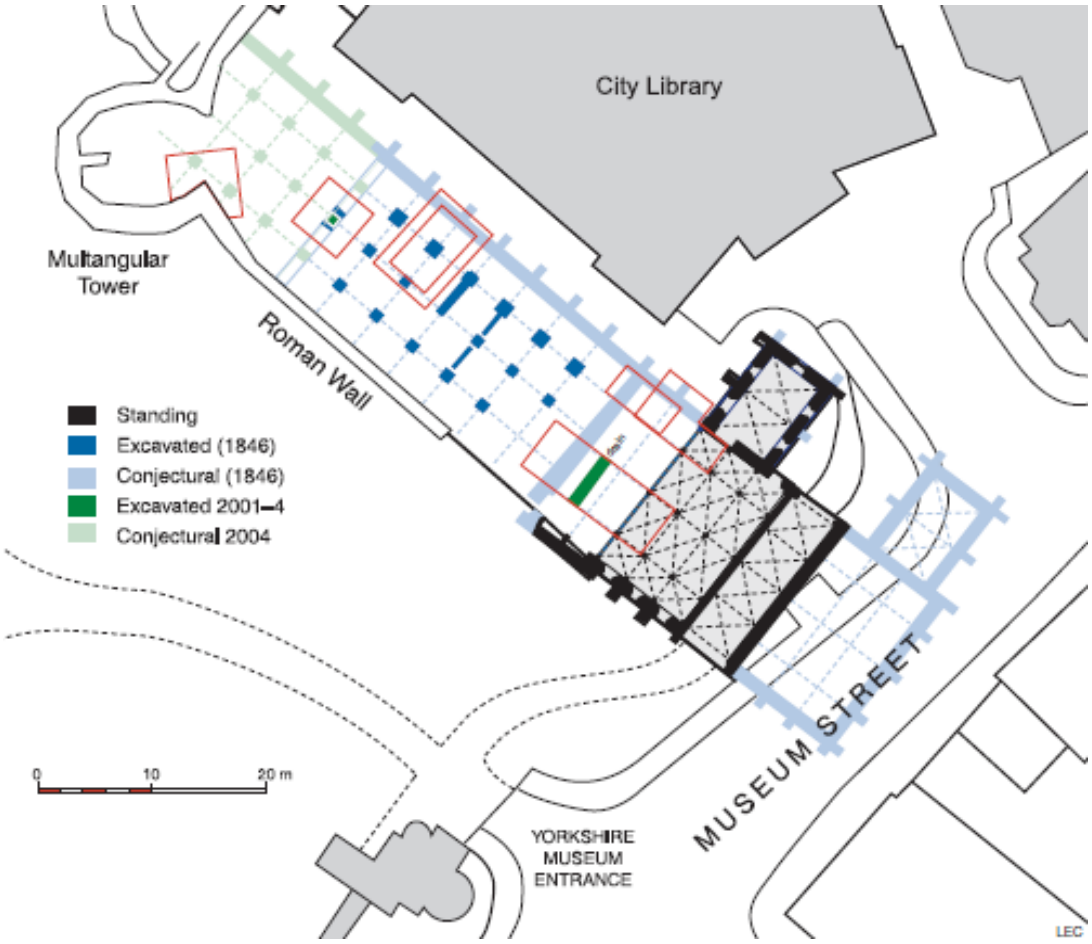
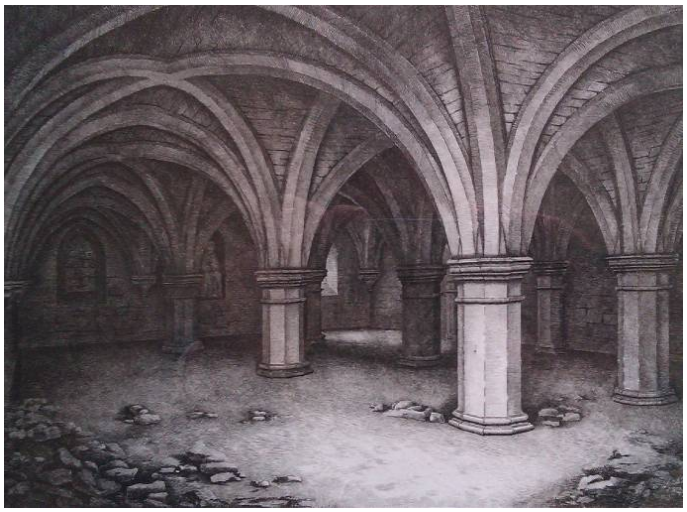


Figure 43 The remains of the infirmary range, as conjectured following YAT's excavations (2001-4). The red lines show the extent of test trenches. *YAT*



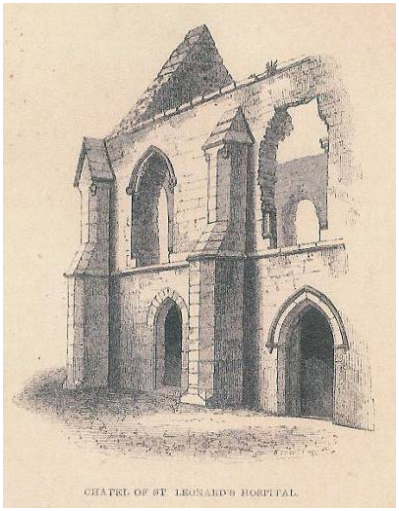


Figure 44 The infirmary undercroft. *J Halfpenny, 1807*

Figure 45 The chapel exterior c1845.

3.5.1 Fragments of St Leonard's Hospital in the Theatre Royal

The other substantive upstanding fragments of St Leonard's Hospital are now incorporated within the complex of structures that form the Theatre Royal (Figure

41). These comprise a massively constructed undercroft; a smaller building, also with a vaulted cellar, a well, and a section of perimeter walling, the latter running behind the present stage and forming the property boundary between the Theatre and the lands belonging to St Wilfrid's Church beyond.

The undercroft was illustrated by Halfpenny in 1807, before subsequent reduction with the redevelopment of the theatre in 1887 and 1901. A plan of the remains as existing before the 1901 works, was produced by Benson in 1902. The remains are described in RCHMS (1981) and the results of subsequent archaeological monitoring reported by YAT (1998, 2003).

The two surviving compartments of the undercroft were dated by the RCHME to the mid 12th century; the structure to which they relate was originally at least seven bays long by four wide. The RCHME note a large projection at the NW angle, possibly a stair-turret. The function of this structure remains uncertain, it has variously been suggested to represent part of St Peter's church (Benson, 1930), a guest-house or, perhaps most plausibly, part of the east range of a cloister that seems likely to have flanked the north side of St Leonard's Church (Cullum, 1993).

The theatre offices along the east boundary of the site incorporate much of the east and west walls of a two-storied 13th century structure. This had had a barrel-vaulted lower storey and still preserves a first floor lancet in the west wall; the north wall is of somewhat later medieval work. Part of the exterior side of the east wall is visible close to Duncombe Place; here scarring indicates the former presence of a buttress.

The boundary walling to the E still stands to its parapet top in the area behind the stage, a height of over 5m; parts also exist. In the upper part of the wall are two 13th century crosslet arrow-slits, these indicating the walling formed a boundary for properties to the east. The lower wall seems to have been thickened on its west side; here there exists an arched opening, perhaps of 16th century date. Other fragments of the wall are visible within the rectory garden behind St Wilfrid's Church. The well, described in some detail by Benson (1902), also appears to be medieval.

3.5.2 Dissolution

At the Reformation St Leonard's was suppressed; it was surrendered by Thomas Magnus, the Master, on 1 December 1539. Magnus was granted the dwelling house of St Leonard for life.

3.6 The post-Reformation period – c.1675

The site of the hospital, which was independent of civic jurisdiction, was granted by the Crown, in 1544, to Sir Arthur Darcy, Sir Thomas Clifford and John Bolles. However the site rapidly reverted to the Crown, who established the Royal Mint there between 1546 ad 1553. In 1561 the site was granted to Robert, Lord Dudley. The site passed through a succession of hands, and was sometimes again employed for the Mint. In 1675 Mint Yard was finally purchased by the City from George Saville, Viscount Halifax for £800.

Figure 46 The undercroft at the Theatre Royal drawn in 1807. *J Halfpenny*

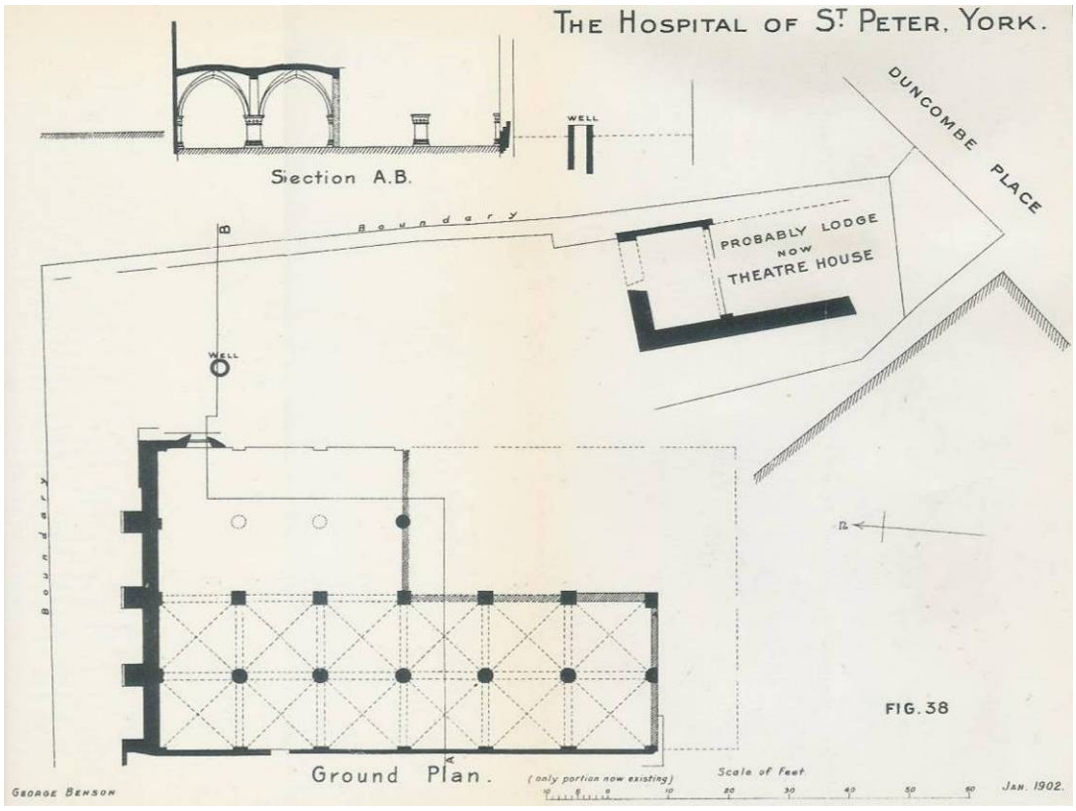


Figure 47 Plan of medieval remains within the Theatre Royal, drawn in 1902. *Benson, 1911, Fig.38*

Early cartographic sources vary considerably both in their overall accuracy and in the precision of their delineation, and it is often difficult to be confident of topographical detail. In general character earlier town plans suggest that particularly the southwestern parts of the Mint Yard area was given over to gardens or open ground. Evidently the private, aristocratic accommodation within the area lay further to the NE, this likely for the most part occupying the former Hospital buildings.

It seems that following its suppression the church of St Leonard was dismantled at an early stage. However the precinct boundary walls, gates and many of the buildings of the hospital were retained. This seems to have been particularly the case in the north-eastern parts of the former precinct where structures, perhaps including the claustral ranges, Master's Lodge, etc., likely saw reuse as private dwellings and, periodically, as the Royal Mint. In the south-western part of the precinct the majority of the infirmary range – its central and NW parts – was very systematically dismantled, evidently for the recovery of building stone. Only the Roman Wall, the city boundary at that point, was retained.

3.6.1 Civil War

The Siege of York of 1643-4 directly impacted the project area, its SW and NW sides forming part of the city wall perimeter of the Royalist defences. Modification to the crosslet arrow-slits within the upper stage of the Multangular Tower may have occurred at this stage, the structure perhaps having been employed as a gun platform. Siege damage was recorded to the Roman Wall – a large breach following cannon ball impact (evidently from a Parliamentarian battery on Holgate Hill) was recorded in the engraving that accompanies Martin Lister's account of the monument of 1683.

3.7 Later 17th century – early 19th century

3.7.1 Piecemeal development

Under the auspices of the City, after 1675, the former Mint Yard saw a variety of uses and progressive sub-division.

A number of dwellings, such as the early 18th century Red House, were erected and tenanted. In 1750 a theatre was established at the present Theatre Royal site, an institution that was successively developed and expanded. This evidently reused a major medieval range parts of whose cellarage still survive. By the mid and later 18th century there was increasing encroachment, with additional structures evident in the vicinity of the infirmary. A new entrance into the interior of the site was formed off what is now Museum Street, in the area of the present Library forecourt. This provided access to a short lane, an earlier manifestation of the lane backing the St Leonard's Place terrace and bounding the east side of the library (this was slightly realigned in the 1830s).

At the beginning of the 19th century much of the south-western part of the site was occupied by private houses, stabling and livery yards (the latter function continued to the 1920s). A survey of the Mint Yard area of 1831, this prepared in relation to the proposed creation of St Leonard's Place, provides a detailed record of the numerous collection of structures that then existed. At this stage the infirmary ruin, whose undercroft had evidently been retained for the storage of wine, was almost wholly obscured. On its NE side existed a private house (Mr Hood's House); to the NW was

Mrs. Simpson's stable yard (itself bounded by a further large stable yard, Mr Etridge's). Mrs Simpson's yard was accessed from the area of the present Museum Gardens entrance by means of a large breach cut through the Roman Wall, this within the area of the former city ditch. The inner rampart to the NW is occupied by Mr Pardoe's Garden, whose house lies further east; the garden terminates to the SW at what appears, from other early views, to have been a small pavilion.

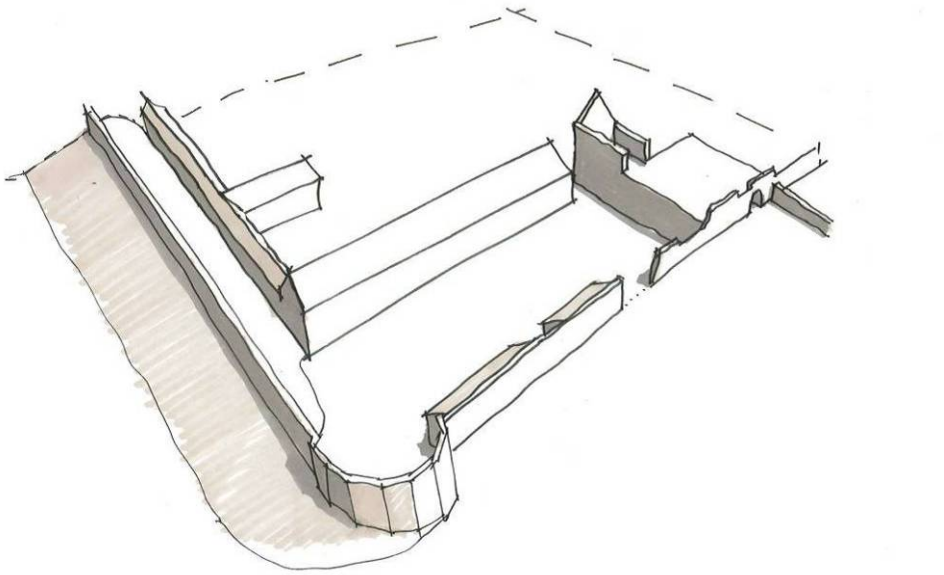


Figure 48 Schematic impression of the Mint Yard site from the west in the mid nineteenth century. *S&B*

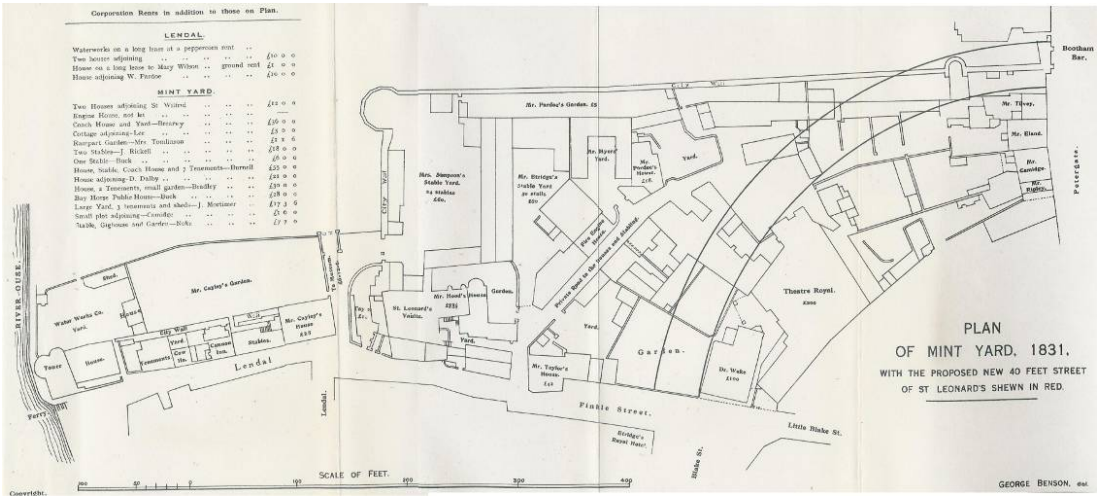


Figure 49 1831 plan of the Mint Yard area, showing the proposed route of St Leonard's Place. This 1831 plan is probably based on Baines' map of York of 1822, reproducing some of Baines' errors, and stretching the site north east to south west. This reproduction, transcribed and annotated from the original 1831 drawing by Benson in 1911, largely corrects this stretching. *Benson 1911.*

Of works and structures of the 17th to the early 19th century within the Mint Yard project area there is some documentation but almost no surviving remnant. The

early views of the Multangular Tower and Roman wall by Lister and Drake show similar structures evidently built against the interior face of the Roman Wall – two substantial ranges. It is probable that these did not incorporate remains of the former infirmary, which, as noted, seems to have been dismantled previously. A further transverse roof is visible beyond; it is possible that this did exist over the surviving infirmary ruin – perhaps relating to the chapel.

The widening of what is now Museum Street, in March 1782, was particularly destructive, this effectively removing the entire southeastern perimeter of the former hospital site. As Benson (1930, 20) notes,

> *a great part of the old walls of the Hospital and some houses adjoining Finkle (Museum) Street were taken down … During these alterations several beautiful old arches belonging to the hospital were discovered but were doomed to give place to modern improvements.*

These arches may represent the SE extent of the infirmary range, whose truncated silhouette can still be seen.

3.7.2 The creation of St Leonard's Place

However the wider Mint Yard area was most dramatically affected by the creation of St Leonard's Place in the mid 1830s when a great swathe of the site, including some 150m of the city wall, its rampart, and underlying Roman defences, was swept away.

The building of the street has been well documented by Fawcett (2009 & 2011). The Corporation seems to have decided to increase the potential for increased rental income from the area by laying out a smart new street, but in the end scored something of an own goal, as of the nine houses built, most were paid for by men on the city council, instead of prosperous investors. The development must have been an embarrassment for the corporation as it took so long to complete. Most of the old network of small yards and houses that had characterised the Mint Yard from perhaps the mid 18th century were cleared away from 1833, but the terrace was not completed until late in the decade. Additionally, far from the unified appearance that the completed terrace presents now, each house was built by different builders with different interiors, completed at different times, and there must have been toothy gaps in the terrace as each house was completed separately, long after the road was opened to traffic.

The completed terrace appears on the first edition of the Ordnance Survey of 1852 (Figure 50). A comparison of this map to the 1831 plan shows to what extent the area had been cleared and rationalised. The Ordnance Survey map also shows that the stables that had existed on the site at least since the 1822 map by Baines, largely remained, but were significantly altered, in the building of St Leonard's Place. The wider range running directly south east to north west remains, but the other range has been demolished and replaced by a narrower building, on a different axis. The map also shows that the accretions surrounding the St. Leonard's Hospital ruin had been cleared away.

The long-lasting effect on the Mint Yard area of the building of St Leonard's Place was the division of the ancient precinct of St Leonard's Hospital in two, with an impenetrable palace-façade. Its north western boundary was also blurred, with the demolition of the section of the city wall to Petergate.

Figure 50 1852 Ordnance Survey showing the Mint Yard area. Note the extent to which significant structures have their plans indicated, including the standing remains of St Leonard's Hospital, and the 'Remains of the Cloisters of St Peter's Hospital' in the theatre on St Leonard's Place. *york1852.org*

3.8 Antiquarianism and civic improvement (1683-late 19th century)

3.8.1 Early antiquarian interest

Specific antiquarian interest in the remains at Mint Yard first comes to note in 1683, when the naturalist and physician Dr Martin Lister published an account of the Roman wall in *Philosophical Transactions*, and was the first to employ the term *Multangular Tower*, the name by which it has subsequently been known. Francis Drake also describes the structure in his *Eboracum* in 1736. Each account provides a valuable early illustration of the monument.

3.8.2 The Yorkshire Philosophical Society

Interest in the site was renewed following the founding in 1822 of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society (YPS) and their establishment in 1828 on Manor Shore, the site of St Mary's Abbey, which they developed to form what is now the Museum Gardens. Their early Curator, the Rev Charles Wellbeloved, was instrumental in the investigation of the Abbey ruins and the Roman remains at the site. In spite of doubts raised, for example by the antiquary Sir Henry Englefield, Wellbeloved was

clear that the Multangular Tower was of Roman origin. The YPS' Annual Report for 1831 describes the first formal investigation of the Multangular Tower,[3]

> *The Society has been permitted* [by the Corporation of York] *to excavate on the site of the MULTANGULAR TOWER and by the side of the adjoining wall which has always been considered the most ancient part of the fortifications of York: in the course of the work indubitable evidence was discovered of the Roman origin of these remains, and additional portions of them were exposed. … These … have since been put in to the possession of the Society; and thus …the Society has been the instrument of tracing and preserving the most venerable of the antiquities which record the ancient greatness of this city …*
>
> *A subscription was opened to meet the expense of the excavation and enclosure of the remains so unexpectedly brought to light …*

In 1839 a further discovery was made at the site during excavations for the construction of a tunnel beneath the city wall rampart by C. H. Elsby Esq., of 9 St. Leonard's Place, formed so as to provide convenient access to his stables in Mint Yard, reported in the York Courant of 6 June. Tunnelling revealed the interior chamber of what has subsequently become known as the Anglian Tower. This find, and the Roman remains generally, were described and illustrated in some detail by Wellbeloved in his *Eburacum*, published in 1842.

In 1844 the YPS petitioned the Corporation with regard to preserving the infirmary ruin,

> *… that this valuable relic may be enclosed within the grounds of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, and cleared of the modern structures by which it is now almost entirely concealed, it will be safe from further injury, and add another object of picturesque beauty and of antiquarian and historical interest …*

And that by

> *… diverting the entrance into the stables now occupied by one of its tenants, the Corporation would further enable the Society to restore the fragment of the Roman Wall, detached by that entrance, to its connection with the portion preserved in the Society's grounds …*[4]

As noted in the YPS' Annual Report for 1847, in 1845 the,

> *Corporation consented to place in the possession of the Society the remains of the Hospital of St Leonard, with so much of the area surrounding them, and adjoining the Roman Wall, as would allow of their being freed from many incumbrances, and examined with convenience and advantage.*

Clearance included exposure of the infirmary ruin, much as it is today, and a partial excavation of the ground immediately adjoining them. It was reported,

> *… the most interesting discovery has resulted from taking down the house lately occupied by Mr. Hood. Two sides of this house had been formed of what were evidently external portions of an elegant ecclesiastical building; the removal of the house has brought to light a relic of great beauty,- the eastern gable of that building, the interior of*

---

[3] *Yorkshire Philosophical* Society, Annual Report for 1831 (presented February 1832), *16-17*

[4] *Yorkshire Philosophical* Society, Annual Report for 1844 (presented February 1832), *12-13*

which clearly shows that it was a chapel connected with the room or rooms above the cloisters.[5]

Wellbeloved, quoted in the same source, correctly identified what had hitherto been described as the 'Cloisters,' as the remains of the Infirmary of St Leonard's Hospital, with its chapel open to the wards. The Annual Report further notes,

Interesting remains of another building, apparently much larger and of earlier date, have been discovered, extending from the Infirmary to the foundations of a wall belonging to the Roman Multangular Tower. They consist of three rows of pillars, (those of one row being of larger dimensions, and Norman), forming with the Roman wall four aisles, at right angles to those of the ambulatory of the infirmary.

Repairs to the infirmary ruin and improvements to this extension to the Museum Gardens were overseen by the York architect GT Andrews during the period 1846-8. Andrews exhibited a plan of what had been unearthed of the hospital remains at the time of the visit of the Archaeological Institute to York in 1846; he also produced survey drawings of the chapel *as esposed in May 1846*, these dated the following month (reproduced in Benson, 1930). Not only was the ruin consolidated and made accessible – much of which was to be completed by the time of the visit - but parts of the excavated remains were put on display. It is also clear that the area was successively developed as a 'garden of antiquities' – from an early date an impressive collection of Roman sarcophagi were displayed there, both within the Multangular Tower, where they still remain, and within the water gate entrance within the infirmary ruin, these recently relocated.

3.9 20th century - present

3.9.1 A Public Library for York

Since York Minster established its library in the early 15th century, there have been repositories of books in York. However, there were not libraries that the 20th century borrower would recognise.

It is known that St Wilfrid, Bishop of York in the late 7th century gave a gospel book to the Minster[6]. Although further acquisitions were made, it was not until a bequest of 1414

broke the custom of leaving in one's will books like other goods to be sold for the benefit of the fabric fund, and instead bequeathed [the] large collection of eighty volumes for the formation of a library at the Minster.[7]

Whilst York Minster library grew and widened the scope of its collection over subsequent centuries, it was not be until 1781 that a secular library was formed in York. This took the form of a commercial circulation library, set up by six York booksellers[8]. This was followed by a Subscription Library set up in 1794. In effect a private book club, with books circulating amongst members at monthly meetings, the growth of membership meant that the society constructed a building in 1812.

---

[5] *Yorkshire Philosophical* Society, Annual Report for 1846 (presented February 1847), *7-8*

[6] Tomlinson, O.S.; 'Libraries in York' in *The Noble City of York*; Edited by A Stacpoole; 1972; p.969

[7] Tomlinson 'Libraries in York'. p971

[8] Tomlinson 'Libraries in York'. p974

Further growth meant that the negotiations were made with the City Council in the 1830s with a view to purchasing the large corner house on the new St Leonard's Place development. Here it remained until 1917 by which point the competition from circulating libraries and the public library forced the closure of the library – its assets, including the St Leonard's Place premises and the collections, were purchased by the city.

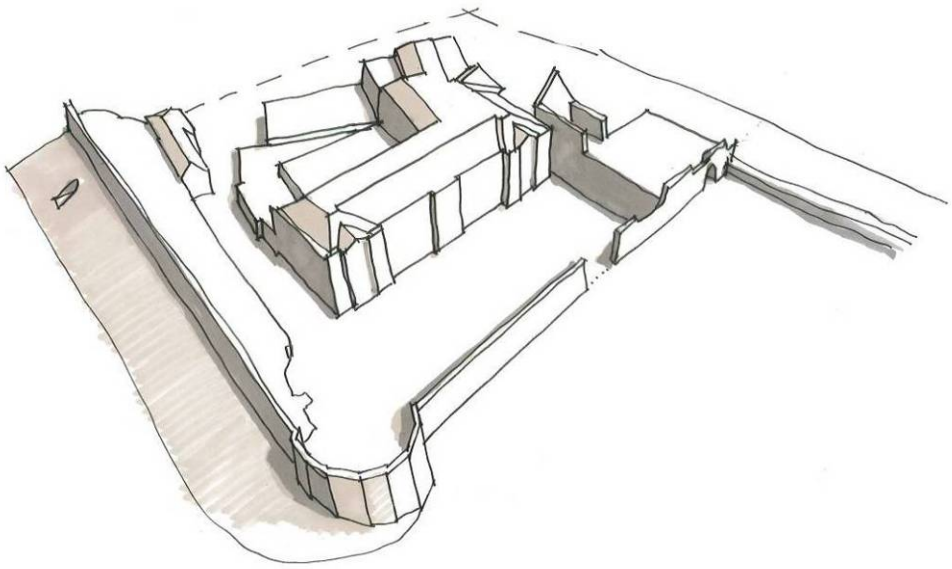


Figure 51 Schematic impression of the Mint Yard site from the west in the mid twentieth century. *S&B*

One library of key significance to the present Central Library was that of the York Institute of Art, Science and Literature. Set up in 1827, the Institute was formed 'for the diffusion of useful knowledge amongst the middle and working classes of society'.[9] This took the form of lectures and classes, but also the provision of a gymnasium and a library and news room.

York was comparatively late to adopt the Public Libraries Act which had been passed in 1850. The original act had had little impact across England and Wales, largely because of the restrictive provisions within the remit of the Act, but an 1855 revision increased the revenue that could be gained from an increase in local rates and allowed for the purchase of books. Nevertheless, the Act still stipulated that two-thirds of ratepayers had to agree to the adoption of the Act in a poll – later amended to a simple majority in a further amending Act of 1866. The first such poll in York took place in 1882, but the proposal was soundly defeated. Despite efforts to establish a public library in York to celebrate the Jubilee of Queen Victoria in 1887, a further poll that year was also defeated. It was not until 1891 that the ratepayers of York voted to adopt the provisions of the Act – and this time with a majority in favour.

One of the key moves that had secured the positive vote was the purchase of the assets of the York Institute by the city just six weeks before the poll. The York Institute had been weakened by their considerable expenditure on the Clifford Street building – hopes that an increase in subscriptions would compensate were hampered

[9] Tomlinson 'Libraries in York'. p977

by the moves in 1887 to establish a free library for the Jubilee, and its teaching functions had been superseded with the founding of a Technical School in the city.

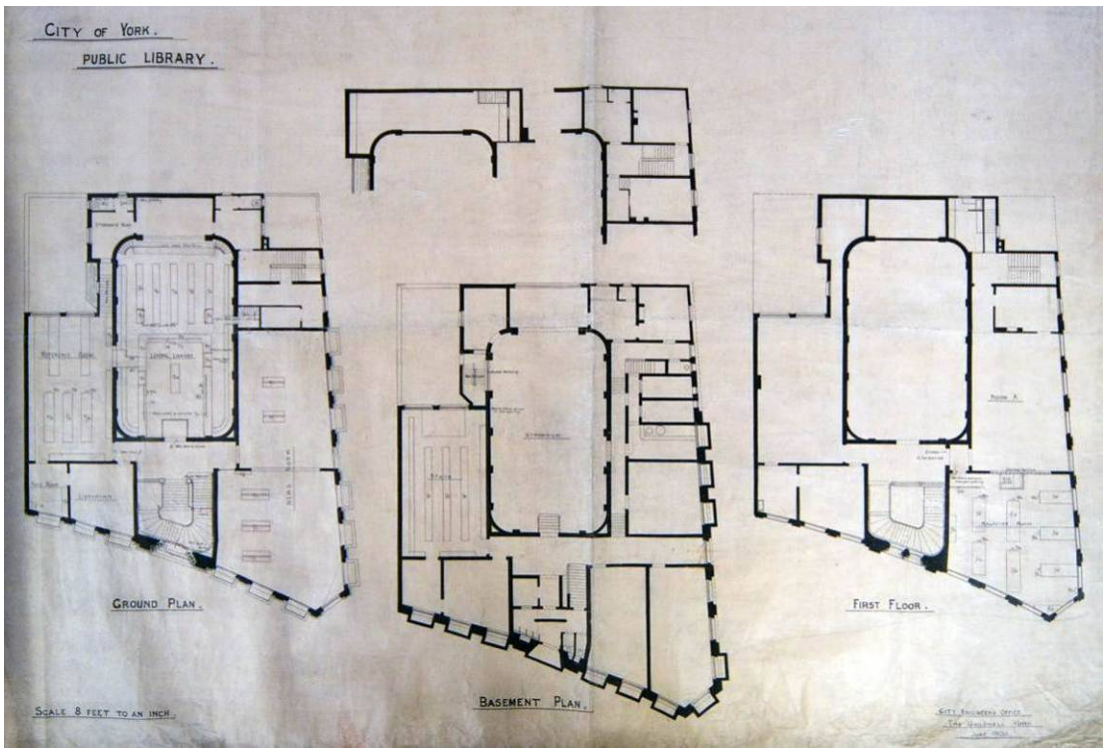


Figure 52 1906 plan by the City Engineer of the Clifford Street public library. *UoYArchives*

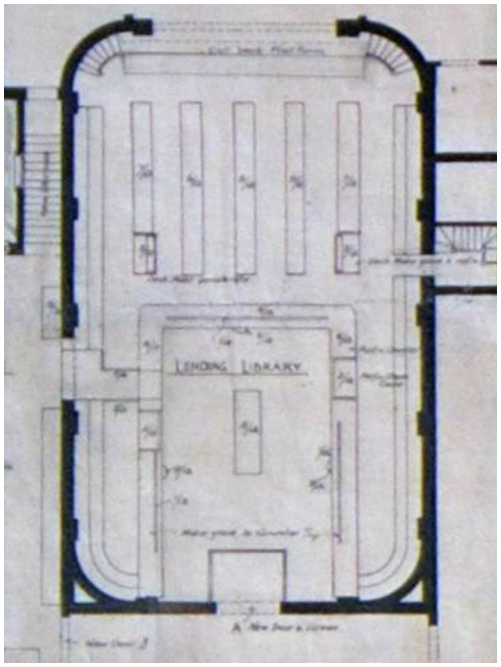


Figure 53 Detail of figure X showing layout of the lending library. *CYC*

This allowed the public library to be quickly set up and the library in the Clifford Street premises was officially opened in October 1893[10]. Arthur Furnish, who had taken on the post of secretary of the Institute in 1885 was subsequently appointed city librarian – he was to remain in post until 1929. As a result he is a key historical link between the Institute and the present library building.A 1906 plan in the Brierley Archive held by the University of York gives a clear indication of the size, layout and functionality of the public library service at Clifford Street.

One of the most interesting aspects of the plan is the lending library on the ground floor: in effect the opposite of how we understand a library to function today

The public area is within the perimeter desk, with only staff having access to the books on the shelves. Members of the library would request a book, and this would be fetched and brought to the desk.

[10] Tomlinson 'Libraries in York'. p985

An adjacent reference room allowed for books to be consulted on the premises, and a large news room was also provided on the ground floor. The public library facility at Clifford Street proved to be very popular, and soon complaints were being raised as to overcrowding. As early as 1913 the Library Committee began to consider the construction of a new library. The Carnegie United Kingdom Trust was approached, and followed up with a formal approach in 1915. An offer of £12,000 towards the cost a new library building was made in early 1916, but it was advised that construction should wait until after the war. Nevertheless, the site at Museum Street was earmarked and an architect was appointed, the Yorkshire firm of Brierley & Rutherford.

3.9.2 Open Access Libraries

The idea of an open-access library had been discussed in York for at least a decade prior to the opening of the Central Library in 1927. Open access libraries were not new in the United Kingdom, with other libraries funded by the Carnegie Trust open access from at least before the First World War. For example the extension to the Carnegie Library, Dunfermline, in 1913 was open access.[11]

The open access system had a great influence on the ultimate form of the interior: book stack areas were to be browsed by the public, and were no longer to be the storage facilities of earlier libraries. This is perhaps one of the key reasons for the splayed layout of the main lending library, generously lit by clerestorey windows.

3.9.3 Walter Brierley (1862-1926) and the construction of the Central Library (1925-35)

The Central Library building was built in several phases, the first part opened in 1927, the entrance elevation and the south west range in 1934, and the reference library in 1938. It was one of the last works of the architect, Walter Brierley (1862-1926), and was continued after his death by his partner James Hervey Rutherford (1874-1946). Despite the large number of commissions that Brierley's successive practices executed, he is not very well known, even in Yorkshire, where most of his buildings were built, and there are very few published sources. Brierley was commissioned to design the library around 1916-17, somewhat surprisingly considering the wartime conditions. It is not known how he procured the commission, however an understanding of how he ran his practice may provide some clues.

Brierley was extremely well connected and a good networker, and from his arrival in York in the mid 1880s had procured work by personal recommendation.[12] He relied on this network throughout his career, beginning with projects for the Yorkshire gentry – houses and racecourses – moving onto buildings for the companies owned by them – largely banks and insurance firms – and the civic institutions governed by them – schools, police stations and hospitals.[13] This explains why most of the prolific output of the practice was confined to Yorkshire and the north east, and the few

---

[11] Simpson & Brown Architects *Dunfermline Carnegie Library conservation plan* (2007 & 2012). p. 34

[12] We are grateful for the assistance of Edward Waterson of York for his knowledge of Walter Brierley's practice.

[13] Nuttgens, P. *Brierley in Yorkshire: the architecture of the turn of the century* (York Georgian Society: 1984). p.22

exceptions outside the region were also due to personal connections of Brierley or his clients. It is important to note that Brierley did not work in detail on projects. He gathered an able team of draftsmen, and his role at the head of the firm was in getting new clients, overall aesthetic concepts and design sketches.

By the time of the library commission, Brierley had built many buildings in York during his long career, perhaps the most conspicuous being the Board School buildings. He had been appointed county architect for the North Riding of Yorkshire in 1901, serving until 1922,[14] and his practice was in the process of building the Northallerton County Hall, begun 1904-05, with more in 1914-15.[15] He had established a reputation for delivering well-designed, practical, no-frills institutional buildings, on time and on budget, and was probably the obvious choice for York Council to appoint for a public library building.

A letter to Brierley from the city librarian, Arthur Furnish, dating to November 1917 in the manuscript collection of the Brierley Archive refers to Brierley working on 'final plans' suggesting the commission had begun earlier. No plans exist from this period, but O.S. Tomlinson has noted that it 'was decided to modify the original plan and erect the building in stages'.[16]

3.9.4 Stylistic treatment and design context

At the end of the nineteenth century architects were confronted with a range of new building types that had no precedents in history. There were no insurance offices, Board schools or public libraries built in Antiquity, the Renaissance or any other

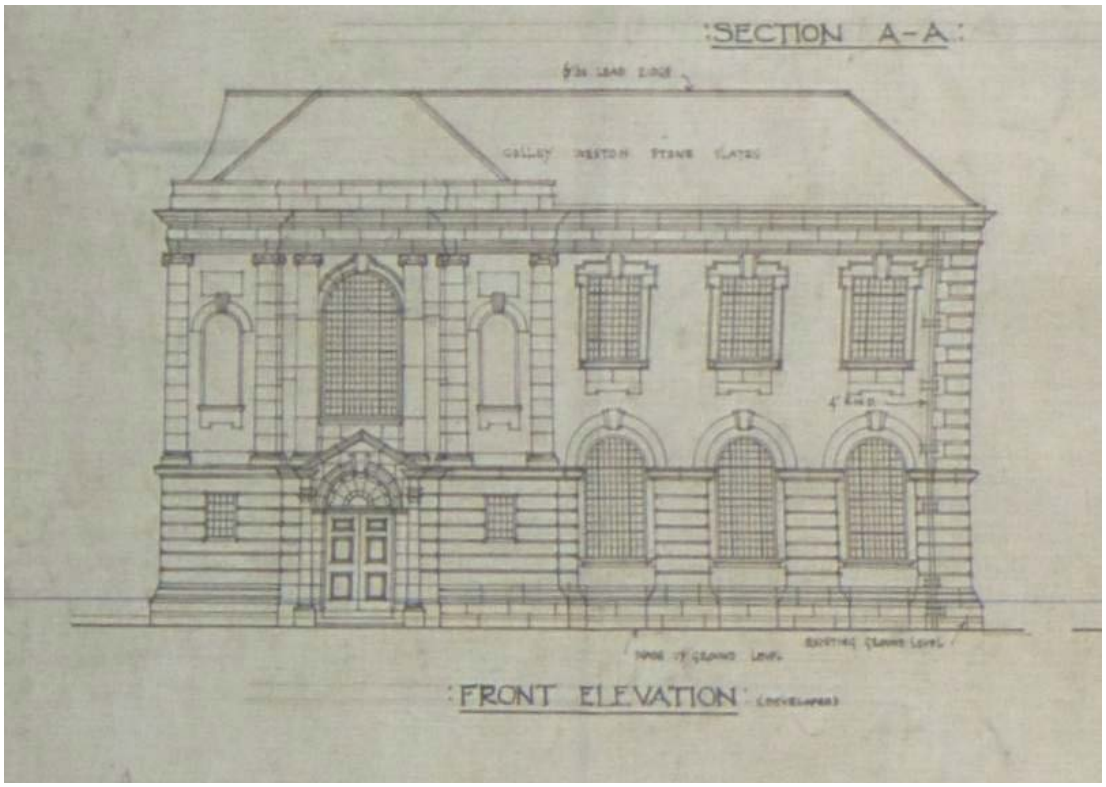


Figure 54 Detail of drawing from 1925 showing extent of front elevation of phase one. *UoYArchives*

[14] Nuttgens *Brierley in Yorkshire* p.26
[15] Nuttgens *Brierley in Yorkshire* p.26
[16] Tomlinson 'Libraries in York'. p988

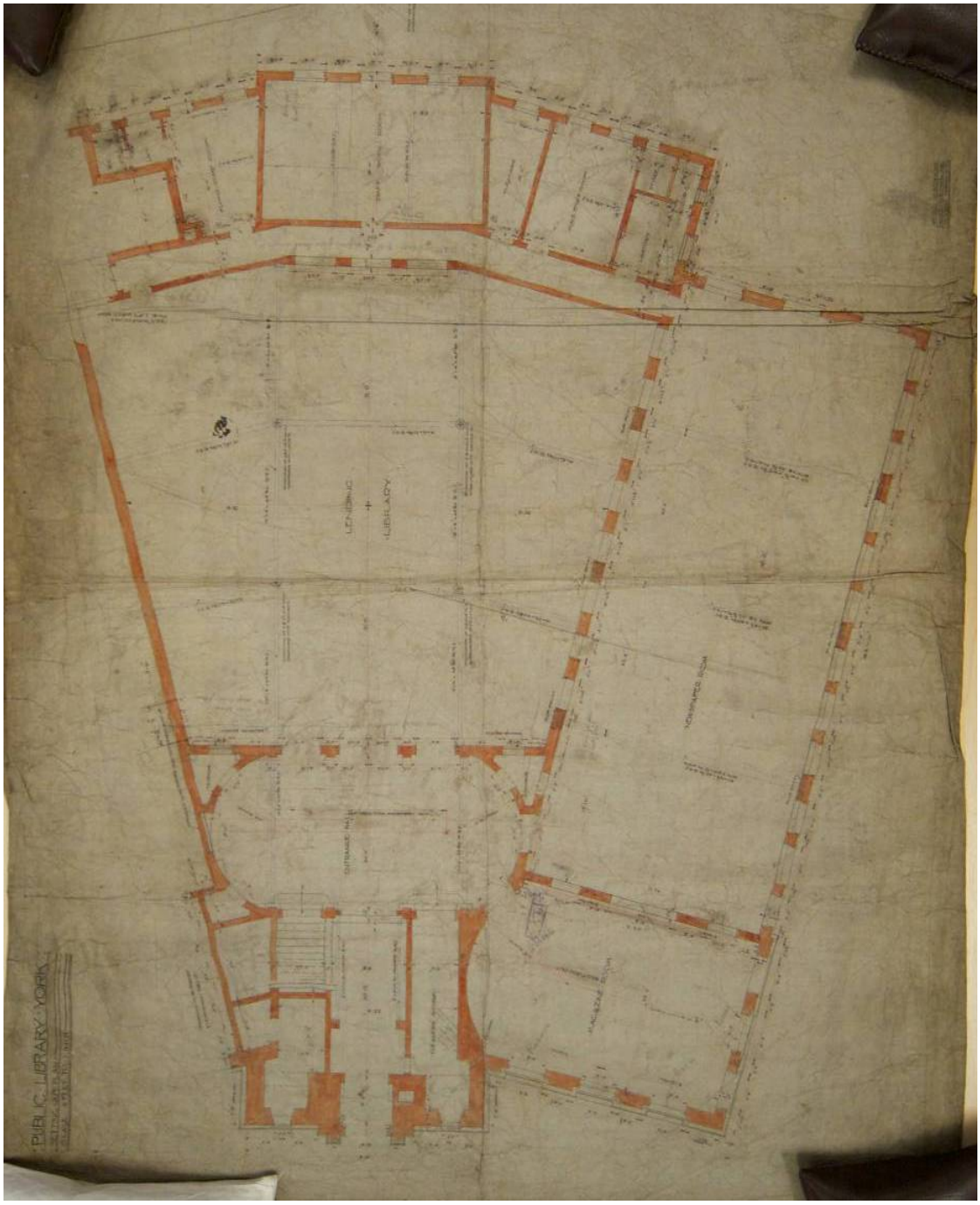


Figure 55 1925 Brierley & Rutherford plan showing extent of ground floor of phase one. *UoYArchives*

Figure 56 Basement plan: historical phasing. *S&B*

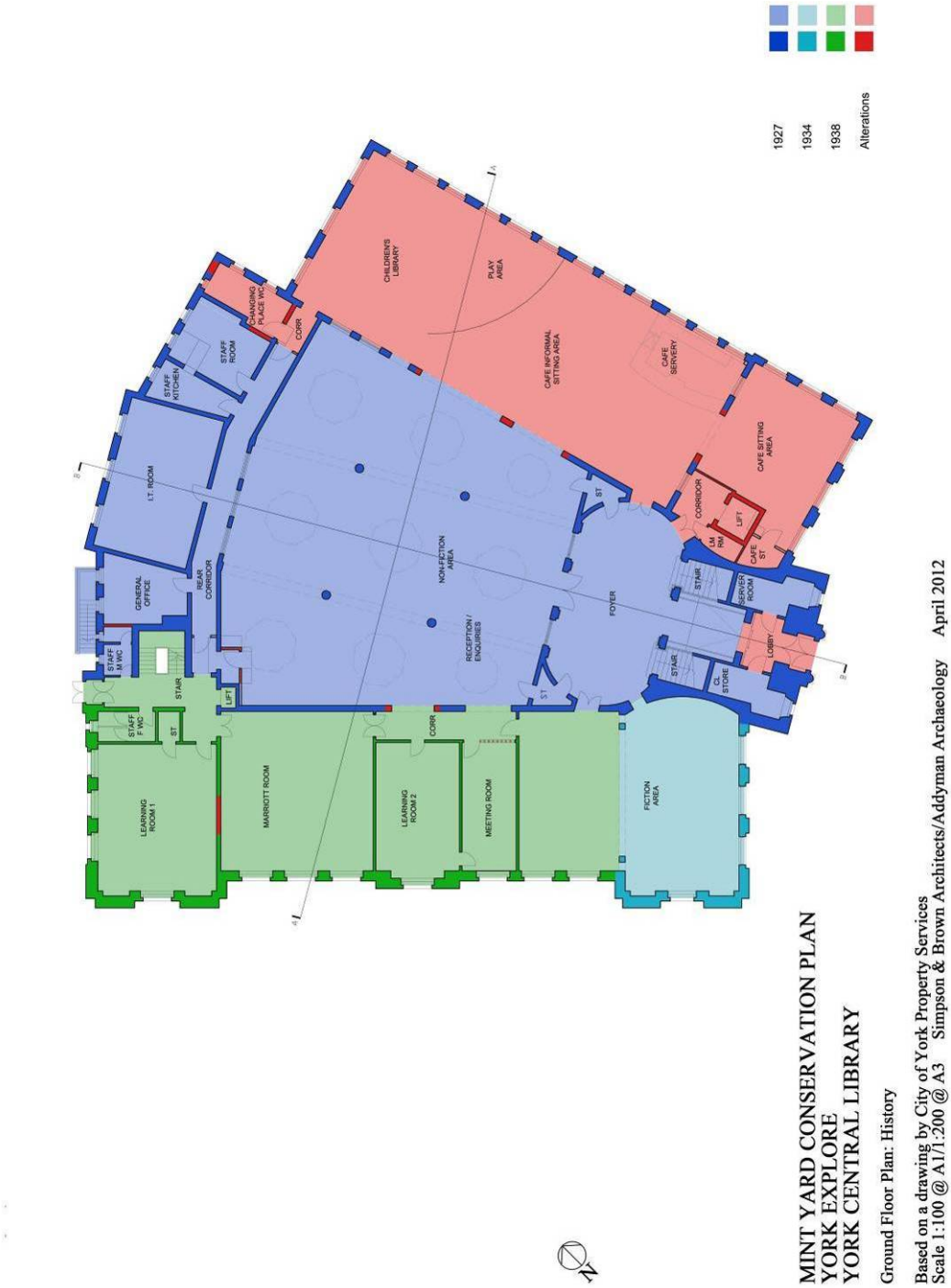


Figure 57 Ground floor plan: historical phasing. *S&B*

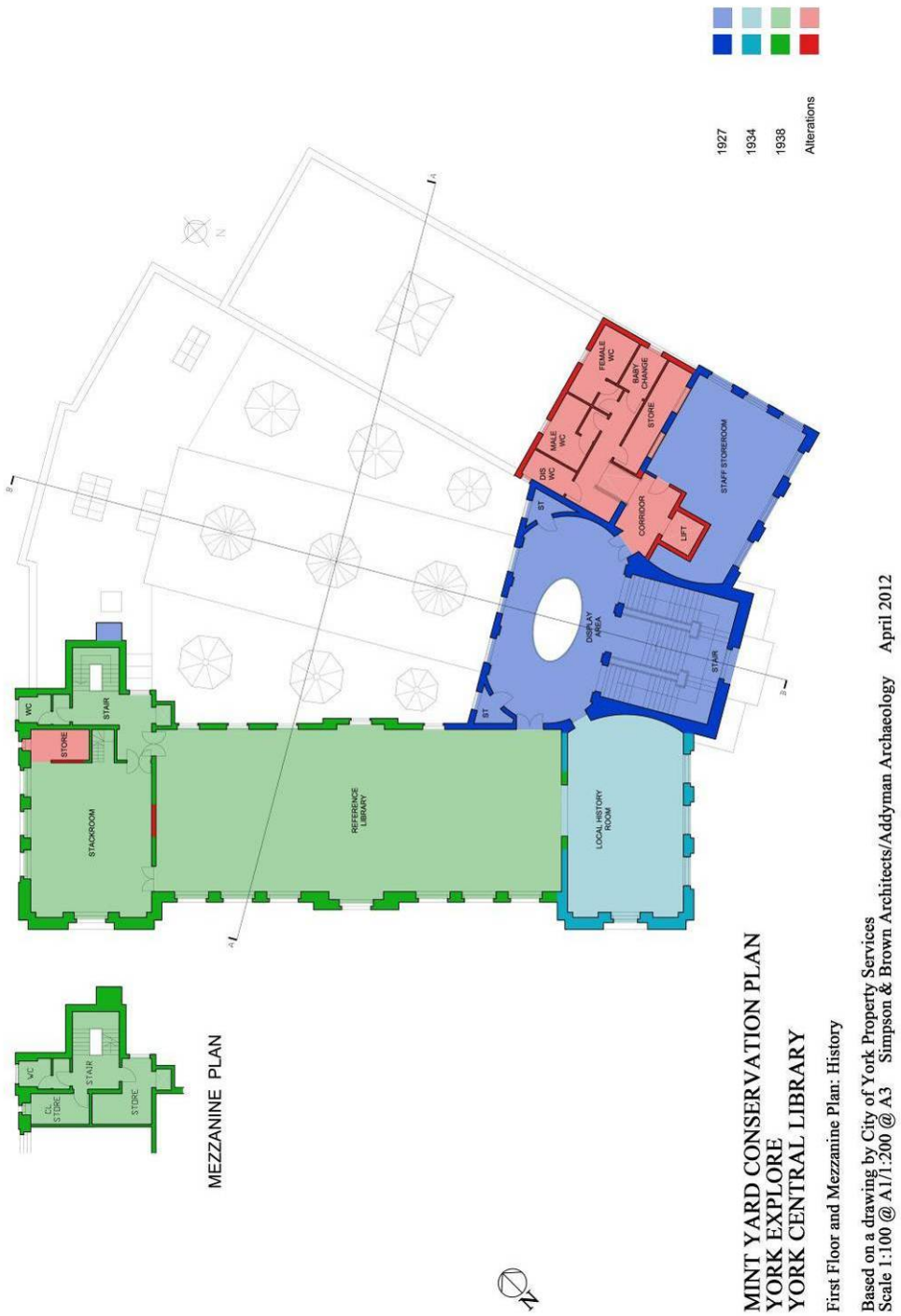


Figure 58 First floor plan: historical phasing. *S&B*

historical period. Architects were keen to develop new ways of expressing the function and character of these institutions.

Brierley built many institutional buildings in the Queen Anne, English Baroque Revival style, a style that was pioneered as appropriate for these types of building by Robson in the London Board Schools from the 1870s. He comments on the contemporary popularity of the Gothic style in new buildings, stating that it seems pointless to 'take a great leap over the intervening centuries' between the nineteenth and the medieval period, ignoring architectural development in between.[17]

He states that the buildings of these periods are more valuable in developing modern styles because they were chronologically closer to the present day. In justifying the use of a historicist style, he argued that the Queen Anne revival style was particularly appropriate for school buildings because it was disassociated with the church, was flexible to site and plan, and cheap, because it was executed brick.[18] It is also essentially a very English style, details and materials being based on buildings from around the time of the reign of Queen Anne in the early eighteenth century, and often incorporating English vernacular elements, like half timbering. Brierley, following other architects of the period like Shaw, extended his use of the style from schools, to private houses and to institutional buildings, including the Northallerton County Hall, and the York Central Library.

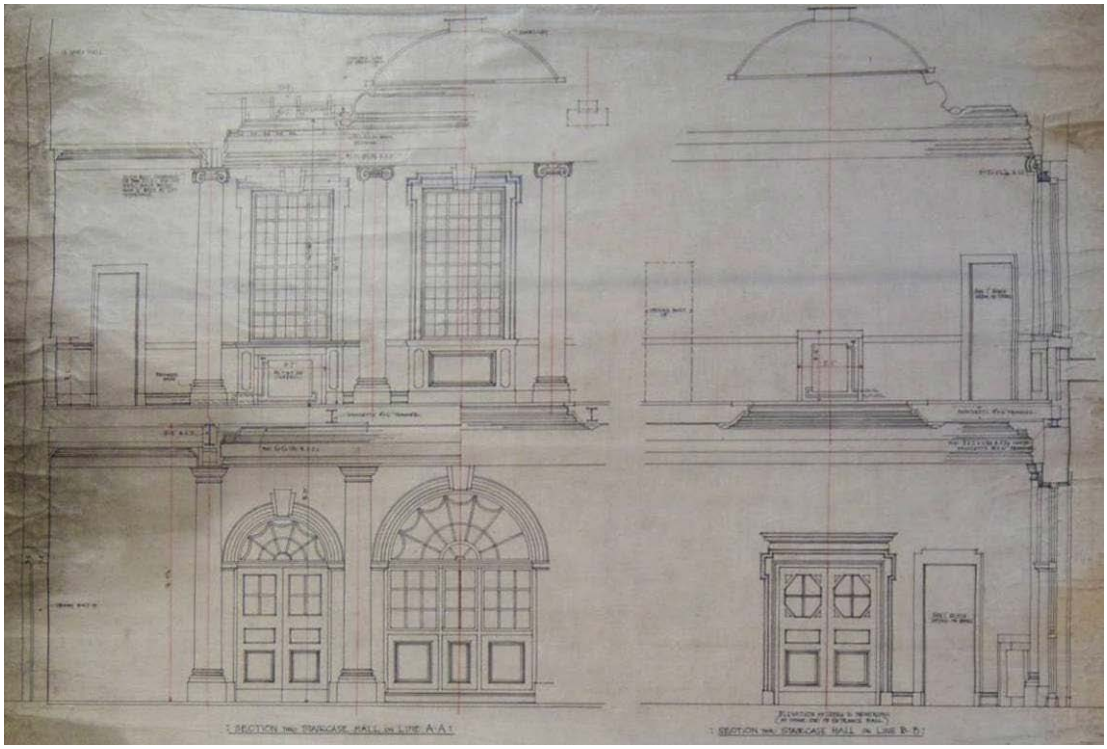


Figure 59 1926 Brierley & Rutherford section of the lower and upper entrance halls. *UoYArchives*

The flexibility of the style partly lies in the pragmatic approach taken to the classical language of architecture in the Baroque period. There is no slavish following of the rules in all parts of the design, though it is clearly in a neo-classical style. This

[17] Robson *School architecture* p. 323

[18] Robson, E. R. *School architecture: being practical remarks…* (London: John Murray, 1874) p. 339

characteristic was common both around 1700, and in the early twentieth century. A Queen Anne revival building could be decorated to fit a budget with most decorative architectural elements being optional. The Central Library interiors are relatively plain, apart from the lower and upper entrance halls and stair. Even in the hall and stair, where the Ionic and Doric orders are used, other decoration is kept to a minimum.

Comparing this treatment to the contemporary interiors of the Northallerton County Hall, the flexibility of the style becomes clear. These interiors are lavish by comparison, with the Corinthian order and an elaborate wall profile, intricate mouldings, and no area of wall left without plaster ornament.

Figure 60 Brierley office, north and east elevations of the Grand Committee Room, Northallerton County Hall, c.1913. *UoYArchives*

The derivation of the overall form of the library is also characteristic of contemporary architecture and shows at once how Brierley's practice was well acquainted with modern developments, and how skilfully they were able to lay out a building on a site. The footprint is a curious wedge shape that was derived from the limitations of the site itself. Brierley was well aware of developments in architecture at the end of the nineteenth century, including ideas that emerged from the Arts & Crafts movement concerning organic design, and *Beaux-Arts* concerns of the integration of a functional plan with a symmetrical form. The library is a free plan, but symmetrical, focussed on its function as a library, with clear distinctions between circulation space and reading rooms, and arranged into a footprint entirely generated by the shape of the available land on the site. This organic response was common to the best architects of the period, including Lutyens,[19] to whom Brierley is sometimes compared.[20] The library is a good illustration of many of the influences of architectural thinking in the early twentieth century.

3.9.5 Phase One of the Library: Entrance Block, North-East Wing & Lending Library, 1927

The phased building programme of the library can be traced in the cartographical evidence, as there are Ordnance Survey maps of the city published in 1930 and 1937, the latter with later additions (Figure 61 and Figure 62).

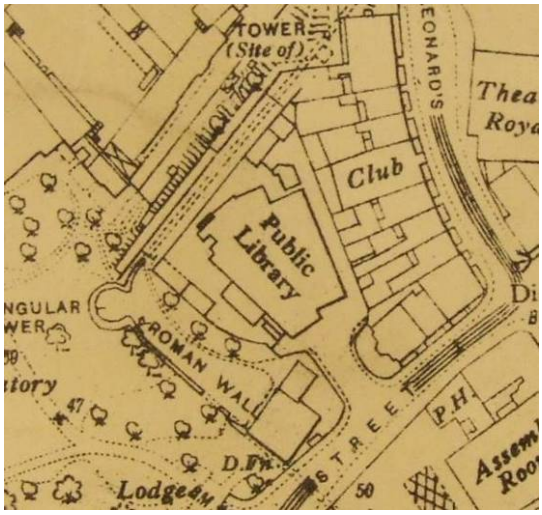


Figure 61 1926-7 Ordnance Survey, published in 1930. *York Explore*

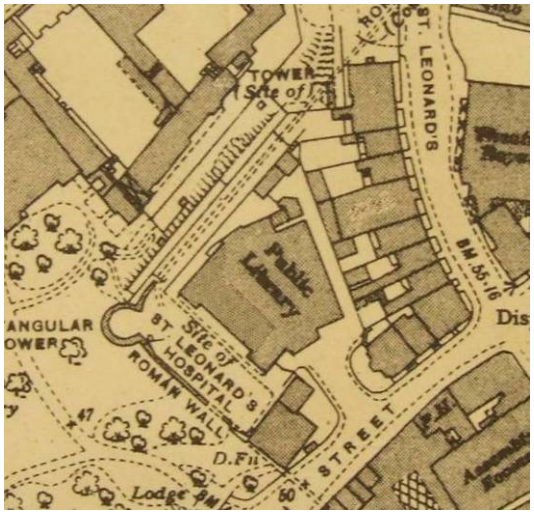


Figure 62 1937 Ordnance Survey with York City Council Additions of 1947, published in 1947. *York Explore*

There is a plaque within the entrance to north of inner entrance door (Figure 64). As noted on the plaque, the contribution from the Carnegie United Kingdom Trust had been increased to £13,200, to reflect the increase in costs since the War. The total cost of the library as built in 1927 was £24,500, with the balance being met by a loan.

[19] Watkin D. *A history of western architecture* (3rd ed. London, Lawrence King: 2000) p. 632

[20] This comparison is somewhat overstated as very few of Brierley's buildings have the innate genius for detail and originality present in almost all of Lutyen's *oeuvre*.

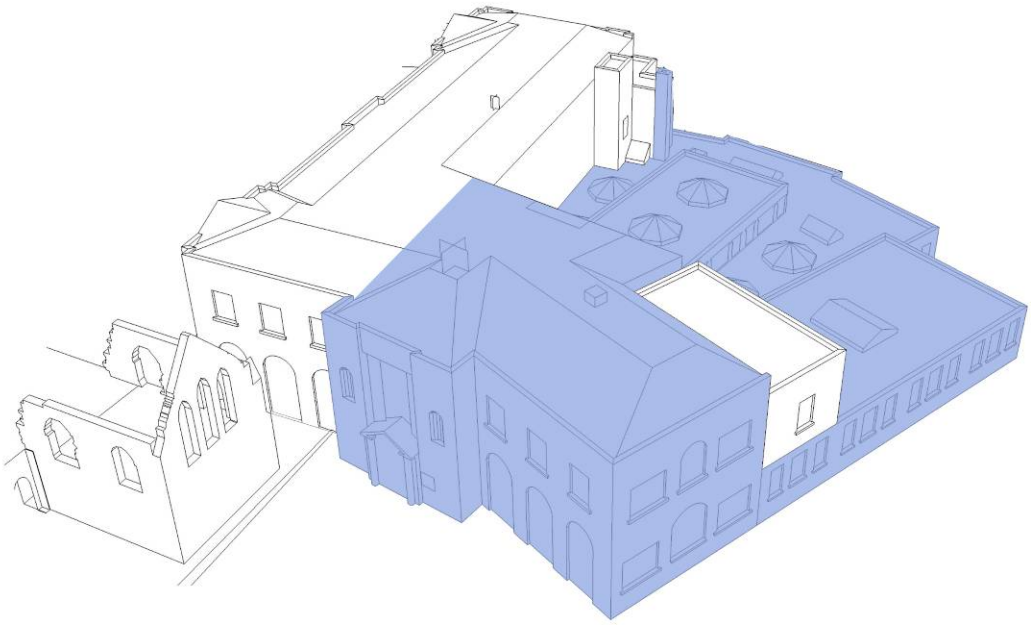


Figure 63 Phase one of the library building. *S&B*

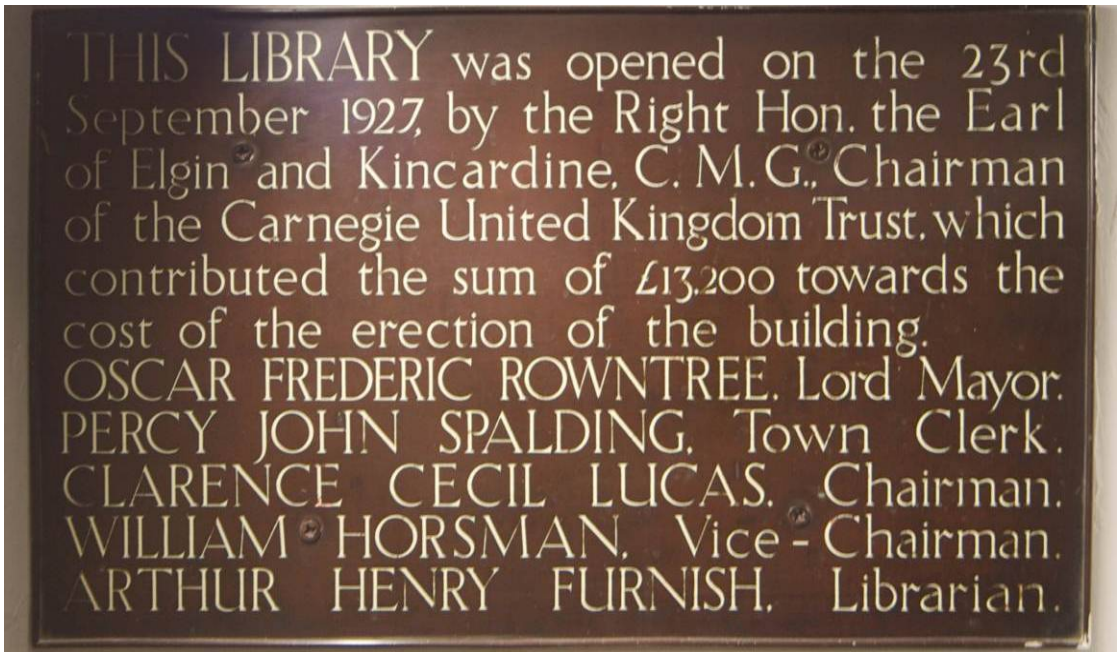


Figure 64 Plaque marking the opening of the library in 1927. *S&B*

There were changes made to the layout and use of the completed rooms. The 1925 plan above shows the front (south east) room as a magazine room, yet by the end of 1926, drawings show this space as the children's library, also shown in a photograph of the entrance lobby, below, with a sign for 'Juvenile Library'. The 1925 plan also shows the north east room adjacent to the main lending library as the newspaper room, yet the same photograph shows 'reference library' above the door to this space.

Tomlinson writes about the success of the library and the problem that arose:

> *The popularity of the library grew and a queue stretching into the public square was common. Every possible restriction was removed to enable readers to get more easily to the bookshelves with the result that a new problem arose - the Lending Library became too crowded.*[21]

Thus, only six years after the first phase, the second phase was commissioned.

A set of photographs exist probably from shortly after the library was completed in the late 1920s. There are two photographs of the entrance lobby; a view of the main lending library issue desk; a view of the main lending library taken from the desk; and a view of the children's library.

Figure 65 shows the screen wall between the lower entrance hall and the stair.

Figure 65 c1927 view of entrance lobby. *CYC*

The commemorative plaque is in place, but on the side wall of the entrance hall. In the historical photographs of the entrance lobby, a much subtler colour scheme is in evidence than now. It appears that the architectural elements of the pilasters, architraves and the cornice were picked out in a darker, possibly a stone colour, with a paler colour on the wall surfaces in-between.

[21] Ibid. p988

Figure 66 c1927 view of entrance lobby. *CYC*

The ceiling appears to be a darker colour than the walls, possibly painted the same colour as the cornice with the plasterwork around the oculus a paler colour. The railings are painted darker than the timber handrail. The light fittings are evident, as is the original arrangement of the timber screen to the library.

All of the fitted joinery was left as exposed timber rather than painted. The skirting at the bowed ends and in the entrance lobby was a darker tone than the other painted elements. The photograph was taken with a light source above or at the camera - possibly a flash.

Figure 67 shows that the lending library issue desk had its exit door to the north and entrance door from the lobby to the south. The central area had glazed book or display cases and possibly a hatch in the middle. At this time the joinery of the architraves was not painted. The counter is not the counter which is stored in the upper lobby.

The floor is herringbone parquet similar to other floors. There were short lengths of timber balustrade and timber gates to the north and south of the counter. Also to the north and south were screen partitions which were not continued up to the underside of the beams but seemed to have continued the moulding across from the head of the lugs on either side of the outer arches on the screen. It is not clear how far these screens projected but they are not obvious in the photograph taken from the counter westwards which show the easternmost columns so it seems that these screens did not extend as far as the first column.

Figure 67 c1927 view of main lending library issue desk. *CYC*

Figure 68 c1927 view of main lending library. *CYC*

The heating pipes over the cornice above the columns are visible. The sills, both upper and lower, of the clerestorey windows, together with frames themselves, were painted considerably darker than the walls. The walls were not white but the screens to the north and south of the counter appear to have been near white.

The photograph of the main lending library (Figure 68) shows the bookshelves in position. Labels have been placed and the cataloguing system is in place at the side of the counter. By the side of the counter was a railing and timber gate. The original pendant light fittings are visible. They are all at the same height, just below capital level of the columns. The windows have metal frames which were painted with a considerably darker colour than the walls.

It is not clear why the central window on the west wall of the main library space at upper level should have a higher sill than the ones on either side.

The corridor beyond also had off-white walls with dark joinery. The colour used in the walls does not appear to have been white and might have been a fawn or stone colour.

Figure 69 of the children's library shows the current cafe area before it was divided up with a lift and a door formed in its western wall through to the current cafe server. It shows bookcases on the walls and Arts & Crafts type tables and chairs not similar to any currently in the library. There is a counter with a glazed screen, a rail and a gate at the entrance. The light fittings are globe light fittings similar to the ones in the entrance hall.

The photographs make it clear that there was a considerable amount of furniture supplied in the library when it was completed. It is lamentable that so much has been lost as it was all designed by Brierley & Rutherford. A number of drawings exist in the archives showing their detailing.

Figure 69 c1927 view of children's library. *CYC*

The fitted joinery was also designed by Brierley & Rutherford, including fitted book-cases, fitted desks, booths, screens and 'enclosures'. They are all specified in oak and deal, and designed around the radiators and radiator pipes, with asbestos panels to prevent scorching. The furniture designs are eclectic, a free combination of details from Neo-classical, *Art Nouveau*, and the Arts & Crafts, typical of furniture of the period. It was clearly of high quality build, as the furniture that survives, is in very serviceable condition.

3.9.6 Phase Two of the Library: South West Wing, 1934

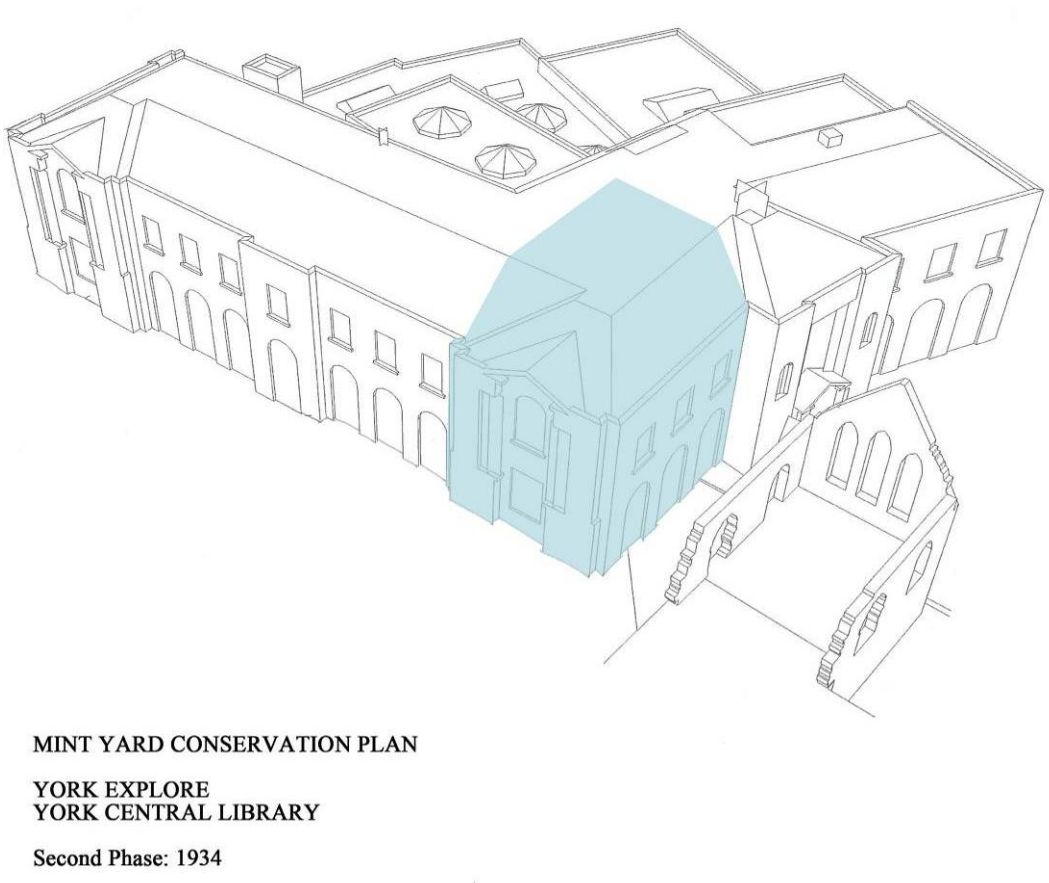


Figure 70 Phase two of the library building. *S&B*

Phase two was relatively modest, yet was an important step as it balanced the front elevation with a south-west wing. The ground floor room is identified in plans of 1933 as a News Room – which had been presumably displaced somewhat by the reference library function in the main north-east room of phase one. The upstairs room in this wing is not labelled on plans of 1933, but it is likely to have been related to the function of the north room on the first floor which is shown as an exhibition room in the 1925 plan.

It is interesting to note that there is no discernible difference in either the brick facing or the stone detailing to the south-west wing, despite there being a seven-year gap in construction. It would have been difficult to predict that a direct match in materials would have been available for future phases: quarrying of stone from different parts of a quarry, and natural variation in raw materials used in the manufacture of bricks would result in some dissimilarity, however closely controlled. This suggests that the materials for future phases might have been sourced at the start of the first phase and stored on the expectation that all three phases would be realised in the future.

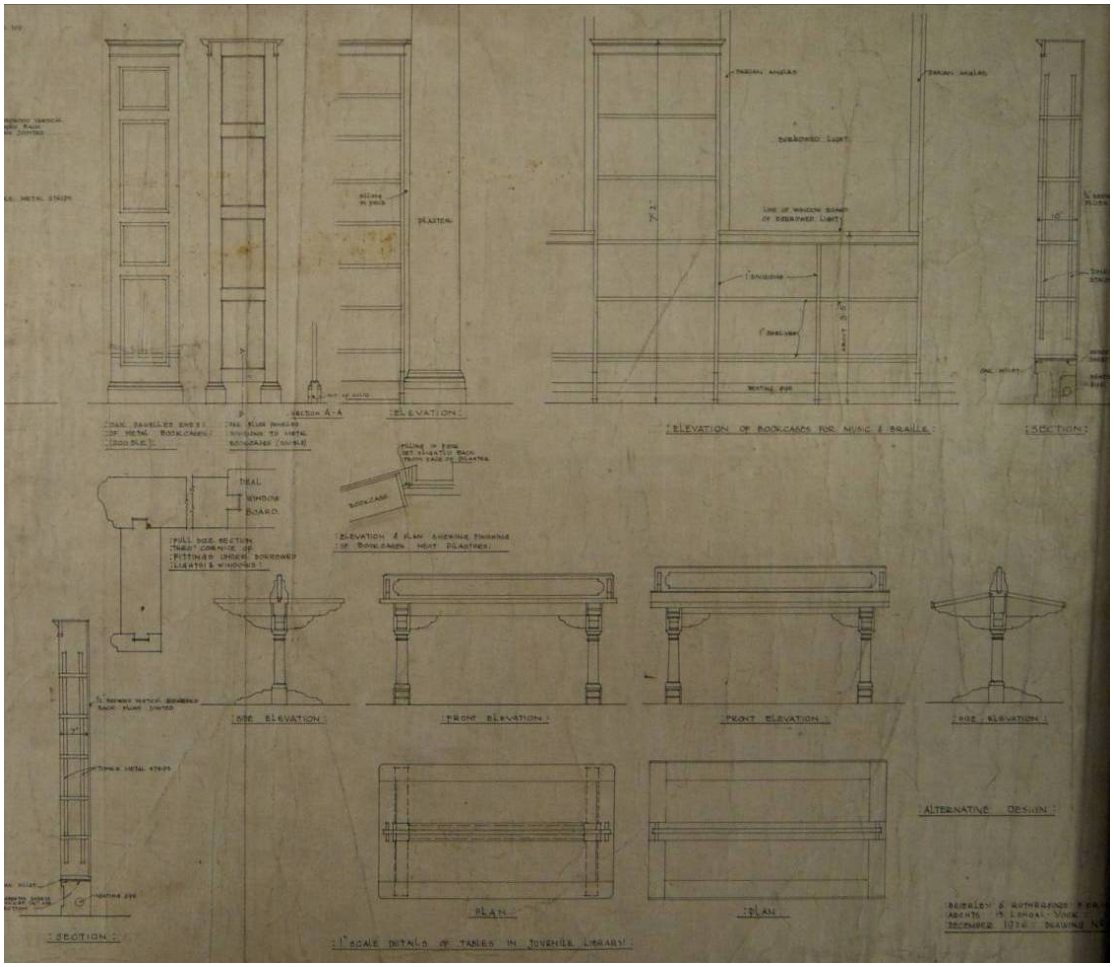


Figure 71 Brierley office, designs for the Children's Library bookcases and two types of table for music and Braille, 1926. The materials specified are oak and deal. *UoYArchives*

3.9.7 Phase Three of the Library: West Wing, 1938

Only two years after the completion of the south west wing, Brierley & Rutherford were commissioned to complete the building with the construction of the west wing. Tomlinson again notes that 'in the light of experience the original plans were

modified.'[22] Few changes are likely to have been made to the exterior as the end pavilion of the south-west range had been completed as part of phase two. Nevertheless, the plans show some alterations that had not been anticipated by phase two. The ground floor room of phase two, was constructed with just two small doorway openings on the rear wall – as with all the other anticipated openings, these were fully constructed and then filled in temporarily. In the 1936 plans, almost the entire wall was opened up to form a larger children's library, suggesting that the room provided in phase one had already become too small. The first floor room had not been constructed with any anticipated openings to the adjacent room, but by 1936, a wide opening was proposed to open this room up to the proposed large reference library.

Figure 72 Phase three of the library building. *S&B*

The completion of phase three in 1938 increased the floor space greatly. In addition to the larger children's library previously mentioned, and the first floor reference library, the librarian was provided with a separate office. Large areas of storage were provided for in the basement, ground and first floor. Unfortunately the plans from 1936 show only the additions made, and there are no plans of the whole building as completed in 1938, so it is not certain what the original children's and reference library spaces of the first phase were used for. It is possible that the division between the reference library and the main lending library was removed at this time to form a larger lending library.

[22] Ibid. p988

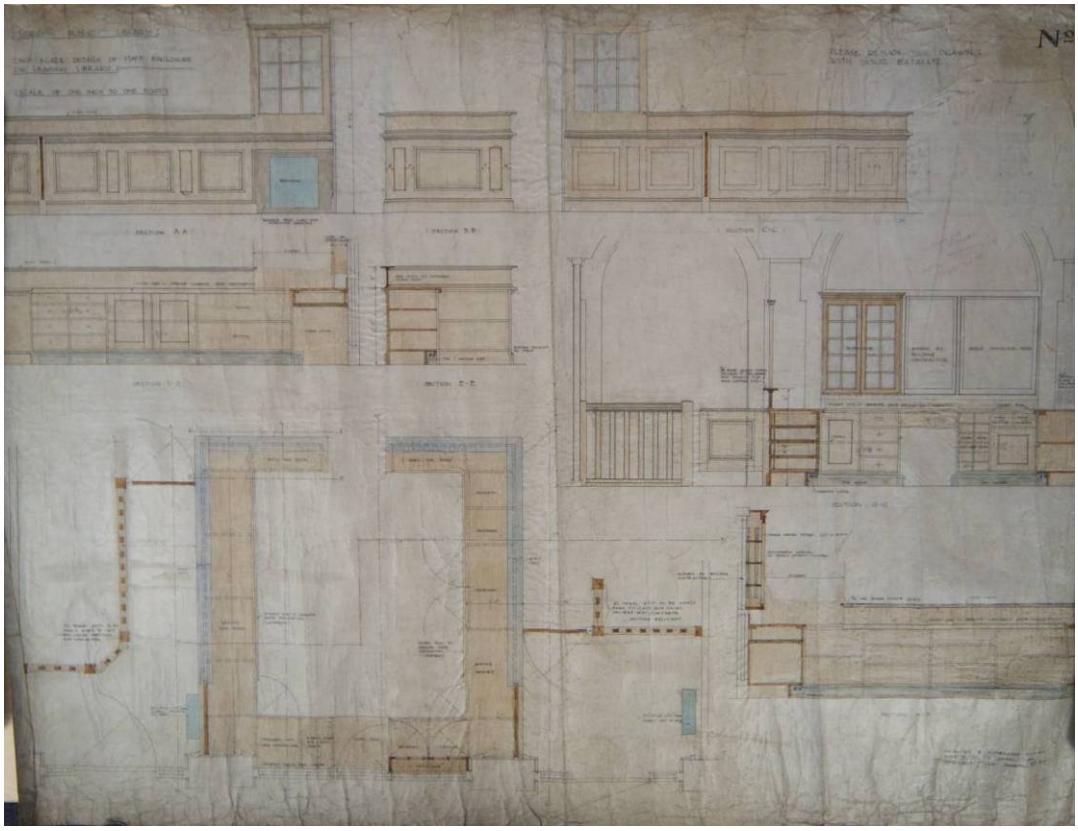


Figure 73 Brierley office, designs for 'staff enclosure' or main issue desk in the main lending library, 1926. It is a tender drawing, marked 'Please return this drawing with your estimate' in the top right hand corner. *UoYArchives*

3.9.8 World War II (1939-45)

One of a large number constructed by the City, an air raid shelter was excavated under library lawn. This had been approved by the Air Raid Precautions Committee in January 1939, at a cost of £275 and to accommodate 150 persons. The remains of the structure were encountered during the 1999 *Time Team Live* excavations.

3.9.9 Post-World War II Alterations to the library

The first floor of the north east block was extended in the third quarter of the twentieth century to provide enhanced toilet facilities for visitors. This took the form of a simple flat-roofed block, entirely utilitarian in appearance. It would seem that this would date to the same time as the subdivision of the ground, first floor rooms of the north-east block to install a lift and access corridor space – the toilets are accessed from the first floor lift lobby.

Other subdivisions took place – the north wing was subdivided to provide a storage and despatch area, and offices were created in the front of the children's library on the ground floor. Until 2010, the layout of the main lending library, reference and local history room remained largely unaltered, although unsympathetic alterations in the form of floor coverings and installation of public PC terminals in the entrance lobby disguised the original architecture.

3.9.10 Ground Floor Refurbishment, 2010 of the library

Plans from 2009 show the proposals to modernise York Central Library to form York Explore. This involved a number of alterations to the ground floor. The office subdivisions in the children's library were removed, and the space converted to an adult fiction area, with the children's library moving to the opened-up north wing.

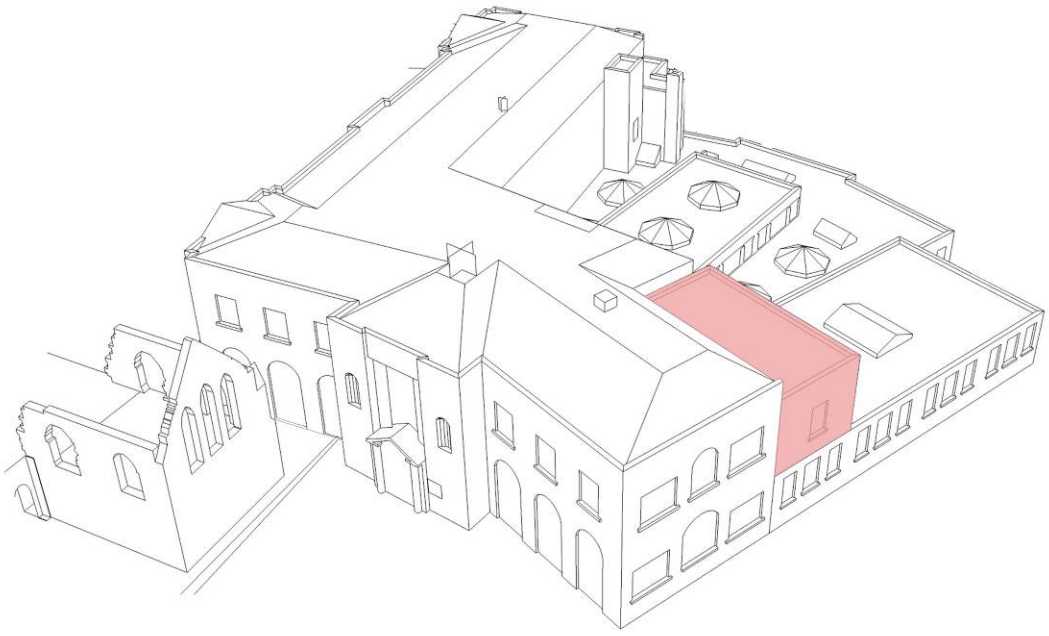


Figure 74 Post 1940s alterations of the library building. *S&B*

Adjacent to the relocated children's library a new café was proposed in the north-east ground floor room, long since disconnected from the entrance lobby by the installation of the lift. The later floorcoverings and PC terminals were removed from the entrance lobby and the original appearance of this space was largely restored. The in/out doors to the main lending library were replaced with a central doorway, and the issue desk behind removed.

On the exterior, Library Square was completely re-landscaped in 2011. The levels were changed to provide step-free access to the library itself.

3.9.11 Consolidation repair and display of the Mint Yard (1950s – 1970s)

The monumental remains within the Mint Yard project area were successively repaired during this period by the City Engineer's Department (overseen by John Nursey, Deputy City Engineer). Works included St Leonard's Hospital (c1955); the Roman walls and Multangular Tower (1960); the medieval City Walls; and the laying-out of the archaeological remains beneath the inner rampart to the NW, including underpinning of the city wall (1970-1).

3.9.12 Archaeological investigations in the 20th century

For long the most tangible remains of the Roman period in York, it is perhaps unsurprising that Mint Yard attracted continuing archaeological attention. Earlier 20th century investigations occurred under Benson (1915), who recorded a cobbled road within the infirmary water gate; a Roman kiln and parts of a timber-built barrack block were revealed during the excavation for the Central Library building in 1925, reported by Professor Stuart Miller (1925); Miller also excavated a section across the Roman ditches to the SW and a trench within the Multangular Tower as

part of the *York Roman Excavations* project (1926-7); George Willmot, Curator of the Yorkshire Museum, revealed the base of the projecting front of interval tower SW6 (1957-60).

Figure 75 Plan showing archaeological excavations to date.

In 1969 Geoffrey Radley of the RCHME investigated the defences to the NW, fully excavating the Anglian Tower (1969), and extending a ditch section across the rampart (1970; see RCHME, 1972 and Radley, 1972). During the latter investigation Radley was tragically killed when the trench section collapsed (22 July, 1970). The exposure of the Anglian Tower precipitated the major excavation of the rear rampart area to the NW by the City Engineer's Department so as to lay out the area for public display, this in celebration of the 1,900 anniversary of the foundation of York in AD71. While initial stages of this major work were undertaken mechanically, some archaeological recording was subsequently undertaken under R Butler (1970-1). This was ultimately published in detail by YAT (Ottoway, 1996), incorporating a new survey of the Roman walling revealed in that area.

In 1999 Time Team undertook evaluation trenching within the Library Lawn area as part of their Time Team Live programme. This work was subsequently built upon by YAT in a major training excavation – the St Leonard's Training Dig - carried out under the direction of Kurt Hunter-Mann (2001-4).

3.10 Summary Chronology – Historical Development

Date	
71	Roman 9th Legion arrives at confluence of Rivers Ouse & Foss.
79-85	Fortress levelled and re-built (Oak strapping foundation carrying stiff clay rampart with turf front. Timber towers.)
107	Fortress rebuilt in stone
197	Fortress reconstructed after destruction by Maeatae (Scottish tribes)
300	Walls again re-built or strengthened and polygonal bastions and multangular towers added
410	Roman legions leave York
400-870	Anglian Tower constructed on Roman footings
866	York captured by the Vikings
900	Anglo-Scandinavian (Danish) ramparts erected: raising of the NW rampart, with the Anglian Tower and Roman fortress walls buried
937	York captured by King Athelstan. Reputed foundation of St Peter's Hospital
1067-9	Norman Conquest of the north and destruction of St Peter's Hospital
1080	Enlargement of the ramparts by the Normans
1087	Foundation of St Peter's Hospital by King William II
1114-40	Increasing independence of the hospital from the Minster under Archbishop Thurstan. Adoption of Augustinian Rule, and extension of the precinct to the banks of the River Ouse.
1137	Destruction of much of York by fire, including much of St Peter's Hospital. New church dedicated to St Leonard, and hospital rebuilt.
1220	The surviving undercroft of the Hospital built.
1255	The surviving chapel and watergate of the Hospital rebuilt. St Peter's Hospital rededicated to St Leonard.
1250-90	City Walls constructed. Stone wall raised around St Mary's Abbey precinct. Multangular Tower walls raised. Anglian Tower revealed and filled in.

1299	City wall and ditch between St Leonard's and St Mary's Abbey appropriated by St Leonard's Hospital.
1315	Multangular Tower referred to as 'Elrondyng'
1316	Roman walls possibly uncovered when ramparts removed and new ditch dug. St Leonard's Hospital begins a long decline until the Reformation.
1536	Dissolution of St Leonard's Hospital.
1544	St Leonard's Hospital precinct sold back to the Crown by their owners since the Dissolution. Site occupied by the Royal Mint.
1601	Wall from Lendal Tower to St Leonard's Hospital repaired and ditch scoured.
1637	Failed attempt to establish a market on the Mint Yard site.
1643	Siege of York in the English Civil War. Damage to the walls by artillery.
1675	Mint Yard, essentially the former precincts of St Leonard's Hospital, purchased by the York Corporation. The land rented out to individuals.
1683	The Multangular Tower first described as such by Dr Martin Lister in Philosophical Transactions.
1744	Theatre built, later the Theatre Royal, and in the same period, the Red House.
1782	Widening of Finkle Street to form what is now Museum Street, with inevitable demolition of some of the remains of St Leonard's Hospital.
1830	St Leonard's Place begun. The buildings, yards and gardens that occupied the cleared away, and a section of City Walls and ramparts demolished south of Bootham Bar.
1831	Multangular Tower excavated by the Yorkshire Philosophical Society who had acquired the area of the Museum Gardens in 1827.
1835	Theatre Royal altered, including the 12th century undercroft, originally part of St Peter's Hospital.
1839	Anglian Tower rediscovered during excavations for tunnel through medieval ramparts, and restored internally.
1844-6	Sir John Naesmyth's design for the Museum Gardens commissioned. Entrance created from Museum Street. The surviving remains of St Leonard's Hospital exposed by demolition

	of surrounding structures and repaired.
1850	First Public Library Act passed
1855	Amended Public Library Act passed
1887	Theatre Royal altered again, including a substantial reduction of the 12th century undercroft, originally part of St Peter's Hospital.
1891	Adoption of the Public Library Act in York
1893	York Public Library opened in former York Institute of Art, Science & Literature building on Clifford Street
1900	Theatre Royal altered again, including further reduction of the 12th century undercroft.
1913	Public Library Committee approached Carnegie United Kingdom Trust after deciding that the Clifford Street premises were inadequate.
1916	Carnegie Trust grant offer of £12,000 towards a new library building, later increased to £13,200. Museum Street site identified for new library. Walter Brierley commissioned to design new library.
1918	James Rutherford taken into partnership with Walter Brierley.
1922	City Walls, Roman remains and the Multangular Tower scheduled as an Ancient Monument, under the Act of Parliament of 1913.
1926	Death of Walter Brierley.
1927	Phase one of the library opened by the Earl of Elgin.
1934	Phase two extension of the library entrance front completed. Anglian Tower revealed again.
1937	Remains of St Leonard's Hospital returned to care of York Corporation.
1938	Phase three extension of the library south wing completed.
1939	Air-raid shelter built into the library lawn.
1950	St Leonard's Hospital ruin used for an information centre and conserved by York Corporation under direction of John Nursey, City Engineer.
1954	Listing of St Leonard's Place, City Wall, exposed Roman walls, Multangular Tower, Anglian Tower, and remains of St Leonard's Hospital.

1960	Restoration of Multangular Tower.
1969-71	Excavations of area at rear of library, including Anglian Tower, by Jeffrey Radley, killed in the excavation by a wall collapse. Consolidation of exposed Roman walls, and underpinning of City Walls.
1992	Listing of Nos. 2 & 4 Museum Street.
14-Mar 1997	Listing of library at Grade II, and amendments to other listings.
1999	TimeTeam excavations on library lawn
2001-4	Archaeology Live! excavation run by York Archaeological Trust on library lawn.
2010	Refurbishment and rebranding of the library as York Explore.
2011	Redesign of library forecourt as a public space, Library Square.

3.10.1 Antiquarian and archaeological investigations

Date	*Organisation*	*Excavator*	*Works*
1683	Martin Lister		Multangular Tower first described
1736	Francis Drake		Publication of *Eboracum*; description of Multangular Tower
1831	YPS		Clearance of interior of Multangular Tower
1845-6	YPS	WS Anderson	Clearance of the site of the infirmary reveal Romanesque range, library lawn area (Benson)
1915		George Benson	Records find of cobbled road at NE end of passage entrance to St Leonard's Hospital; excavates further sondages to trace road
1926		Prof. S. W. Miller	Section at exterior of Multangular Tower
1926-7		Prof. S. W. Miller	Two trenches excavated on site of library in advance of construction revealed part of Roman barracks and an oven

1957-64		G. F. Willmot	Excavation of interval tower SW6
1969		Jeffrey Radley	Excavation of interior of NW rampart and Anglian Tower
	YAT	David Brinklow	Monitoring of services excavation on Museum St.
1999	Time Team Live		Library lawn excavations, programme aired 26 March 2000
2001	YAT		Archaeology Live! Excavation, research and training
2002-4	YAT`	K. Hunter-Mann	Library lawn

4.0 GAZETTEER OF HERITAGE ASSETS: BUILDINGS & STRUCTURES

4.1 Introduction

This section examines buildings and structures in the inner study area. It also examines buildings and structures or parts thereof, in the wider area that are considered to have an effect on the inner study area.

As noted in *York central historic core, conservation area appraisal*, the city of York has great diversity in its form, buildings, structures and topography.[23] Even within the relatively small study area and adjacent areas considered in this conservation plan, there is significant diversity. Examining the buildings and structures individually is one of the best ways of thoroughly understanding the site by a logical analysis using the same objective methods.

The site consists of standing structures and below ground remains, revealed by past excavations. Of great age these remains have often had a complicated history and even their interpretation has been subject to debate that is still ongoing.

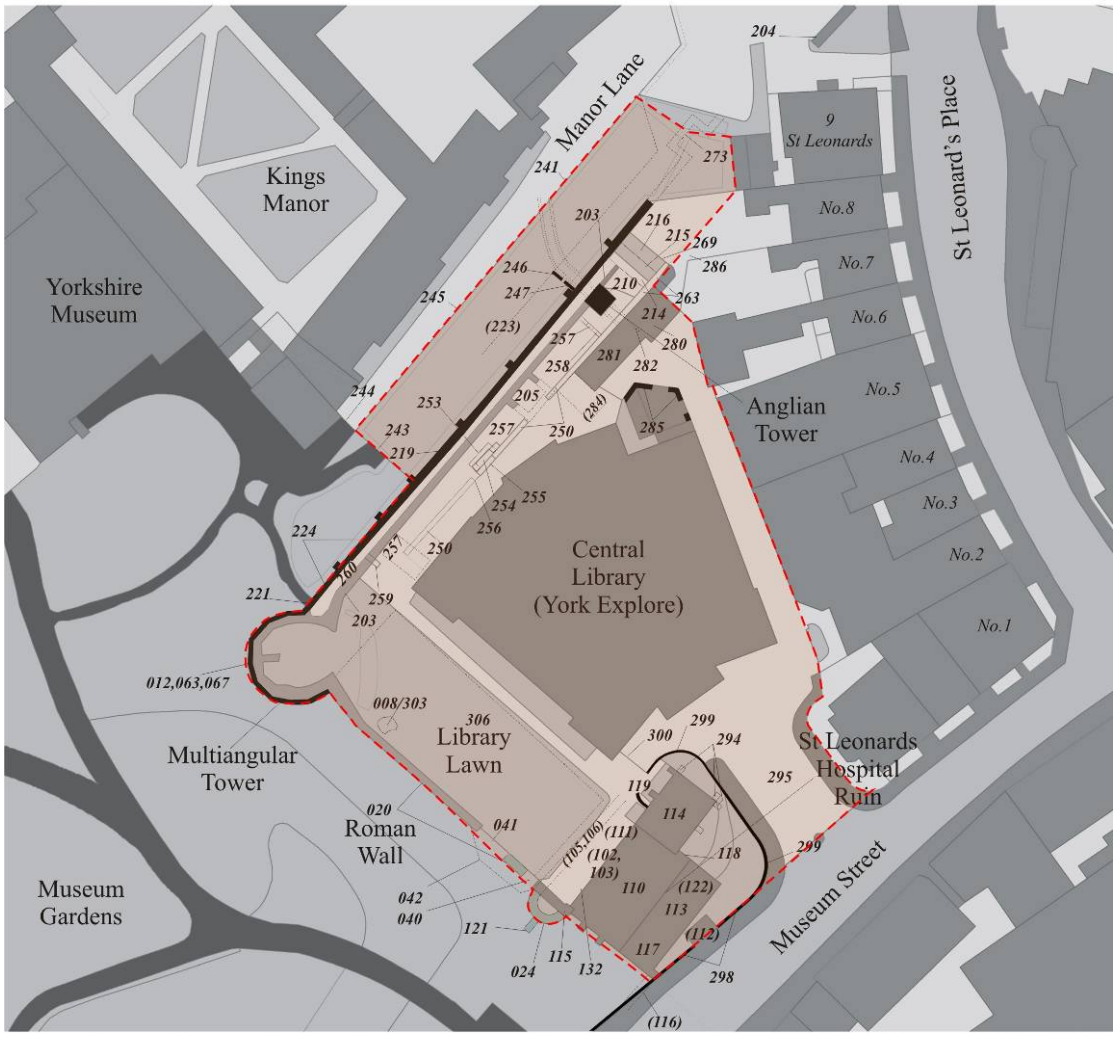


Figure 76 Plan showing principal features and gazetteer feature numbers.

[23] Alan Baxter & Associates LLP *York central historic core, conservation area appraisal* (2011) p. 103

Entries for each major component of the site begin with a summary description and observations. Much of the history of the buildings and structures on the site has been well documented elsewhere, and therefore only a summary has been written, with references to more detailed accounts. There is then a section on context and summary condition, followed by a detailed examination of individual features, with numbering mapped onto drawings.

Each entry includes relevant statutory designations. Overall cultural significance has also been indicated. The section 6 of this document that follows this gazetteer, goes into more details, but the significance assessment is intended to guide decisions about the future conservation and management of the site. The definition of these grades has been arrived at by discussion with English Heritage.

Note, feature entries shaded in pink indicate known archaeological remains which are not presently visible above ground.

High Significance

Critical to an understanding of cultural significance

Medium Significance

Important to an understanding of cultural significance

Moderate Significance

Part of an understanding of cultural significance

Neutral Significance

Could be enhanced to provide understanding of cultural significance

Negative Significance

Detracts from an understanding of cultural significance

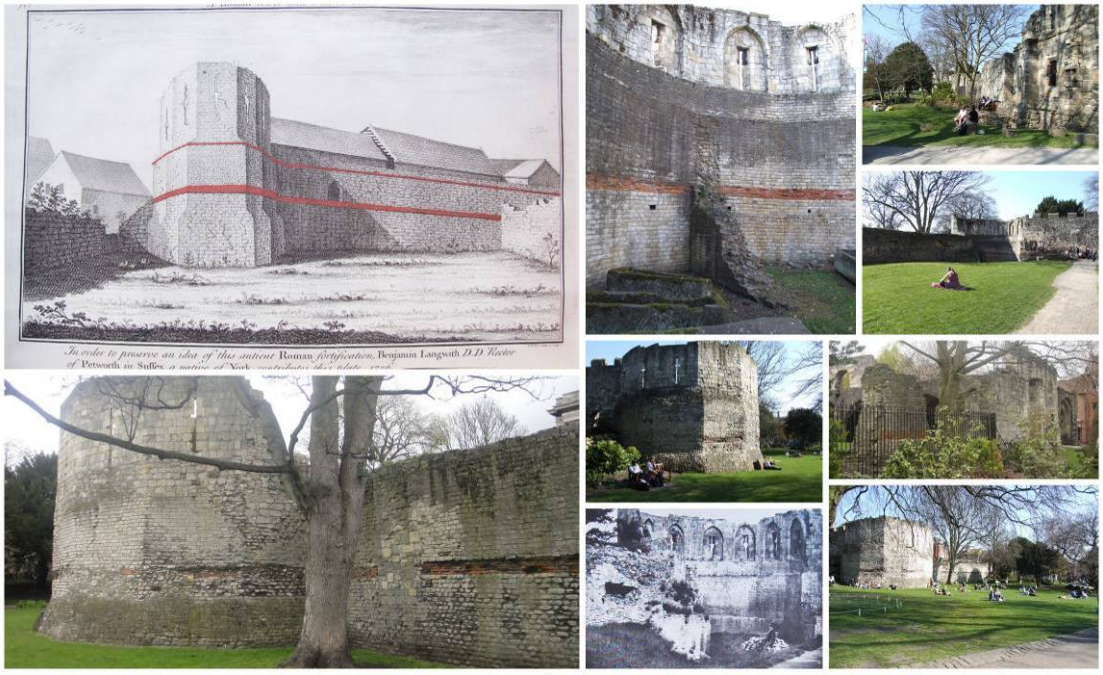
Summary table

Feature numbering	*Gazetteer entry name*	*Listed structure*	*Scheduled Ancient Monument*	*Adjacent character areas*	*Significance*
001 – 099	Multangular Tower, fortress wall to SE and associated features	Grade I 1257120	1004910 and YO 30	B, F	High
100 – 199	St Leonard's Hospital ruin and associated features	Grade I 1257087	1004910 and YO 30	A, B, F	High

200 – 279	City wall, legionary fortress defences, Anglian Tower, etc. from Multangular Tower to rear of number 8 St Leonard's Place	Grade I 1259292	1004910 and YO 30	C, D, F	High
		Grade I 1257157			High
280 -329	Later structures and features within the interior of the Mint Yard site (post-Reformation)	N/A	N/A	All	N/A
330 – 349	Central Library	Grade II 1257077	N/A	A, B, D, E	Medium
	Wider medieval topography of St Leonard's Hospital	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
	1-9 St Leonard's Place	Grade II* 1256761	N/A	A, C, E	Medium
	2 and 4 Museum Street	Grade II 1257108	N/A	A	Medium

4.2 Multangular Tower, fortress wall to SE and associated features

Statutory designations	Grade I (1257120) & part of Scheduled Ancient Monument 1004910 and YO 30	
Significance	*Adjacent character areas*	*Gazetteer individual features*
High	B, F	001-099



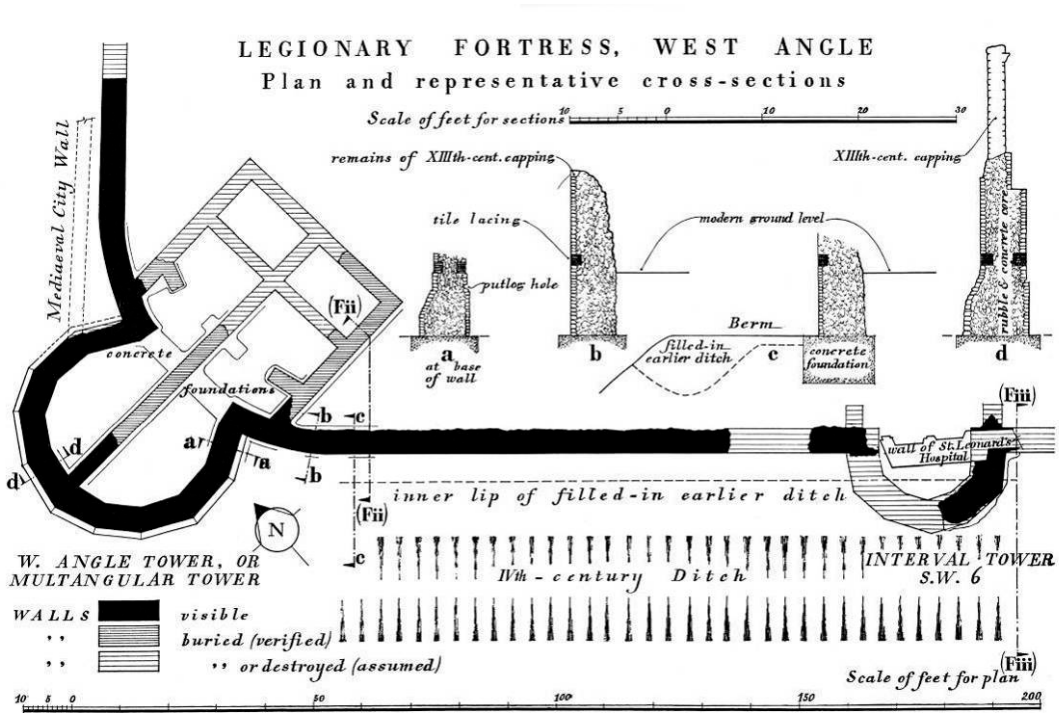
Top left: plate 57 from Drake Eboracum *(1736). Lower right: 1851 photograph, John Fowler Jones.*

Introduction

The Multangular Tower and adjacent wall section running off to the SE (the *Roman Wall*), and associated upstanding, buried and documented remains, are described in this section. This part of the site forms the project area boundary; it encloses the SW and NW sides of the library lawn area (character area B), and is itself surrounded by the Museum Gardens to the SW and NW (character area F).

The well known Multangular Tower incorporates the impressive surviving remains of the western corner tower of the Roman legionary fortress of *Eboracum*. This, with the adjacent upstanding walling, and the visible footings of a projecting interval tower (tower SW6) close to the St Leonard's Hospital ruin, formed part of the defensive system built in stone that replaced the late 1st century earth and timber fortress defences on the same line. The upstanding SW wall was backed by a broad earth rampart, and the corner tower (formerly possibly twice its present height) by a substantial rear building. The dating of the Multangular Tower and Roman Wall, long suggested to be of the 4th century, has been reconsidered in light of the more

recent archaeological investigations, and may in fact be of earlier 2nd century date – forming part of the general rebuilding of the legionary fortress in stone at that time.



RCHME York, Eboracum : Roman York (1962), Figure 8

The tower and wall sections had a complex subsequent history. The Roman Wall and rampart behind may have seen some later adaptation, however any physical evidence was removed in the middle of the 12th century when the infirmary for St Leonard's Hospital was built against its interior side, up to the Multangular Tower. This work involved the very substantial reduction of the Roman inner rampart and the incorporation of the Roman walling into the new structure. The earlier walling may have been refaced internally and the first floor of the new range built off its upper parts. There is some archaeological evidence to suggest that interval tower SW6 still stood at this stage and was incorporated into the new building. The interval tower and the Roman fortress willing beyond it to the SE, which did not form part of the medieval city defences, were eventually taken down when the St Leonard's Hospital infirmary was extended in that direction in the early-mid 13th century.[24]

After the Roman period the Multangular Tower was retained as part of the city's defences; in records of 1315 and 1505 it is referred to as 'Elrondyng'. It was extended upwards in the later 13th or early 14th century with the construction of the existing city walls. It is possible this work included further modification or addition to the upper parts of the adjacent Roman wall to better integrate it into the defensive system – perhaps by providing a wall-walk link between the Multangular Tower and the city wall section that ran down to St Leonard's Tower at the river's edge.

[24] RCHME *Defences* 110

The Roman wall was hit by a canon ball in the Siege of York in the 1640s, and the breech was illustrated in the 1680s.[25] Other buildings were erected against the rear of the SW wall section, these perhaps incorporating parts of the earlier infirmary range; these were not demolished until the early 19th century.

When Martin Lister first described the monument in 1683 he referred to it as the *Multangular Tower*, the name by which it has since been known[26] After the NW part of what is now Library Lawn was leased to the Yorkshire Philosophical Society in the 1820s, the society excavated the base of the tower in 1831.[27] Further excavations occurred with the addition of the remainder of Library Lawn and the infirmary ruin in 1845-6. Further exploration was undertaken by Miller in the 1920s, by Willmot in c1960, and by Time Team and York Archaeological Trust in 1999 and 2001-2004 respectively.

References:

Antiquarian – Lister, M (1683) Drake, F (1736), Wellbeloved C (1842)

G. Benson, *An account of the city and county of York* vol. ii , 4th ed. (S. R. Publishers: York, 1968); P. Wenham, *The great and close siege of York, 1644* (Kineton: Roundwood, 1790) p.112

RCHME (RCHMY) (1962) *An inventory of the Historic Monuments in the City of York: I. Eburacum, Roman York*, HMSO (n. 9 above), pp. 13-25;

RCHME (RCHMY) (1972) *An inventory of the Historic Monuments in the City of York: II. The Defences*, HMSO;

I.A. Richmond, 'Introduction: the Roman legionary fortress and city at York', in RCHMY 1, pp. xxxiii-xxxiv;

R.M. Butler, 'The defences of the fourth-century fortress at York', in R.M. Butler (ed.), *Soldier and Civilian in Roman Yorkshire* (Leicester, 1971), pp. 97-106;

A.B. Sumpter and S. Coll, *Interval Tower SW5 and the South-West Defences: Excavations 1972-75* (The Archaeology of York 3: The Legionary Fortress ii; London, 1977);

P. Ottaway, *Excavations and Observations on the Defences and Adjacent Sites 1971-90* (The Archaeology of York 3: The Legionary Fortress iii; York, 1996), pp. 279-87.

National Heritage List descriptions (appendix of this conservation management plan)

YAT – various interim reports relating to their 2001-4 excavations; monograph forthcoming.

Summary description

The Roman lower parts of the Multangular Tower, and the adjacent Roman Wall (and indeed the Roman fortress walling continuing off to the NE, now mostly buried) formed parts of a single construction programme. The 10-sided tower is rubble-cored and faced both externally and internally with small squared blocks of Magnesian Limestone, a type of construction known by its Roman name of *saxa quadrata*. The

---

[25] Wenham, *The great and close siege of York* 112
[26] RCHME *Defences* 111
[27] RCHME *Defences* 111

Roman Wall was also faced externally with *saxa quadrata* but, where the rampart ran against its interior face, was built without a well-finished face. Both the tower and the wall incorporate a very distinctive continuous band or bonding course of red tiles, this is very prominent on the wall elevation facing character area F but is now less obvious on the tower itself. The tower was extended upwards in the later 1200s, this employing much larger cut blocks of Magnesian Limestone (in common with the medieval city walls generally). Each facet of the tower in the medieval upper extension contained a crosslet arrow-slit detailed with rounded termini; the original parapet top has disappeared.

To the SE the existing walling is almost entirely of Roman construction, but is not described in the heritage list description. Where it joins the Multangular Tower, it is detailed with the distinctive inward curve that is a feature of the 'playing-card' corners of Roman fortresses. At the south westerly end there are two breaches where the wall has been removed to the level of the footings, one wider than the other, and iron railings separate character areas B and F.

Observations

The Multangular Tower is one of the best preserved Roman fortress towers in Britain. It is very interesting that it was reused in the medieval defences merely by an upward extension, and this layering adds considerably to it heritage value. There are large stone sarcophagi arranged in the interior of the tower, and more at the north west end of the lawn of character area B. These are not explained in the interpretation panel next to the 1830s opening in the medieval city wall, which connects character area B, to the fernery of character area C.

Present context

The tower and wall define a hard boundary between character areas B and F. This boundary is also visually impermeable, apart from the two breaches towards the south east. However, from character area F, the Museum Gardens, the library is visible over the top of the walls.

The heritage listings somewhat artificially separate the Multangular Tower and the walls to north east and south east. To the north east of the tower and wall is the library across the lawn. The ground slopes steeply into the lower part of the tower, where it was excavated in the early 19th century. The wall continues to the south east with the elevation of St Leonard's Hospital to character area F. The ground level within the walls of the former Roman fortress is higher than without, in character area F. Where the wall is breached, the ground levels are similar, but to the north west, the difference increases. This change in levels creates a different impression of the tower and walls depending from which side they are viewed. To the south west, the tower and wall are surrounded by the Museum Gardens, and the longer view down to the River Ouse. To the north east of the tower, the city wall continues, stepped out from the Roman wall.

The structures seem to have been consolidated, and there is no major invasive vegetation growth. From within, the lower part of the Multangular Tower walls excavated in the early 19th century are very well preserved, but in all places the red band of narrow Roman bricks has deteriorated more. The elevations to character area F have many patches and repairs, mostly historic.

001 Underlying natural sub-soil

002 Evidence for Iron Age field system late pre-Roman Iron Age

Overlain by the footings of the Roman interval tower SW6 (*024*); revealed during the YAT training excavation (2002)

004 SW rampart (I) c.AD 71 –

Of turf and clay (suggested by mixed deposits of sand, clay and organic material); remains of timber corduroy; approximately 6m in width; likely to have been timber-fronted; encountered in YAT Training Excavation Trench 1 (2002), Trench 5 (2004)

005 Early fortress ditch c.AD 71 –

Identified by SN Miller in 1926 in an evaluation trench (Miller 1928); and by GF Willmot – see *RCHME* 1962, 21-25 and Fig 17

006 Early fortress – intervallum road c.AD 71 –

007 Early fortress – evidence for timber barracks c.AD 71 –

RCHME (1962), 41-2, notes : *Timber Barracks. Under the Public Library, 105′ from the SW wall and some 95′ from the NW wall of the fortress (NG 60055210). … Here was found a row of upright squared oak posts, 5′ apart, more or less parallel with the SW wall of the fortress and with decayed timber of the sill-beam beneath; one or two of the posts … were 1′ by 9″ and finished at the foot with a tenon to mortice into the timber sill.*

Recorded by SN Miller in 1925 during excavations for the Central Library building (*JRS*, XV, 1925), 183

008 Early fortress(?) – oven ?C2nd

RCHME (1962), 41-2, notes : *Oven, about 125′ NE of the SW wall and 25′ SE of the NW wall of the fortress (NG 600245209). Behind the Public Library. … A legionary cooking oven of normal circular type. The floor, 9′ to 10′ in diameter, was of tiles, one stamped* LEG IX HISP.

Excavated by SN Miller in 1925 - *JRS*, XV, (1925), 182 . Now re-located – see *303*

010 Secondary fortress ditch ?e.C2nd

A new ditch line was established approximately 5.3m (17f′6″), measured centre to centre, outside the first ditch (*005*); the new ditch was about 6m (19′6″) wide and 2.80m (9′) deep; the ditch was probably moved outwards to ensure the stability of the fortress wall and to make space for the new projecting towers on the SW front; the ditch appears to have curved slightly outwards around the Multangular Tower; pottery recovered from the ditch suggested it was silting up in the mid 3rd century.

The ditch was examined in section by SN Miller in 1926 (Miller, 1928, and

Ottaway, 2004, 74; plan in *RCHME* 1962, Figure 8); and by GF Willmot – see RCHME, 1962, 21-25 and Figs 16 and 17

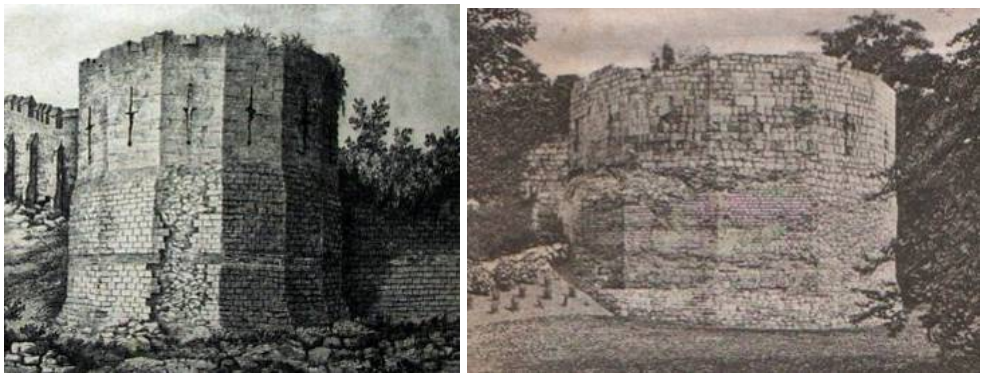
011 Secondary fortress ditch – re-cut ?midC3rd

The 010 ditch was subsequently re-cut; as revealed in trench extending SW from the Roman Wall (*020*) dug by GF Willmot – see RCHME, 1962, 21-25 and Fig 17; (Ottaway, 2004)

012 Multangular Tower– Roman fabric ?eC2nd

The W corner tower of the legionary fortress. General construction of tower in *opus quadratum* (squared stone / *saxa quadrata* facings internally and externally, rubble/lime concrete core (*opus caementicium*); external plinth; 5-course band of brickwork (bricks - *testa*); evidence for the late survival of an upper band of brickwork topping the Roman fortress walling (corresponding to the level of a step-back seen internally) is provided in views of Martin Lister and Francis Drake (1736), p.57; quoting Martin Lister's *Philosophical Transactions*, 1683). The upper band, no longer visible on the tower, corresponds to surviving evidence for a level of brickwork on the fortress walling running off to the NE (*203*) and SE (*020*).

Ottaway (2004) states: *In plan the tower had a complex design based on a fourteen-sided figure; a circle through the internal angles would be tangential to the curve of the inner face of the fortress wall. Four of the fourteen faces were omitted at the rear of the tower to create the access to a very substantial structure, rectangular in plan, which lay behind the fortress wall.*

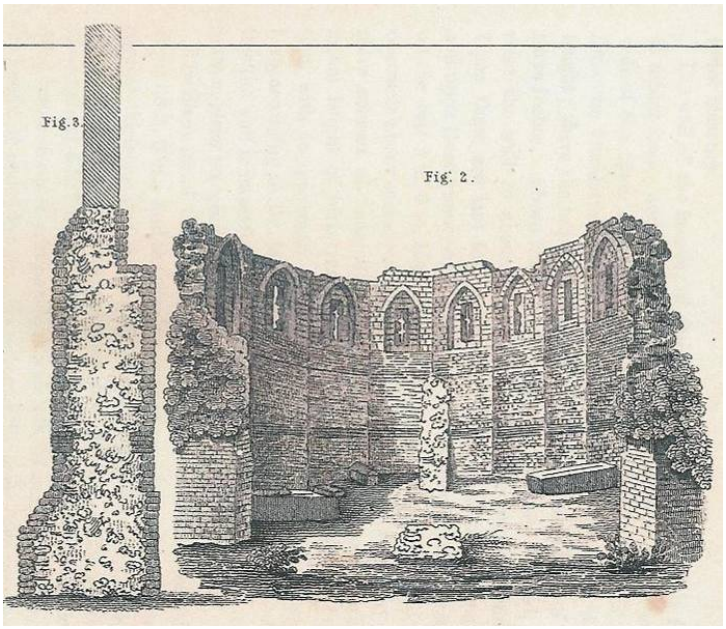


Left - J Halfpenny (1807); right - photographic view, c.1900

From deposits associated with the demolition of the rear structure was recovered large quantities of painted wall plaster that had likely decorated the tower interior (YAT, 2004)

Described by Lister (1683), Drake (1736), Wellbeloved (1842), Miller (1927), RCHME (1962). Most recently the tower, and the rebuilding of the fortress defences in stone more generally, has been discussed by Ottaway (2004); Bidwell (2006) and Bidwell *et al.* (2009); and Hunter-Mann (2009).

The interior of the tower was excavated by the YPS in c1831 – see *068*; further works by the YPS in 1845-6; by SN Miller in 1926 (Miller, in *JRS*, 1928, 78-86); G Willmot (c.1960); and by YAT in 2004 (Trenches 5 and 6).



Section and interior of the tower (Wellbeloved, 1842)

Dating

There has been considerable variation in the dating assigned to the tower (and to the SW defences generally). As Bidwell (2006, 36) notes the Multangular Tower and interval towers along the SW frontage of the legionary fortress were long thought to have dated to the late third or early 4th century. Richmond (in *RCHME* 1962, 13) suggested this to be likely part of a 4th century remodelling of the SW defences; however Ottaway (2004) suggested a considerably earlier dating, in the Severan period (early 3rd century). In spite of reservations Bidwell and Hartley suggested an early 4th century date based on architectural comparison with the towers at the Emperor Galerius' palace at Gramzigrad (Serbia) – the only other incidence of such features (10- and 16-sided towers).

Following YAT's excavations of 2001-4, Kurt Hunter-Mann (2009) proposed a further revision of the dating of the tower – based upon stratigraphic relationships, finds evidence, and dating of timber piles (*013*), to the early 2nd century AD. Additional subsequent finds analysis by YAT seems to reinforce this conclusion. In the light of these most recently proposed dates Bidwell's comment (2006, 36) has particular resonance,

> *there are difficulties with* [the late dating hitherto attributed to the walls at York] *the astonishing delay in supplying the fortress with stone defences: at other fortresses founded in the later first century, in Britain and beyond, stone walls were built within a decade or so.*

It now seems more likely that York fits the wider pattern; the superficial similarity to the Gamzigrad towers is thus more probably coincidental (the latter attach to the perimeter wall in a different manner and have no structure to the rear). The grandiose configuration of the SW frontage of the fortress is highly unusual; it is possible that its creation relates to a particular circumstance (such as the Emperor Hadrian's presence in Britannia in the early 2nd century?).

013 Footings of the Multangular Tower, including piling ?eC2

356 Front of Multangular Tower built on levelling deposits over 1m thick; massive lime concrete footing (*opus caementicium*) (YAT, 2004) and piles; its rear structure

was not piled.

Piles of alder; first revealed by SN Miller in 1926 (Miller, in *JRS*, 1928,); re-examined by YAT in 2004, Trench 6; radiocarbon dates suggest dating of felling to cAD80-110 (Hunter-Mann, *Yorkshire Archaeology Today*, 2009.3).

014 Early graffiti on Multangular Tower ?eC2

Not now immediately legible. Illustrated by Wellbeloved (1842)

020 Upstanding remains of SW-facing section of legionary fortress wall ?eC2

Described by Lister (1683), Drake (1736), Wellbeloved (1842), Miller (1927), etc.

Ottaway (2004, 71) describes this section of wall as follows: *Above the mortared rubble foundations* [opus caementicium] *there is … no distinct plinth at the base of the wall, although the facing stones in the lower two or three courses … are larger than those above. At the rear of the wall the face has been left roughly finished as it would have been largely obscured by the rampart. At a height of about 2.3m (7'6") the facing stones are interrupted by a band of five tile courses. At the top of the wall there was a cornice of tiles – a few fragments of which survive* [visible at the SE end of the main surviving stretch of the wall] – *stepped out one above the other from the wall face … above the cornice there would … have been a parapet. … the intermediate tile course … probably fulfilled a structural purpose, binding the core and facing of the wall together. … there is some evidence that the fortress wall … was originally rendered or plastered on its outer face.*

021 Footing structure of 020 SW facing section of fortress wall ?eC2

Mortared rubble (concrete) foundations, RCHME notes it varies in depth between 3½' and 5' and is up to 8' wide. Exposed and recorded at 3 points, by

Benson in 1915-16 (Benson 1916), SN Miller in 1926 (Miller 1928; *RCHME* 1962, figure 16); and in 1957-9 by GF Willmot – see RCHME, 1962, 21-25 and Fig 17

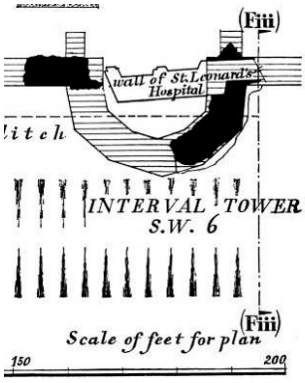
022 SW rampart (II) ?eC2 – C3

Substantial earthen rampart rising up against the interior face of the *020* fortress wall; finds dated its construction to c.200; some 14m in width, it originally sloped up to the wall-walk of the *020* fortress wall, a height of some 5m; encountered in YAT Training excavation Trench 1 (2002) and Trench 3 (2003 and 2004). Hunter-Mann (*Yorkshire Archaeology Today*, 2009.3) suggests the rampart may have been built up over an extended period in successive operations following the construction of the fortress wall – this may explain the occurrence of C3rd pottery in some areas; Ottaway (2004, 75) notes finds from sections of the reconstructed rampart *tell a consistent story of reconstruction in the late second to early third century.*

(YAT, 2003)

023 …

024 Remains of fortress interval tower SW6 ?eC2nd



The SE half of the projecting frontage was revealed in 1957-9 in unpublished excavations by George F Willmot (referenced in RCHME 1962, 17-19); parts of the rear structure and interior were excavated during Time Team Live (1999)

and subsequently by YAT (Trenches 1 and 2 - 2001/02, and Trench 4 - 2004).

RCHME (1962), 13, suggests it to be part of the 4th century remodelling of the SW defences; their description (p17-8) notes, *This projecting polygonal interval tower … lies 125 ½' from the west angle tower and 125' from interval tower SW5. The foundations and base of three segments of the front, each some 8' long, have been revealed and fit a 6-sided plan. The total projection was some 17' and the total width at the junction with the fortress wall 32'. The walls at the base … are 6 ½' thick, probably including a plinth, as at the W and S angle towers. Foundations … trench-filled … layers of rubble and mortar and are as deep as the 1st-century ditch* [*005*], *long filled in and forgotten, which the tower straddles. The tower rose out of the side of the wide 4th-century ditch* [010 (dating revised)], which here had its scarp strengthened with oak piles.

Ottaway describes this tower form, *The projecting parts of the interval towers had a plan designed as half of a twelve-sided figure.*

The recent re-dating of the Multangular Tower may similarly apply to the SW frontage of the fortress generally, including the interval towers.

…

030 Reduction of Multangular Tower ?late Roman (or C9th / 10th?)

The rear parts of the *012* fortress W tower appeared to have suffered structural instability and was subsequently reduced and the rampart run over its site – *031*

031 Rampart extension ?late Roman (or C9th / 10th?)

Following the reduction of the Multangular Tower's rear structure (*030*), the rampart was extended over its site;

032 Timber structure associated with the *031* rampart extension

?late Roman (or C9th / 10th?)

Evidence for a timber structure to the SE of the Multangular Tower - timber posts cut into the 022 rampart (YAT, 2004, Trenches 3 and 5); tower may be evidence for new access arrangements (?a stair access) between levels following the reduction of Multangular Tower (*030*)

…

035 Cess-pit Anglo-Scandinavian

Cut into the 022 Roman SW rampart (YAT, 2004)

…

040 Entrance formed at SE end of *020* Roman fortress SW wall c1240

Adjacent to / integral with the fabric of the *115* kitchen chimneybreast of the *110* St Leonard's Hospital infirmary range; the SE jamb of the entrance remains, including rebate, etc.

041 Broad breach of SW-facing stretch of city wall ?c1820

Former stables yard access; appears on the 1831 plan of the Mint Yard area

leading to a stables compound marked *Mrs. Simpson's Stable yard* (Benson, 1968, figure 19); this plan also shows the earlier entrance arrangements to the Museum Gardens.

042 Iron fencing at *040* and *041* breaches within the *020* wall modern

043 Consolidation of *020* wall in cement ?c1960

Consolidation of exposed roman wall footing of *020* within *041* broad breach – cement-bedded rough-racking

044 Aperture in the *020* walling ?medieval

Aperture – apparently a former window opening – in Roman wall just to the NW of the *041* broad breach; perhaps relating to the creation of the *101* infirmary range; now robbed of all facings/dressings

045 Iron bars within *044* aperture (5x square-section, cemented) modern

046 General consolidation of the *020* roman fortress wall ?c1960

Cement pointing, coarse aggregate, slightly recessed, brushed back (some re-bedding of *saxa quadrata* facings externally)

047 Blocked aperture some 3m NW of the *041* aperture; visible internally ?medieval

048 Blocking, etc, of *047* aperture dating uncertain

Blocking and associated patching of exterior wall-face of *020* walling in area of *047* aperture

049 Blocked aperture within *020* walling; visible internally ?medieval

050 Blocking, etc, of *049* aperture dating uncertain

Blocking and associated patching of exterior wall-face of (*020*) walling in area of *049* aperture

051 Existing upper course of *020* SW-facing wall section ?modern

Has the appearance of medieval work but, on the evidence of early views that show the Roman tile coursing in this position (Lister, 1683, and Drake, 1736) may be considerably more recent; consists of a single course of large blocks of Magnesian Limestone (some later re-bedded in cement?)

052 Patch of brickwork at exterior foot of *020* walling ?C17th / 18th

Patch of brickwork (narrow, low-fired) at exterior foot of *020* walling, with some blocks of Magnesian Limestone below; visible externally

053 Small aperture, a former window or slit; visible internally ?medieval

054 Blocking of *053* small aperture ?

055 Small aperture within *020* walling ?medieval

Small aperture within *020* walling close to junction with Multangular Tower– visible internally; inserted facing-up of S jamb remains *in situ*; ? small window (visible in early views of Drake (1736) and Griffith (1777) – or could this be *053*)

056 Large aperture within *020* walling ?medieval

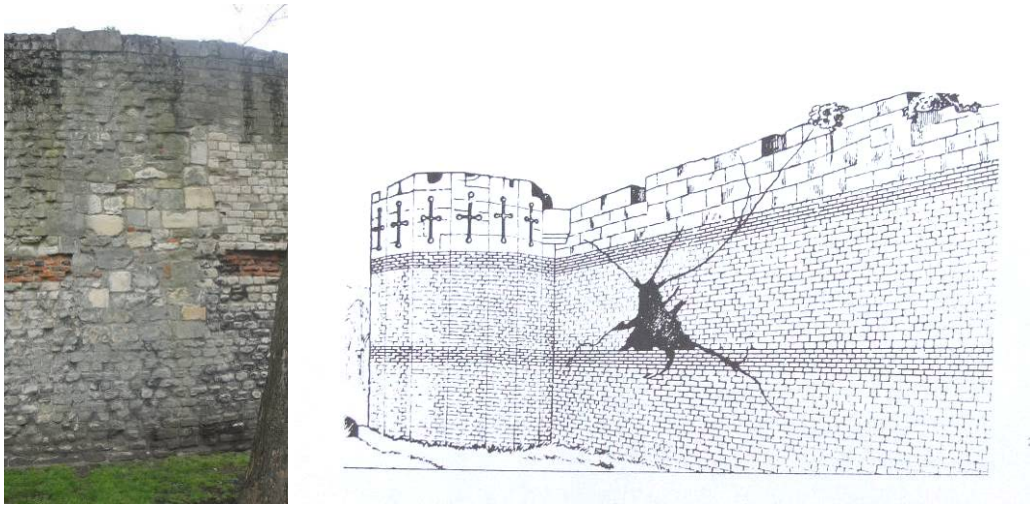
Large aperture within *020* walling close to junction with Multangular Tower– visible internally; large window or recess (?? postern) (??visible in early views of Drake (1736) and Griffith (1777) or *053* ?)

057 Patching of *020* walling in area of *055*/*056* openings ?post-Civil War

Substantial area of patching of *020* walling close to the junction with the Multangular Tower; visible externally and internally in area of the *055* and *056* apertures; mainly larger blocks of magnesian limestone, some low-fired narrow brick. Patching of civil war period breach (?) – see *058*

058 Breach within the *020* walling Civil War 1643-4

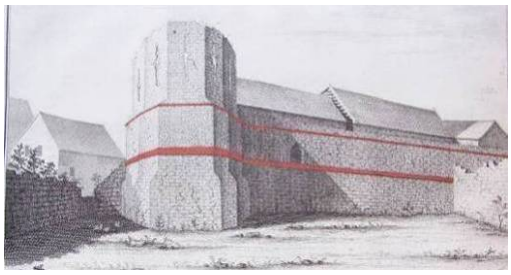
Breach caused by Civil War period damage (siege of York, 1643-4) corresponding to *057* area of patching; shown by Martin Lister (1683); possibly canon shot from a redoubt on Holgate Hill (Wenham, 1970)



Right: illustration by Lister 1683 of the breach, in Wenham 1970

059 Wall section running up to *020* fortress wall from the SW ?medieval

Wall section running up to *020* fortress wall from the SW – shown on right hand side of Drake's view (1736) - St Mary's Abbey precinct wall?



View by Drake, 1736 – wall to right

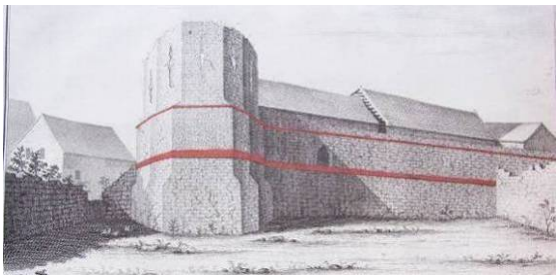
060 Later use of *024* interval tower SW6 ? pre-c1240

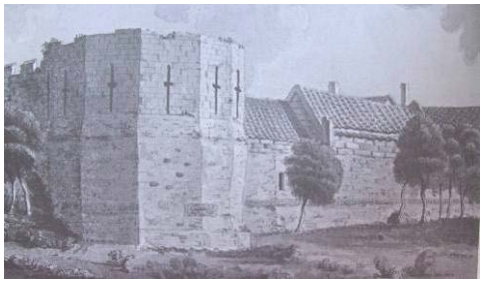
Excavation during Time Team Live (1999) and by YAT (2001-2) revealed archaeological evidence to suggest that *024* interval tower SW6 may have survived into the medieval period, its position being respected by the SE end of the Romanesque infirmary range, and possibly incorporated as part of it; deposits within suggested a notably long period of use; the structure was evidently finally reduced with the construction of the extension to the infirmary (the existing St Leonard's ruin) in the second quarter of the 13th century.

061 Range (I) built against internal face of *020* fortress wall ?l.C17th/e.C18th

Early views by Drake (1736) and Griffiths (1777) show a large range against the interior (NE-facing) side of the *020* fortress wall; a further less substantial range (*062*) extends from its NW gable to the Multangular Tower; in Griffiths' view the walling of both ranges is clearly of limestone cut to large blocks, their roofs pan-tiled.

It is not clear whether these ranges actually incorporated substantial surviving sections of the early infirmary building (*101*) or were simply built on their site. Later map evidence is unreliable as to whether the ranges survived after Griffiths' time (and a number of earlier town plans are also ambiguous as to their presence); the 1831 Mint Yard survey does show a building or range of buildings in this position (Benson, 1968, figure 19).





062 Range (II) built against internal face of *020* fortress wall ?l.C17th/e.C18th

Views by Drake (1736) and Griffiths (1777) show a range extending from the NW gable of a larger range (see *061*) to the Multangular Tower

063 Medieval consolidation of upper parts of *012* Roman fabric of the Multangular Tower c1300

Above about 4.8m (Museum Gardens side); roughly-dressed larger squared blocks of Magnesian Limestone, some smaller material and occasional reused Roman *saxa quadrata*; building up of wall-head in preparation for the construction of the upper stage – *064*

064 Upper stage of the Multangular Tower c1300

Of larger finely squared blocks of Magnesian Limestone; each of the 9 faces contains a crosslet arrow slit (though that within face 1 is now lost); each crosslet framed internally within an arched recess

065 Multangular Tower, upper stage - evidence for wall-head arrangement c.1300

– remains of inwards-facing projecting course at the wall head; evidence for upper platform / roof structure

066 Modification of upper stage of Multangular Tower – arrow slits ?1643-4

RCHME, York, Vol. II (1972), 111, notes, *previous to restoration in 1960 the centres of these slits had been hacked out seemingly for gun loops*; possibly a modification of the Civil War period (siege of York 1643-4)

067 Multangular Tower - areas of repair / consolidation dating uncertain

Areas of repair / consolidation, roughly-dressed larger squared blocks of Magnesian Limestone, some smaller material and occasional reused Roman *saxa quadrata*; in part medieval, or possibly following damage in the 1643-4 Civil War siege [compare with early views] . RCHME, York, Vol. II (1972), 111.

068 Excavation of interior of the Multangular Tower by the YPS c1831

General excavation of interior of the Multangular Tower and adjacent section of the Roman wall to the NE, by the Yorkshire Philosophical Society in 1831; described and depicted by Wellbeloved (1842), 56-7; J Halfpenny's engraved view (1807) shows the interior before excavation

interior of Multangular Tower – left, by J Halfpenny, 1807 and, right, by G Fowler Jones, 1851, following excavation

Writing in 1842 Wellbeloved noted, … *the whole of* [interior] *was concealed, till very lately* [i.e. c1831], *by an immense collection of rubbish, apparently the accumulation ages. For in removing this rubbish, English and Saxon coins were met with in the upper part, increasing in age as the depth increased; and in the lowest part Roman coins, and fragments of Samian and other pottery. … To this accumulation of soil may be attributed the comparatively perfect state and freshness of the interior masonry.*

069 Consolidation works 1960

Much re-bedding in cement-based mortar of facing stones; general re-pointing; repair to upper stage crosslets dressings [compare with early views]. City Engineer's Office.

070 Retaining wall within Multangular Tower interior e/mC19th

Dry-stone retaining wall bounding the edge of the more deeply excavated area of the interior to the NE; incorporates some medieval carved architectural fragments. Possibly erected at the time of the 1831 excavation.

071 Stone sarcophagi within the Multangular Tower Roman

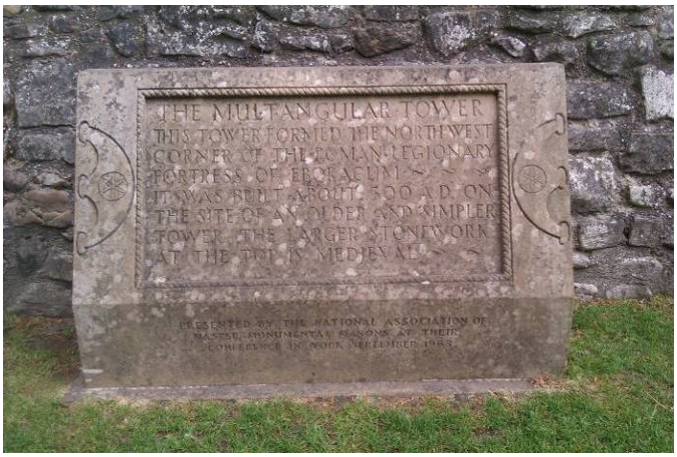
A collection of coffins placed within the Multangular Tower interior as part of the Garden of Antiquities (see *296*); some visible in Wellbeloved's view of 1842.

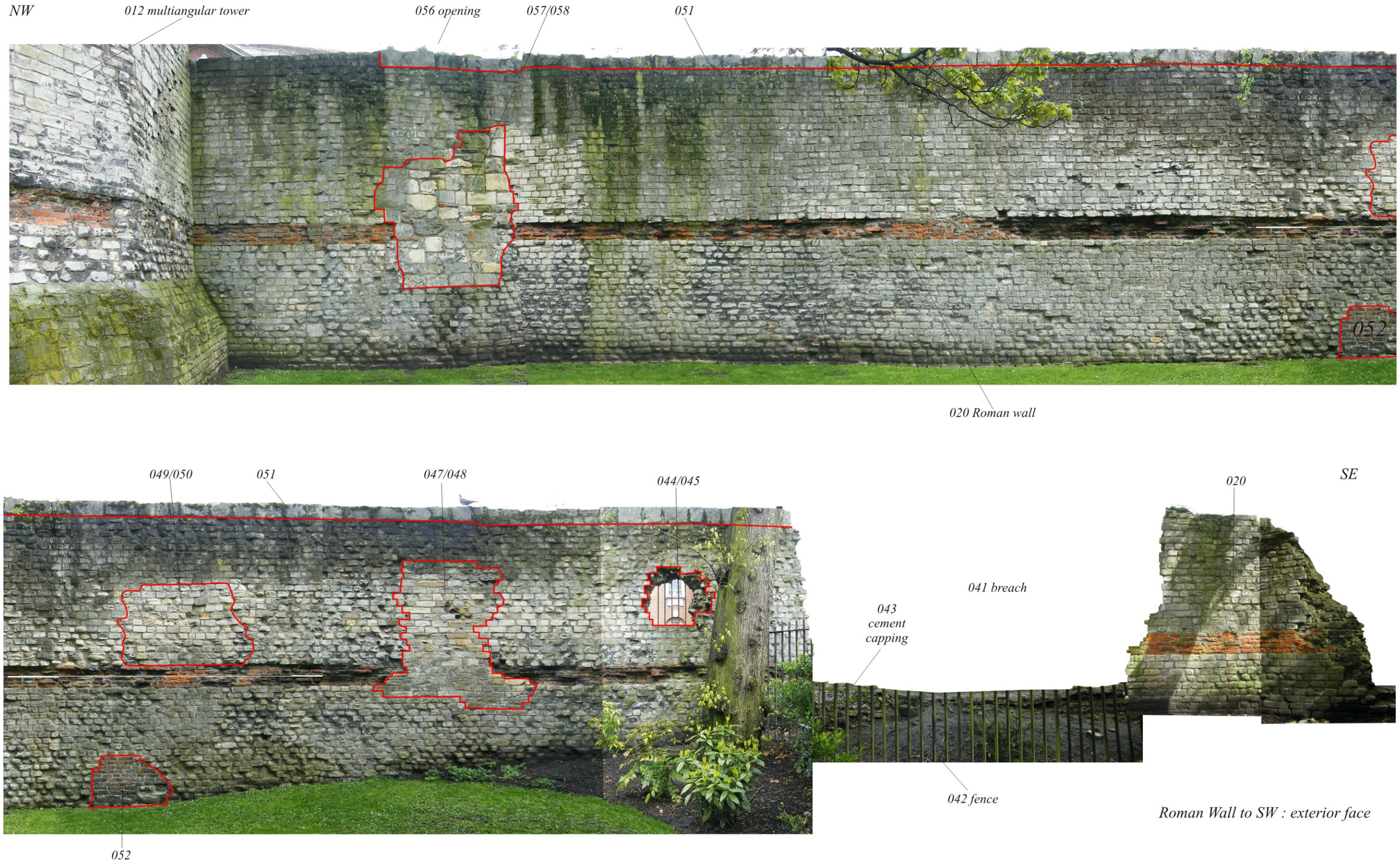
072 Group of stone sarcophagi to NE of Multangular Tower Roman

?moved from within the *113* water-gate within the *110* St Leonard's Hospital infirmary ruin

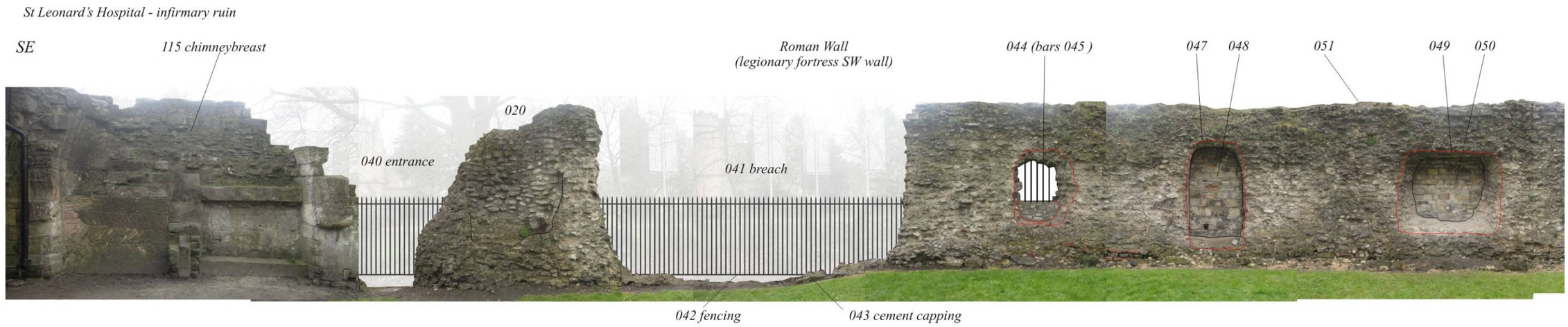
073 Interpretative plaque in York stone c1968

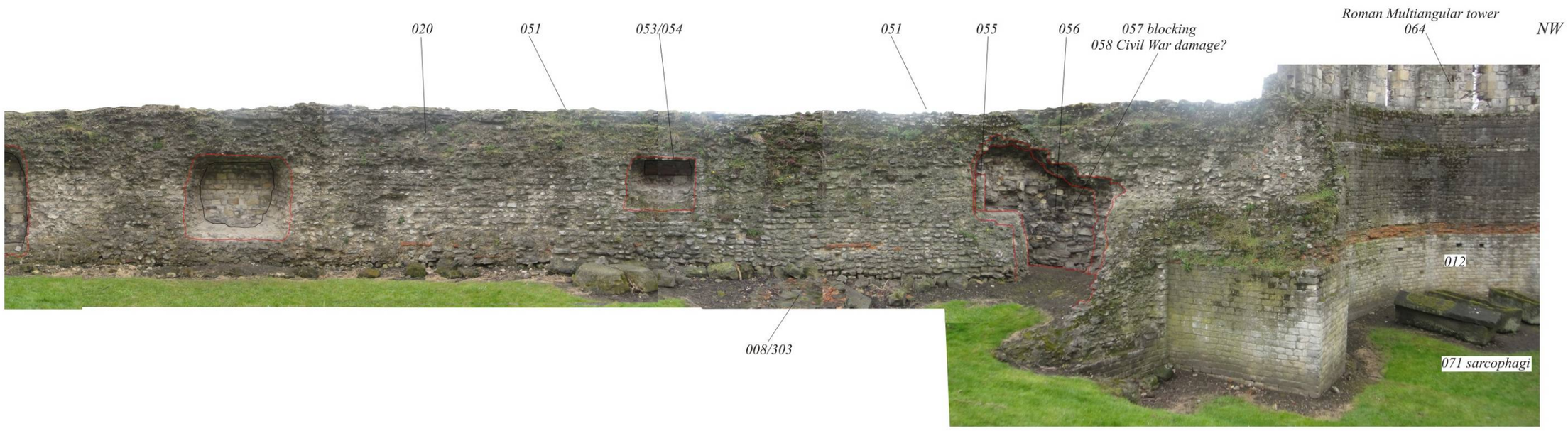
Sited at the exterior wall foot of the Multangular Tower; interpretative plaque of a buff sandstone – York stone? – cut in the form of a Roman *antae* panel; beneath this the inscription, *PRESENTED BY THE NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF MASTER MONUMENTAL MASONS AT THEIR CONFERENCE IN YORK – SEPTEMBER 1968*





Roman Wall to SW : exterior face





Roman Wall to SW : interior face

4.3 St Leonard's Hospital ruin

Statutory designations	Grade I (1257087) & part of Scheduled Ancient Monument 1004910 and YO 30	
Significance	*Adjacent character areas*	*Gazetteer individual features*
High	A, B, F	100 – 199

Introduction

This part of the Mint Yard site, the upstanding ruin of part of the infirmary range of the medieval St Leonard's Hospital, lies to the S of the Central Library building. This truncated fragment is bounded by Museum Street to the SE (it lies opposite to the junction with Lendal); to the NE its garden area fronts on to the Central Library forecourt; to the NW is the library lawn; and to the SW are the Museum Gardens.

The upstanding masonry constitutes only a small part of the former infirmary complex, which likely occupied its own quadrangular area at the SW end of the wider St Leonard's precinct within the W angle of the medieval city wall circuit. The main infirmary range, of which the existing ruin had formed a part, extended further both to the NW (as far as the Multangular Tower), and to the SE, to the mid-point of what is now Museum Street.

The earlier part of the range, now demolished, lay to the NW. Of mid 12th century date this was a very substantial structure built in the Romanesque style, erected against and incorporating the upstanding remains of the SW perimeter of the Roman fortress wall. The remains of this structure were revealed during archaeological investigations in the 3rd quarter of the 19th century and between 1999-2004 (Time

Team Live / YAT). During the latter works evidence for associated 12th century buildings were revealed beneath the existing ruin.

The ruin itself formed part of a SE extension to the Romanesque range, erected in the second quarter of the 13th century. A refined example in the early English style, the ruin constitutes parts of the vaulted undercroft of the infirmary, parts of the first floor of the infirmary proper and, extending out from the main range to the NE, a chapel. The latter is well preserved; its first floor walls and gable NE wall survive, these over a vaulted undercroft. Parts of a large twin-fireplace and chimneybreast exist to the SW. The structure also incorporates one of the principal entries into the medieval St Leonard's Hospital precinct, the vaulted water gate. Excavation along the NW-facing side of the surviving ruin revealed the well-preserved vaulted hospital drain.

At the Reformation c.1540, the hospital was dissolved because it was a monastic institution, and much of the infirmary complex was demolished for usable building materials. This surviving fragment was retained and sold. It was bought back by the Crown c1542 and was used for the Royal Mint periodically until the 1640s. [28] Subsequently, the building was encroached on by later buildings, including a large house that obscured much of its NE side. The building was finally revealed again in c1845-6 when the Roman walls, the library lawn area and the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital were taken into the possession of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society.

References

RCHME (RCHMY) (1981) *An inventory of the Historic Monuments in the City of York: V. The Central Area*, HMSO

RCHME (RCHMY) (1972) *An inventory of the Historic Monuments in the City of York: II. The Defences*, HMSO

N. Pevsner et al. *The buildings of England: Yorkshire: York and the East Riding* (New Haven & London, Yale University Press: 2002)

Fawcett, B (2011), 54

National Heritage List entry in the appendix of this document

---

Observations – St Leonard's Hospital infirmary ruin

The south elevation is to character area F, and has the entrance to the vaulted passage from outside the medieval hospital. This gateway opened to a cobbled lane that descended to the Ouse. This entrance has a round-headed archway, while the passage within has four Gothic bays of pointed quadripartite vaults. At the north east end of the passage, the archway is more elaborately detailed, where it faced the internal court of the hospital. The south east external wall of the passage has scarring where the vaulting of the next part of the building has been removed, perhaps during the laying out of Museum Street, (or the widening of Finkle Street in c.1782). Though the passage is open to pedestrians, with recently installed lighting and interpretation panels, the passage only leads to a fenced-in area of grass at its north east end, adjacent to character area A.

The north west side is a truncated vaulted undercroft, open to character area B. There is an early twentieth-century cast bronze interpretation panel on this elevation. As

---

[28] RCHME *Defences* 61

the rest of the undercroft was removed at some point, buttresses have been built on to withstand the thrust, and iron ties added between the piers at the springing points. The floor surface is poorly draining compacted earth and some loose gravel. The upper level of this structure was not inspected directly but is known to be surfaced in asphalt..

Existing context

This structure relates well to the size of the library lawn in character area B, because one range of its structure once occupied the space. It looks in to the south east corner of character area F, but character area A and Museum Street, which developed subsequently, have not been sympathetic to its setting. To the north, the full height chapel elevations addressing character area A, are rugged and impressive, in dramatic contrast to the mannered design of the library. However iron railings separate the ruin from the urban context on this side and to Museum Street. The spaces between the railings and the ruin emphasise its isolation. Tourists are confused by the open passage that draws them in from character area F to a fenced-in area to the north east. The structure addresses character area F well as it is part of the Roman fortress wall which defines this area. To the north west, the open-sided undercroft seems to set the scale of the space of Library Lawn, in character area B, and again forms a rich contrast with the library. Overall, this structure contributes its picturesque qualities to the surrounding character areas.

Gazetteer of features

101 Evidence for / remains of early infirmary range mid C12th

Substantial range erected against the interior face of the SW section of the Roman fortress wall (*020*) extending to much of the area presently occupied by the library lawn between the Multangular Tower and interval tower SW6 (*024*) whose still-upstanding remains it may have incorporated (suggested following YAT's 2001-2003 excavations); its construction involved the reduction of the Roman rampart in this area. Excavations have revealed the structure to have had a vaulted undercroft four bays wide, which presumably supported a first floor infirmary.

Much of the plan of the building was revealed during investigations by the YPS in c1845-6 (Wellbeloved); a plan of the exposed remains was published by Benson (1968), this based on an original drawing by GT Andrews of 1846. *In situ* pier bases and *ex situ* fragments were displayed within the Garden of Antiquities (1840s-c.1939); in 1939 the site was impacted by the construction of a public air-raid shelter; further archaeological examination was carried out during Time Team Live (1999), and during YAT's Training Excavation (2001-2003); subsequently reburied.

102 Evidence for Timber building C11th

A timber building stood at the foot of the 022 Roman SW rampart, possibly associated with the early hospital; its remains were revealed during YAT's

excavations (YAT, 2004). The structure pre-dated the reduction of the Roman rampart – an earlier phase of hospital activity?

103 Evidence for early large timber building (phase I) C13th

Remains of a timber-built structure (foundation pits) underlying the existing St Leonard's infirmary ruin; possibly coeval with the early infirmary range (*101*) further NW; occupation deposits in the undercroft contained much animal bone, and a small bowl furnace for ironworking (associated slag and hammer-scale); revealed in YAT Training Excavation, 2002. Also see *103*

104 Evidence for early large timber building (phase II) C13th

Post-holes and a possible sill beam; secondary to the *102* remains in the same area. Also see *102*.

105 Construction cut / ditch (I) C12th

Evidence from YAT Trench 1 (2001) suggested that part of the 106 drain had been constructed against the north-west side of a substantial V-shaped ditch cut, 7m wide by at least 3m deep, that had removed at least some of the deposits in the south-east side of the Roman interval tower. The south-east side and base of this cut were not reached, and the purpose of such a large cut is uncertain.

106 Drain (II)

A large stone drain, over lm high internally and running at a right angle to the infirmary wall, was unearthed in YAT's Trenches I and 2 (2001)/2. Generally it had vertical side walls with horizontal capping stones, but beneath the infirmary wall it was vaulted so it could support that wall; this indicates that the drain was constructed as an integral part of the infirmary block. Presumably the drain took waste water out of the hospital complex and into the city ditch, towards the River Ouse (YAT 2003 - excavation report)

(YAT)

107 Reduction of the Roman interval tower SW6 c1200

Interval tower SW6 (*024*) appears to have been reduced to its footings at the time of the rebuilding of the SE end of the early *101* infirmary range (rebuilding - see *108*) (YAT 2003)

108 Rebuild of south-east end of early infirmary block c1200

A massive cobble foundation, incorporating the remains of the north-west wall of Roman Tower SW6 (*024*) is thought to represent a new south-east end wall of

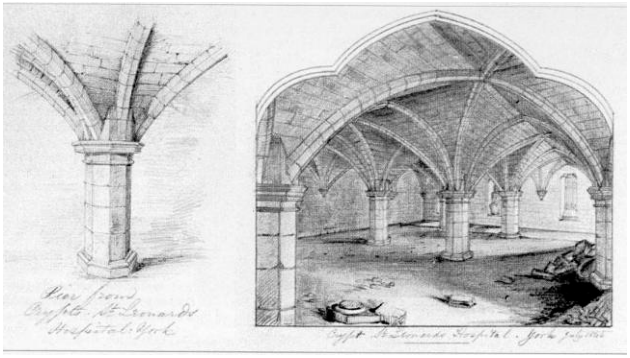
the infirmary, presumably following the demolition of interval tower SW6 (YAT 2003)

109 Cobbled surface revealed within the *113* water-gate passage C12th?

A cobbled surface was exposed during trenching works between October 1915 and March 1916, recorded by George Benson; found along the entire length of the water gate passageway, at a depth of about 0.35m. It probably represents a route into the hospital prior to the construction of the existing water gate passage / *110* infirmary extension (Benson 1916).

110 SE extension to *101* St Leonard's infirmary, upstanding remains c1225-50

Surviving upstanding remains of a 13th century extension to the 12th century infirmary range (*101*). Includes an area of vaulted cellarage, an upstanding fragment of the SW wall at first floor level; it incorporates the *113* water gate; and the *314* chapel extending out to the NE forms part of the same build.



Sketch of the vaulted cellarage by GT Andrews, 1855 (V&A)

The remains have been variously described – see introduction to this section

There are current issues with reconciling the traditional dating of the range to the second quarter of the 13th century, to associated archaeological evidence revealed in the YAT excavations, which appears to date to the early 14th century (*pers. comm.*. K Hunter Mann)

111 Buried remains of the *110* infirmary extension to NW of standing ruin c1225-50

Buried remains of / evidence for continuation of *110* 13th century infirmary range to NW; stone foundations were revealed, bonded to the *106* drain, representing the footings for the piers of a continuation of the vaulted cellarage that still survives further SE, indicating two additional bays; the structure had abutted the SE gable of the pre-existing infirmary range (*101*); remains revealed by excavation (YAT 2003).

112 Buried remains of the *110* infirmary extension to SE of standing ruin c1225-50

Buried remains of / evidence for continuation of *110* 13th century infirmary range to SE; silhouette of truncated cellarage vaulting of 4 bays on SE side of existing ruin; truncated wall returns of walling running off to SE

113 Water-gate, part of the 110 infirmary range c1225-50

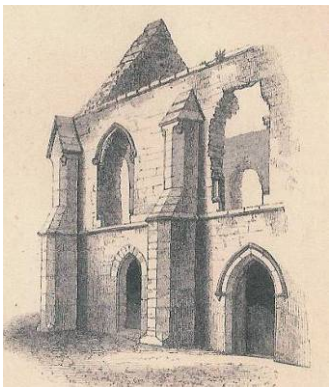
At head of the medieval *Ffotles Lane*, leading up from St Leonard's landing; the principal river entrance to the St Leonard's precinct (*portam aquaticam* – Raine,

1955).

114 Infirmary chapel and undercroft (part of the *110* infirmary) c1225-50

Chapel at first floor level over a vaulted lower stage; a NE/SW- aligned extension of the main range of the *110* infirmary building, but integral to its construction; NE gable wall and SE and NW side walls standing to wall head level; SW wall (an internal cross wall?) missing; buttresses to NE and SE were truncated (see *293* / *294*) but their footings survive in part. IH Parker (1847) noted,

'*The east gable, and portions of the north and south walls of an elegant Early English chapel, have recently been exposed to view by the removal of a dwelling house which had been built on the ruins, and will form an additional ornament to the gardens of the Museum, in which these interesting remains will shortly be enclosed.*'



IH Parker (1847)

115 Chimneybreast / fireplaces, part of the *110* infirmary range c.1225-50

Evidence for kitchen arrangements – chimneybreast projecting externally to the SW; internally the remains of a paired fireplace arrangement, missing lintels / arches supported on corbelled jambs, tiled fire-back; the SE side of the chimneybreast overlies the remains of the *024* Roman interval tower; beneath the NW side of the chimneybreast is the *106* infirmary drain (this running NE/SW)

116 Evidence for wall bounding SE side of river access ?c.1225-50

Truncated wall face at S angle of the existing St Leonard's ruin; profile of upper part of wall suggests offsets on its NW side

117 Within 113 passage; arrangement of 3 stone corbels ?c.1225-50

Upon SE wall towards SW end (1st bay); purpose unclear (supporting a stone shelf for the distribution of alms?)

118 Entrance to cellars at SE end of their NE wall c.1225-50

119 Entrance to chapel under-croft c.1225-50

120 ? Junction of city wall and infirmary ruin ?later 13th century-c1300

Possible evidence for junction with former city wall section running off to the SW – patching of S corner of *115* chimneybreast – see *147*

121 Footing / plinth course - ? of SW section of city wall medieval

As excavated by George Willmot in 1957-9, but unpublished, and still visible by the remains of the Roman interval tower SW6; five plinth stones presently visible at surface, these detailed with NW-facing chamfer

122 …

Post-medieval fabric

130 Demolition of the infirmary range at the time of the Dissolution post-1540

Archaeological evidence recovered from YAT Trench 3 (2001), robbing cuts and extensive demolition layers

131 Early post-medieval occupation on site of infirmary range – archaeological evidence

Archaeological evidence recovered from YAT trench 3 (2001), overlying hospital demolition layers - 3 successive cobble and rubble surfaces, hearths and drains. The associated finds point to a range of industrial activities, perhaps including metal-working and pottery manufacture; buildings recorded on the site in the 18th century may be related – see *747* and *062*

132 Repair / buttressing of NW side of upstanding *110* cellar piers (x3) c.1845-6

Presumably part of works for the YPS undertaken by GT Anderson

133 Making good of vault section wall face, NW side of surviving cellarage c.1845-6

Presumably part of works for the YPS undertaken by GT Anderson

136 Iron ties between piers of NW bay (x3) c.1845-6

Presumably part of works for the YPS undertaken by GT Anderson

137 Patching of wall face – cellar interior, NE wall ? c.1845-6

Centre of NW bay (chapel wall); area of neatly indented stonework - possibly part of works for the YPS undertaken by GT Anderson

138 Repair of jambs of *118* entrance to cellars to E (SE end of NE wall) ? c.1845-6

Part of works for the YPS undertaken by GT Anderson (or more recent)?

139 Iron gate within *118* entrance

140 Repair to / reinstatement of cellar windows ?c1845-6

There is considerable indenting of new Magnesian Limestone ashlarwork around the three cellar windows in the SW wall, most extensively around the NW window; possibly repairs for the YPS overseen by GT Andrews, c.1845-6

141 Bituminous capping of upper level (1st floor floor areas) c1960

By the City of York engineer's department; work overseen by John Nursey, Assistant City Engineer

142 Consolidation of *110* / *114* infirmary range / infirmary chapel ruin c1960

General re-pointing in cement-based mortar; by the City of York engineer's department; work overseen by John Nursey, Assistant City Engineer

143 Existing door within *114* chapel under-croft entrance (*119*) ?c1845-6

144 Refurbishment of interior of *114* chapel under-croft ?c1845-6

145 Existing fenestration of chapel under-croft windows ?c1845-6

146 Brickwork patching within *113* water-gate passage C17th-C18th

SE side of passage, 2nd bay; area of brickwork patching / blocking / making-good; low-fired orange-red narrow bricks (C17th – 18th)

147 Patching of S angle of *115* chimneybreast (former junction with / tying-in of city wall – see *120*)

148 Evidence for lean-to structure, SW side of *115* chimneybreast l.C18th/e.C19th

3 rafter sockets above; horizontal raggle; 11+ joist sockets and associated seatings (?for plaster batons) all cut into the exterior (SW) face of the *115* chimneybreast – associated works below – see *149*. These works likely correspond to buildings in existence in this area in the early 19th century, shown on the 1831 Mint Yard plan (see Benson, G, 1968, Vol.2) – probably demolished c.1845

149 Modification to remains of interval tower SW6 (*024*) l.C18th/e.C19th

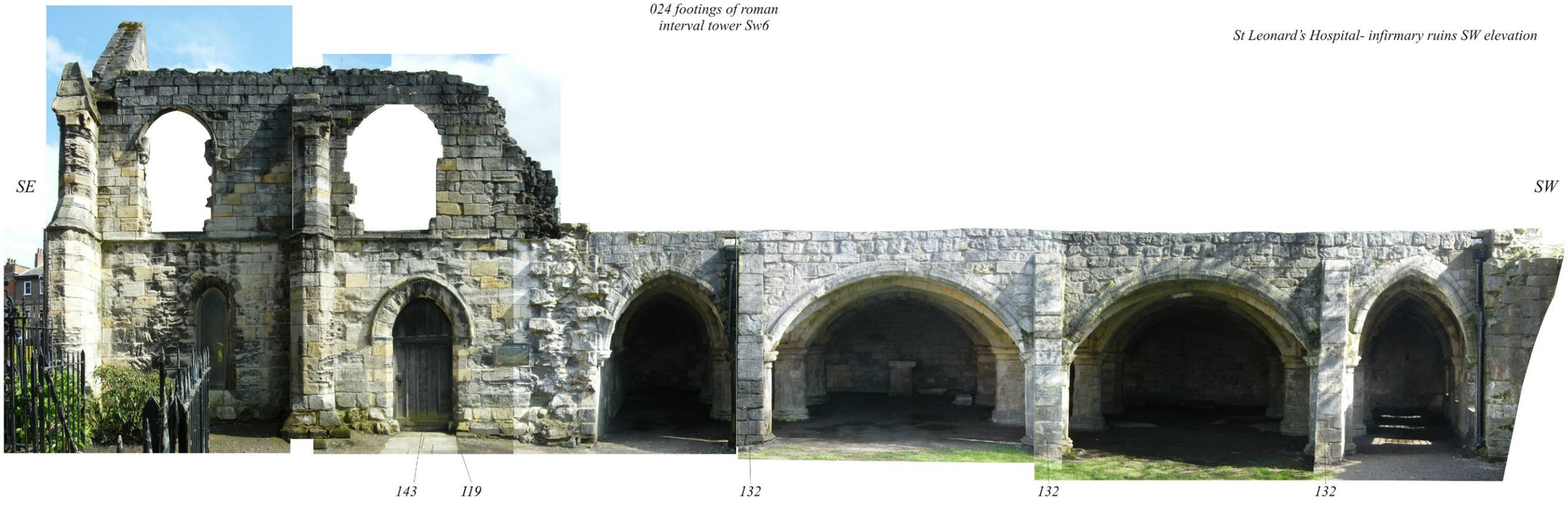
Works associated with the *148* building; cutting into the masonry fabric of

footing of interval tower SW6 to form floor area; remains of brickwork facing-up indented into the Roman fabric

150 Evidence for masonry infill of undercroft arches on NW side of infirmary ruin

Shown *in situ* in Halfpenny's engraving (1809); footings found in YAT's trenches 1 and 2 (2001); evidently reopened c1845 at the time the YPS's acquisition of the site.

St Leonard's Hospital- infirmary ruins SW elevation



St Leonard's Hospital- infirmary ruins NW elevation

4.4 City Wall and Roman fortress wall from Multangular Tower to rear of number 8 St Leonard's Place, with the Anglian Tower

Statutory designations	Grade I (1259292) & part of Scheduled Ancient Monument 1004910 and YO 30	
	Grade I (1257157) & part of Scheduled Ancient Monument 1004910 and YO 30	
Significance	*Adjacent character areas*	*Gazetteer individual features*
High	C, D, F	*200 -279*

Introduction

This part of the Mint Yard site lies to the NW of the Central Library building, forming the site boundary, and encompassing parts of character areas C and D. It constitutes a well preserved section of the city's historic defences on its NW-facing side, part of the section that formerly extended between the Multangular Tower and Bootham Bar. For much of its later history, up to the earlier 19th century, all that was visible was the medieval city wall itself surmounting the broad earthen rampart that is the general and well-known characteristic of York's systems of defences. The site of the medieval ditch also survived, a remnant of which now forms Manor Lane.

This changed dramatically in the mid 1830s with the creation of St Leonard's Place, at which time a 350ft section of the wall, including two intermediate city wall towers, was dismantled, and the rampart below wholly scoured away. The surviving wall section, some 200ft long, is all that now remains.

Though it was long known that the medieval defensive line corresponded to that of the NW perimeter of the Roman legionary fortress, it was not until the 1830s that antiquarian investigation and chance discoveries began to reveal the complex history of this area. These include excavation adjacent to the Multangular Tower, a number of discoveries of Roman remains further NE during the construction of St Leonard's Place, and the discovery in 1839 of the Anglian Tower. This process of investigation culminated in 1969-71 with large scale excavations, and then the laying-out of an innovative interpretative display of the rear rampart area, this carried out to celebrate the 1900th anniversary of the foundation of the city (AD71). These works wholly altered the appearance of the area and involved very extensive built interventions, especially the structural underpinning of the city wall.

This section of the defences long formed both a major physical barrier and a principal administrative boundary – between the Roman fortress and an annex on its NW side; between the Anglian / Anglo-Scandinavian town and what may have been a royal compound – the *Earlsburgh* (which may correspond to the earlier annex but may have incorporated a wider area within the existing St Mary's Abbey perimeter); and following the Norman Conquest the defensive line in this area formed a strip of land separating the St Leonard's Hospital precinct from that of St Mary's Abbey. Up to the 19th century the foot of the exterior rampart formed the boundary between the City of York and the surrounding county, marked as such on the 1852 Ordnance Survey.

Summary description

This is a very complicated area of the city walls that has been partially excavated. There are three parallel walls, the later medieval city walls sandwiching the earlier Roman fortress wall, which is at the ground level of the adjacent library and the Anglian Tower. The most south eastern wall is medieval and it appears was a retaining wall for the earth bank, excavated in the 1960s. This wall is probably mentioned in 1612 as giving concern to the Council over its stability.[29] To the north west, is a narrow path of paving and cobbles, before the inner face of the Roman wall.

The Roman wall is of similar construction to the stretch of wall running south east of the Multangular Tower, constructed of small blocks of stone, with a continuous distinctive band of red tiles. The tallest parts of the wall as presently visible now stand to around head height (at original parapet level), however some 3m of the wall remains buried, its exterior face to the NW overlain beneath the later rampart structure. The southerly end of the wall, before it joins the Multangular Tower, has the distinctive inward curve of the 'playing-card' corners of Roman fortresses.

To the north west of the Roman wall, is the medieval city wall, towering above. The crenellations are not continuous. There is one early 19th century opening in the medieval wall at the south end, connecting character area B, to the fernery of character area C, with an interpretation panel. The shallow footings of this wall were

---

[29] RCHME *Defences* 111

originally underground, buried in the earth rampart, and were exposed when the site was excavated in the 1960s. Below these footings, the cut away face of the earth rampart was consolidated with rounded stones, which look different from medieval or Roman fabric.

The Anglian Tower is a single-storey remains of a stone tower, with one room on the ground level, vaulted largely in brick.

References

RCHME (RCHMY) (1972) A*n inventory of the Historic Monuments in the City of York: II. The Defences*, HMSO pp. 111-113

National Heritage List entry in the appendix of this document

---

Observations

The Roman part of the walls is not mentioned in the listing "City wall from Multangular Tower to rear of number 8 St Leonard's Place" (list entry number 1259292), nor on "Anglian Tower" (list entry number 1257157), and though scheduled as part of the "City Walls" (list entry number 1004910), it is not described.

The Anglian Tower has four openings, the original segmental-headed doorways, within the line of the Roman walls, and the two later round headed openings for the 19th century tunnel, all of which are blocked with metal mesh. The four external walls rise to around the level of the vault within. There is no interpretation of this structure which is remarkable considering its importance.

Present context

These walls form a hard north west boundary to the Mint Yard site. The medieval city wall sits on top of the grassy bank in character areas C, facing the Kings Manor buildings below, across a low retaining wall and a tarmac surface. The walls do not stand further to the north east, where they were removed in the 1830s for the building of St Leonard's Place. From the lower ground level between the walls, the rear brick elevations of the St Leonard's Place houses are glimpsed over the 1960s interpretation. The northern end of the structures are enclosed by the nineteenth-century retaining wall, and further south, the structures face the rear elevation of the library, across tarmac in character area D, and face into character area B.

The Anglian Tower is located in the complicated landscape character area D, dwarfed by the high medieval city walls and the later retaining wall to the south east. It is relatively hidden from all but the determined visitor, or the well-informed. This in striking contrast to the Roman Multangular Tower to the south west. To the north east of the tower c.1970 interpretation of the historic wall and earth bank levels, and the brick rear elevations of the St Leonard's Place houses, glimpsed over the bank. The only access to the tower is from the south west, and there are views to character area B. The most striking aspect, is the inaccessibility of the tower, between the walls, and at a dead end.

Gazetteer of features

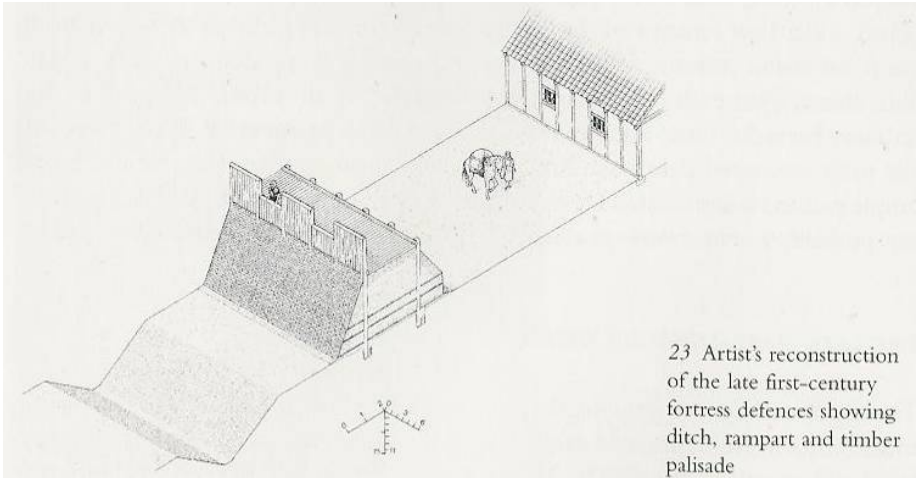
200 *Pre-roman topsoil*

Encountered underlying the 1st century earthen rampart

Roman

201 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - late 1st century rampart

Recorded by Radley (1969) and Davison (1970), discussed by Ottaway (AY 3/3, 257-8). Makeup of interleaved deposits of sandy material (decayed turves?), interleaved with layers of clay; recorded to a depth of 3m on SW side of Alglian Tower.



23 Artist's reconstruction of the late first-century fortress defences showing ditch, rampart and timber palisade (YAT)

202 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - revetted construction trench for construction of stone fortress wall (Radley / Davidson)

Recorded by Radley (1969) and Davison (1970), discussed by Ottaway (AY 3/3, 258-60)

203 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - remains of fortress wall ?e.C2nd

Revealed by excavation in 1831 (area adjacent to Multangular Tower), and in 1969-70; its exposed upper parts were consolidated for public display in 1970-1.

A 71m section of the stone-built NW perimeter wall of the legionary fortress running from the NE side of the Multangular Tower is exposed within the area excavated for public display (detailed analytical description by Ottaway in AY 3/3, 260-6). The wall runs in a straight line to 16m to the NE of the Multangular Tower and, after a slight realignment at that point, it then ran towards the tower, forming a curvature as it approached the junction. Survives upto a height of 4.7m in places above its plinth and footing, as revealed archaeologically by Radley and Davison in 1969-70). Mixed rubble / lime concrete core. Exterior facings of small blocks of Magnesian Limestone laid to courses of about 10cm. At 2.5m from its base a band of 5 tile courses. Remains of an exterior projecting tile course survive suggests the existing wall top is close to wall walk level. Possible evidence for external plasterwork is discussed by Ottaway. Interior (rear) face of coursed, more or less roughly finished limestone blocks; this face would have been largely or wholly overlain by the interior rampart. Wall width varies between 1.2m and 1.48m where this can be measured between surviving wall faces; at points there is some evidence for the

stepping-in of the rear face towards the wall top.

The NW elevation of this stretch of the fortress wall was recorded in detail by YAT and appears as their illustration, Figure 188, in AY 3/3 (unbound illustrations).

The visible stretch preserves the remains of the first of a series of interval towers, *tower NW1* (see *205*).

A further continuation of the same stretch of wall can be seen adjacent to no.9 St Leonard's Place, see *204*. Other sections, including interval towers *NW2* and *NW3* were recorded during clearance of St Leonard's Place in the 1830s (Wellbeloved 1842).

204 Legionary fortress NW perimeter, NE continuation of *203* ?e.C2nd

An isolated section of the fortress wall, to the NE of the core site area, survives in the former garden area of No.9 St Leonard's Place; see *RCHME* 1962, 28, and figure 21. Revealed in 1835, this section of wall was investigated by SN Miller in 1928.

205 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - remains of interval tower NW1

Lying some 45m to the NE of the Multangular Tower. 1m long stubs remaining of its NE and SW walls remain to a visible height of about 0.8m. The tower was probably originally square in plan, measuring approximately 6m². When revealed in 1970 the surviving walls were examined to a depth of about 1.0m;

fairly neatly coursed facing blocks of Magnesian Limestone. These tower side walls were bonded into the rear face of the fortress wall proper. The remainder of the tower walls had been deliberately robbed. Description by Ottaway (AY 3/3, 264-5).

206 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - back-fill of fortress wall construction cut.

Recorded by Radley (1969) and Davison (1970), discussed by Ottaway (AY 3/3, 258-60). Successive deposits of sand and clay (Radley)

207 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - possible raising of the rampart following wall construction

Evidence discussed by Ottaway (AY 3/3, 260). Built up to as much as 4m in overall height.

Late Roman – early post-Roman

208 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - black soil level – apparent post-Roman abandonment

Recorded by Radley and Davison 1969/70, discussed by Ottaway (AY 3/3, 267); NE end of Davison's excavation area, extending into Radlay's.. Post-Roman abandonment build-up of a clean homogenous dark soil upto 0.10m thick, suggested by Ottaway as *probably deriving from natural accumulation and decay of successive turf surfaces*.

209 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - breach in Roman fortress wall / rampart

The *210* 'Anglian Tower' sited in what seems to have been a breach in the *203* Roman fortress wall. Some enlargement of this on the interior face of the fortress wall occurred in relation to the construction of the tower.

210 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - 'Anglian Tower' (5th – 7th century?)

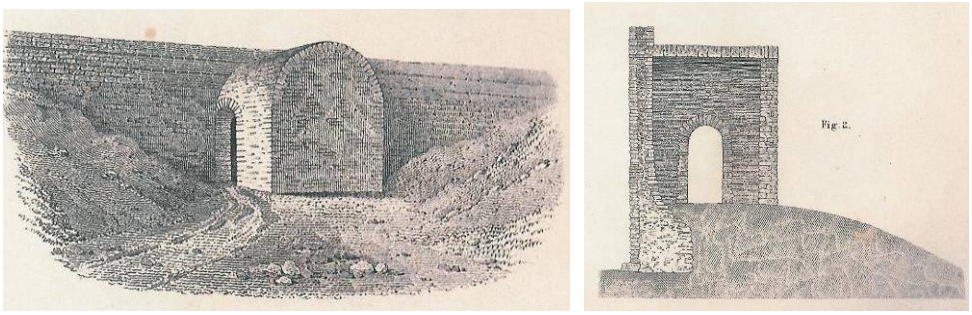
The so-called Anglian Tower was discovered accidentally in 1839 when workmen were digging a tunnel through the rampart and under the city wall, to provide convenient access for C. H. Elsby Esq., of 9 St Leonard's Place to his stables in Mint Yard (see *249*). It was initially identified as Roman, and identified thus on the Ordnance Survey of 1852. When it was finally fully uncovered by Radley in 1969, it was identified as 'the only secular Saxon stone

tower in England', though this ahs subsequently been disputed (eg. Buckland …etc.).

In 1839 the *249* tunnel was driven through the front and rear walls of the tower; parts of the tunnel were retained during the excavation and consolidation works of 1969-71. Its vaulted ceiling, which was mostly rebuilt in brick at the same time, also remains (*266*).

Variously dated, within the range c.400-870 AD, this diminutive tower was built in a breach (*209*) in the *203* Roman fortress wall, which was clearly still being used for defence. It was covered after c.870 by an earth rampart (*214*).

The structure has been described and surveyed in detail (sources cited below)



The Anglian tower as illustrated by Wellbeloved (1842)

Reported in the *York Courant*, 6 June 1839; Wellbeloved 1842, 52-3. Description in Radley (*YAJ*, 44 (1972), 38-64; *RCHME : City of York : 2 (The Defences)*, 113; and Ottaway (*AY 3/3*, 268-73); Pevsner (1992, 132)

211 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - miscellaneous post-Roman(?) features

Group of minor features recorded by Davison in 1970 (see Ottaway, AY 3/3, 266-7), apparently early post-Roman, encountered to the SW of interval tower NW1. [summary list]

Post-Roman

212 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - revetment, upon Roman wall-top

Recorded by Radley and Davison 1969/70, discussed by Ottaway (AY 3/3, 267). Encountered at the NE end of Davidson's area, extending into Radley's area (vicinity of Anglian Tower). Exterior (to NW) built of large gritstone blocks (reused Roman?), set approximately 0.4m back from the Roman fortress exterior wall-face, built upon its surviving wall head; up to 3 courses are recorded in section. Smaller facings of limestone to rear; loose rubble core; thickness recorded in section of about 1.1m. Abutted on its interior (SE) face by the *613*

walkway.… to be described in AY 10. According to Radley the feature post-dated collapse associated with the decline of the 'Anglian Tower'.

213 Legionary fortress NW perimeter - walkway associated with the *212* revetment (7-9th century?)

Recorded by Radley and Davison 1969/70, discussed by Ottaway (AY 3/3, 267). Approximately 1.4m wide in Radley's section close to the Anglian Tower, where the feature was evidently comparatively well preserved. Abuts the SE face of the revetment.

214 Rampart overlying Legionary fortress NW perimeter wall 9th-10th century

Radley, 1972, 46-9 and figure 8; RCHMY 2 (1972), 113; the latter notes – *c.900* [the Roman wall] *was covered by a bank 2½ ft. higher and 35ft. wide at the base. The bank had a timber breastwork on the crest, backed by two courses of reused gritstone blocks, and partly supported on horizontal timbers set in grooves cut, where necessary, in the top of the Roman wall.*

Cross-section profile and short section of interior part of rampart of this phase was displayed in 1970-1.

215 Rampart overlying Legionary fortress NW perimeter wall Norman

Radley, 1972, 46-9 and figure 8; RCHMY 2 (1972), 113. The latter notes, *in c.1080 the bank was enlarged to a width of 45ft. at the base and heightened by 3ft. with sand and gravel, presumably from the ditch. Post-holes and nails indicate that this enlarged rampart also had a timber breastwork*

Cross-section profile and short section of interior part of rampart of this phase was displayed in 1970-1.

216 Rampart overlying Legionary fortress NW perimeter wall e.C13th

Radley, 1972, 46-9 and figure 8; RCHMY 2 (1972), 113. The latter notes, *The bank was again enlarged in the 13th century to a width of 70 ft. and a height of 3 ft. above the crest of the Norman rampart* [see *215*]; the dating of this work is discussed in more detail in *RCAM : York : Vol. II* (1972), 9-11.

This rampart phase forms much of the existing as visible on the exterior side of the city wall (though its upper part had been reduced by over 1m – see *223*); a short section of the interior part survives further to the NE and was displayed in cross-section in 1970-1. The remainder of the interior part of the rampart was excavated away in 1831 and in 1969-70 – see *217* and *218* respectively

217 Excavations of inner rampart NE of Multangular Tower (I) c1831

The first section of the inner rampart was excavated c1831 by the YPS when the interior of the Multangular Tower was cleared, this in pursuit of the line of the Roman fortress wall running NE in the direction of Bootham Bar; the extent of the area exposed is recorded on the 1st Edition OS town plan of 1852.

218 Excavations of inner rampart NE of Multangular Tower (II) 1969-70

1969-70 Mechanical excavation by the City Engineer's Department of the area behind the NW facing section of the city wall from the Multangular Tower to just beyond the Anglian Tower; some rescue excavation was undertaken,

including the recording of sample sections as the work progressed – these reproduced in Ottaway (AY 3/3)

219 *Medieval city wall – from Multangular Tower to 9 St Leonard's - general* c1250-65

This section of city wall, a surviving length of 200 ft, was built in individual sections for which periodic construction breaks are apparent – these can be seen on both sides of the wall at each point and correspond to more or less subtle discontinuities in the coursing and character of build.

Other than the construction breaks relating to the original build, there survives evidence for other early features, now missing, such as buttressing on the interior face, and a number of subsequent interventions and re-buildings.

Further NE, between the present wall end and Bootham Bar a long section of the wall, and wall towers 20 and 21, were removed in c1831-5 during the construction of St Leonard's Place.

The wall section as depicted by J Halfpenny (1807) – Bootham Bar is in the distance

This section of wall is described in general in RCHMY 2 (1972), 111.

For the purposes of the following entries the wall is navigated by means of the individual sections defined by the eight buttresses on the exterior (NW) wall face, these numbered 1-8 running NE from the side of the Multangular Tower.

220 Breach in city wall, NE side of Multangular Tower

Formed in city wall immediately NE of Multangular Tower for the insertion of an entrance by the YPS, c1845. – see *221/222*

221 Entrance in area of *220* breach

Evidently formed by the *YPS* following their purchase of the Library Lawn area in 1845. Shouldered arch corbelled out on limestone blocks; York Stone lintel; jambs formed up of reused medieval limestone blocks.

222 Infill of the *220* breach

Associated with the *221* entrance insertion; employing reused larger blocks of Magnesian Limestone likely from the down-taking of this wall section; some apparently faithful re-erection of dismantled elements such as the parapets; c.1845

223 Exterior – reduction of rampart top externally c 1960-71 to expose footing of medieval wall and to allow underpinning.

224 Underpinning exterior wall foot of city wall

A projecting concrete base is visible at the exterior wall foot between buttresses within the fernery area – up to the side of the *243* iron boundary fence; it is possible that such underpinning extends further to the NE but is buried. Where exposed these areas of underpinning have been slightly undercut by recent path-laying; some indication of recent movement is evident.

225 City wall – NE side of Multangular Tower to buttress 3 c1250-65

Wall section from NE side of Multangular Tower to a vertical construction break just beyond the NE side buttress 3. Wall built of somewhat irregular medium-large squared Magnesian Limestone blocks [add detail]. This wall section is notably more irregular than those sections further NE; there are slight changes in alignment; the wall head gradually rises as it runs NE

226 Projecting medieval wall footing corresponding to the *225* wall section

Fully exposed footing following reduction of rampart – 1969-70; of approximately 3-4 courses of undressed or roughly squared blocks, predominantly Magnesian Limestone; underpinned, c1970 – see *224*

227 Upper walling and parapet, above *225* wall section

Above a well-defined horizontal break, the upper walling and crenellations corresponding to the *225* wall section appear to be a discreet construction – whether this is simply part of the original construction process or a subsequent rebuilding is unclear. 5 merlons. This section of parapet is cut by the *220* breach.

228 …

229 City wall – NE side of buttress 3 to NE side of buttress 4 c1250-65

Wall section between exterior buttresses 3 and 4, including buttress 4, with vertical break at E side of buttress 4. Course squared limestone blocked.

230 Projecting medieval wall footing corresponding to the *229* wall section

Fully exposed footing following reduction of rampart – 1969-70; of approximately 3-4 courses of undressed or roughly squared blocks, predominantly Magnesian Limestone; underpinned, c1970 – see *624*

231 …

232 City wall – NE side of buttress 4 to buttress 6 c1250-65

Wall section from side of buttress 4 – running through to the centre of buttresses 6 (break visible to interior). Exterior – formed of larger neatly squared blocks of limestone – well coursed; of very similar character to section *237*.

233 Projecting medieval wall footing corresponding to the *232* wall section

234 Breach in *232* wall section between buttresses 4 and 5.

V-shaped breach affecting upper 3/5 of wall.

235 Infill of *234* breach

In-filled with smaller somewhat coarser limestone blocks than surrounding *232* walling. 19th century repair?

236 Section of continuous parapet (?part of *235* repair)

Continuous parapet formed in this area, above the *635* infill of the *634* breach – reusing some early coping stones; coarser stones for copes elsewhere. 19th century repair?

237 City wall – centre of buttress 6 to wall end c1250-65

Wall section from the centre of buttress 6 (break visible to interior) to the wall end. Exterior – formed of larger neatly squared blocks of limestone – well coursed; of very similar character to section *232*.

238 Projecting medieval wall footing corresponding to the *237* wall section

239 Breach within upper parts of the *237* wall section, NE parts

Upper walling from area of buttress 8 (exterior) north-eastwards to existing wall end.

240 Repair of 239 breach – medium sized recycled blocks of limestone, some smaller blocks higher up. Parapet rebuilt in same without crenellations and continuous triangular cope; below parapet level the repair may have mainly consisted of exterior re-facing work.

241 Brick-built retaining wall at foot of the exterior rampart to NW

Retaining wall at foot of the exterior rampart (site boundary) bounding the lane, between the area of buttress 6 where it extends NE from the stonework of *245*. It continues NE beyond site boundary; here the wall rises above a batter, though the upper parts are largely rebuilt in this area. At the NE end a remaining early section shows this was the original detail, with regularly spaced piers rising through the batter. Wall head coped with sandstone slabs that respect the piers. This wall may have been consolidated or substantially altered in the late 1960s alterations to the King's Manor. C18th (or early C19th?) low-fired terracotta brick.

242 Repair/modification to the *241*/*245* wall section. *241* wall reduced to base of batter; pointed up in cement and wall head re-formed with a continuous York-stone(?) cope. This operation also included the (?reduction and) rebuilding of the top of the *245* walling further SW, and employing the same cope detail – 1969-71 works?

243 Museum Gardens – boundary railing – transverse running NW from side of buttress 4 down the rampart to the site of the *244* gate piers/flanking wall.

244 Piers and flanking wall defining gated entry into Museum Gardens.

Limestone piers and flanking wall section running SE; masonry of opposite pier running up to and abutting the Kings Manor wall.

245 Stone-built retaining wall at the foot of the exterior rampart to NW

Running NE from side of *244* pier to below buttress 6. Squared blocks of limestone; NE terminus corresponds to line of *246* walling; runs to brickwork of *241* retaining wall

246 Remains of masonry wall running NW from city wall section *237* close to buttress 6

Surviving short wall section running NW from city wall just on the NE side of buttress 6 – fragment surviving at top of rampart mainly recycled blocks of limestone, some early/mid C19th bricks evident. Entrance within this see – *647*. Visible on the 1852 OS town plan where the wall runs down to the wall bounding the lane. It position evidently relates to the junction of the two wall

sections bounding the lane – see *641* and *645*

247 Entrance in *246* wall section – at head of rampart.

248 Structure built into exterior rampart to NW (OS town plan, 1852)

Site of (buried remains likely). A narrow long rectangular structure appears on the 1852 OS town plan, built into the external slope of the city wall rampart in the area of buttresses 5 and 6.

249 Tunnel access built through rampart to NW 1839

Tunnel formed in 1839 to provide convenient access for C. H. Elsby Esq., of 9 St Leonard's Place, to his stables in Mint Yard. It extended from his gardens on the exterior (NW) side of the rampart, under the city wall, and through to the interior of the *281* stables to the SE; its excavation led to the discovery of the Anglian tower – the tunnel passed through the tower interior.

The tunnel evidently survived in its entirety until 1969-70 at which time the Anglian tower (*210*) was re-excavated; more of the tunnel within the area of the inner rampart was removed during excavations / engineering works in 1970-1. The SE tunnel entrance from the stables runs through the *250* retaining wall (now blocked – see *269*); parts of the tunnel remain within the Anglian tower (which saw re-vaulting as part of the tunnel construction – *267*; recorded in this area by Radley, 1972); the tunnel section running NW under the city wall, and then N through the exterior rampart likely survives though it is now buried (evidently still open before works in 1970-1 - a full section appears in RCHME, 1972). The tunnel entrance through the outer rampart appears on the 1852 OS town plan and later OS plans, where it runs diagonally (N/S) into the external slope of the city wall rampart in the area of buttresses 7 and 8.

The visible fragments in the area of the Anglian tower and stables to the SE demonstrate tunnel walls of recycled limestone blocks; barrel vault in double-skin brickwork.

tunnel access within stables (SE end)

250 Retaining wall, inner rampart to NW ?medieval

Between the library and the *203* Roman fortress wall exists a long wall section that was evidently a retaining wall for the inwards-facing side of the medieval rampart; this is faced on its SE side with larger squared blocks of magnesian limestone; its rear side was exposed by the 1970-1 excavations and consolidated (see *251*, *252*). This reveals the masonry of the wall to thicken considerably towards its base, particularly where seen further NE. The wall is comparatively well preserved further NE; here it rises to its apparent original wall head height; to the NE it is overlain on its exterior face by the existing stables block, *280/281*.

RCHMY 2, 111, notes: *The present stone retaining wall 10ft. high … may incorporate a retaining wall already existing in 1612 when the city council were concerned about its demolition: 'ther is a stone wall of freestone which holdeth upp a great part of the ramper or moat lyeinge nere Bowthome barr within the walls of this cittee …*

251 Underpinning of the *250* retaining wall 1970-1

Evident towards its SE end both internally and externally at wall foot; areas of inserted cement-bedded magnesian limestone blocks; 2 terracotta field drain sections employed as weeper holes on SE side.

252 General consolidation of *250* retaining wall 1970-1

Following localised joint-raking a general re-pointing of the wall remains employing cement.

253 Structural remains (latrine ?) ?medieval

The *250* retaining wall is interrupted by the presence of an area of faced masonry cut back more deeply into the inner side of the medieval rampart; faced internally with roughly squared blocks of magnesian limestone (coeval with or predates the *250* retaining wall – possibly the rear section of a pre-existing building.; rear (NW) and NE sides now remain, these constructed directly against the earth of the cut-back rampart. Revealed in excavation 1970-1.

The *253* structure with the *254* walling built within, the *255* blocking and, foreground, the *256* reconstructed facings.

254 Secondary construction within the 253 structure

The *253* structure was reduced in size (possibly to form a large fire place??); its NE 'jamb' is visible externally as a straight joint; internally faced with rough-hewn squared blocks of Mag. Limestone; no attempt to form rear faces, the

intervening space between this and *253* must have been in-filled. Revealed in excavation 1970-1.

255 Blocking of the *254* feature

The *654* structural remains were blocked off, the masonry of the blocking built to the line of the SE side of the *250* retaining wall; mortared masonry, mainly of Mag. Limestone, of rough-hewn squared blocks, coursed, at face; much narrow low-fired orange-red brick within the build – C17th or C18th ?

256 Small section of reconstructed facings 1970-1

On line of *250* retaining wall on SW side of *251-253*, a single course of recycled Mag Limestone blocks, cement-bedded; 1970-1

257 Paving between the 250 retaining wall and the 203 Roman fortress wall

Generally of York stone flags, with panels of cobbles or rectangular sandstone setts; the projected walls of the 205 interval tower NW1 are marked in bands of smaller cobbled edged with vertically-set pieces of York stone; extends from area of Multangular Tower to beyond the Anglian tower

258 Steps and ramp within *257* paved area, to S of Anglian tower 1970-1

Leading down to the area surrounding the Anglian tower

259 Steps at SW end of the *257* paved area c.1960

260 Gravel path between *203* fortress wall and city wall 1970-1

Extends from area of *221* entrance to the NE to just beyond the Anglian tower.

261 Underpinning work to the city wall to NW 1970-1

Major structural underpinning exercise whereby the city wall was supported by a system of concrete piers following excavation of the rear side of the rampart (*218*) – pers. comm. John Nursey, former Deputy City Engineer.

262 Facing work associated with the *261* underpinning 1970-1

Facing / retaining in area of structural underpinning in the area of the *218* excavation of the inner rampart; extending down from the projecting wall foot of the city wall to beneath the *260* existing gravel path; concrete detailed with bedded cobbles

263 Profiled interpretive retaining walls - excavation of inner rampart 1970-1

A stepped series of cobble-faced concrete retaining wall sections terminate the NE end of the *218* excavation of the inner rampart below the city wall; conceived as an interpretative scheme, the profiled tops of the retaining walls silhouette the profile of the Roman, Dark Age, Norman, and medieval ramparts revealed by excavation; part of the overall laying-out of the excavated remains in this area to celebrate the 1900th anniversary of the foundation of the city (AD71).

264 Interpretation within excavated area of inner rampart to NW 1970-1

A series of York stone plinths with cut lettering provide summary interpretation of features revealed during excavations of the interior part of the rampart in 1969-70

265 Repairs to the 203 fortress wall 1970-1

Some re-pointing of joints at exterior; much recessed pointing of interior (SE) face; cement-capped / rough-racking of wall head.

266 Rebuilding of Anglian Tower vault during tunnel construction 1839

Much of the vault of the Anglian Tower was missing upon its discovery during construction works for the *249* tunnel in 1839; the barrel vault was rebuilt in double-skin brickwork

267 Evidence for buttressing – interior face of city wall c.1300

Scars and truncated remains at the interior wall face of the *219* city wall close to its NE end (just beyond the 269 railing) – probable evidence for a single buttress.

268 Blocking of the *249* tunnel on line of the *250* retaining wall 1970-1

Blocking of the SE end of the *249* tunnel at its entrance within the *281* stables building; a single skin of brickwork; recycled terracotta bricks, cement-bedded

269 Railing above NE end of excavated area of inner rampart 1970-1

Iron railing extending between the city wall and the rear of the *280* stables

building (N corner).

270 Walling revealed in 1969 excavation to SW of Anglian Tower late medieval?

Masonry retaining wall cut into the inner side of the medieval and earlier rampart; recorded in Radley's 1969 excavation, *Prior to the seventeenth century a retaining wall was constructed, perhaps during the period when the inner area was part of St leonard's Hospital* (Radley, 1972, 53 and figure 8; RCHME, York, Vol. II (1972), 113); further remains were recorded by Davison in 1970 – sections A-B and C-D (see Ottaway, AY 3/3, 1996, 256-65)

271 Evidence for buttressing – interior face of city wall c.1300

Scars and truncated remains at the interior wall face of the *219* city wall close to the Multangular Tower indicate the former presence of at least 4 buttresses (whose spacing suggest there had been at least five); corresponding to wall sections *225* and *229*

272 Existing buttress – interior face of city wall c.1300

A solitary buttress remains on the interior face of the *219* city wall to the NE of the Multangular Tower, this notably broad and corresponding to the construction break between wall sections.

273 City wall, tower 20 (site of) c.1300

Site of city wall tower 20, lying just to the N of the surviving NE termination of the city wall; demolished in c1831-5 during the construction of St Leonard's Place; noted in *RCHME : York : The Defences* (1972), 115 – *tower 20 was rectangular … It appears on maps from 1694 to 1829*.

274 Re-facing work (I) below city wall, NE side of Multangular Tower ?c.1845

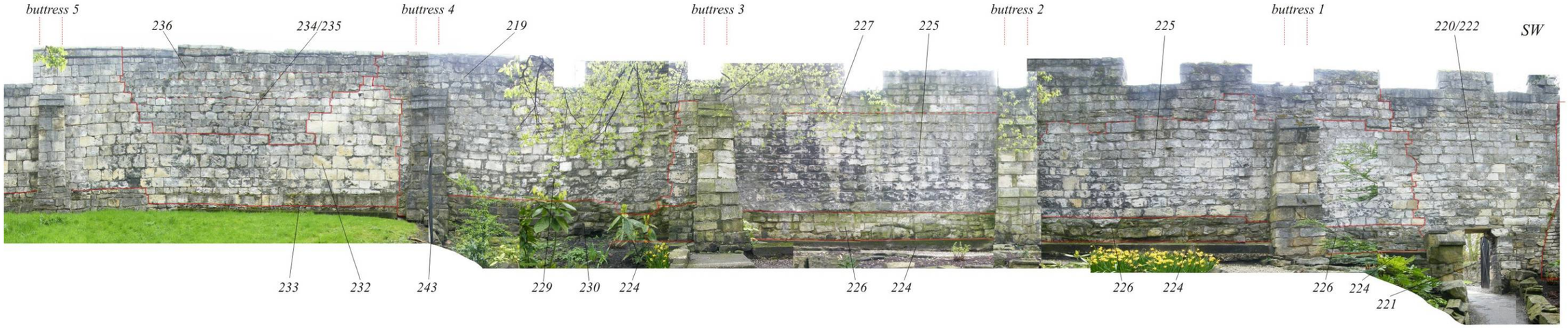
Lower wall section is faced with reused squared blocks of Magnesian Limestone; this may have formed part of the early works by the YPS in relation to making accessible the multangular tower and library lawn area of the gardens.

This area of facing runs between the *222* breach and the *262* cobbled re-facing work of c1970-1 further NE. Approximately corresponds to the area as laid out in the mid 19th century - as illustrated on the 1852 OS.

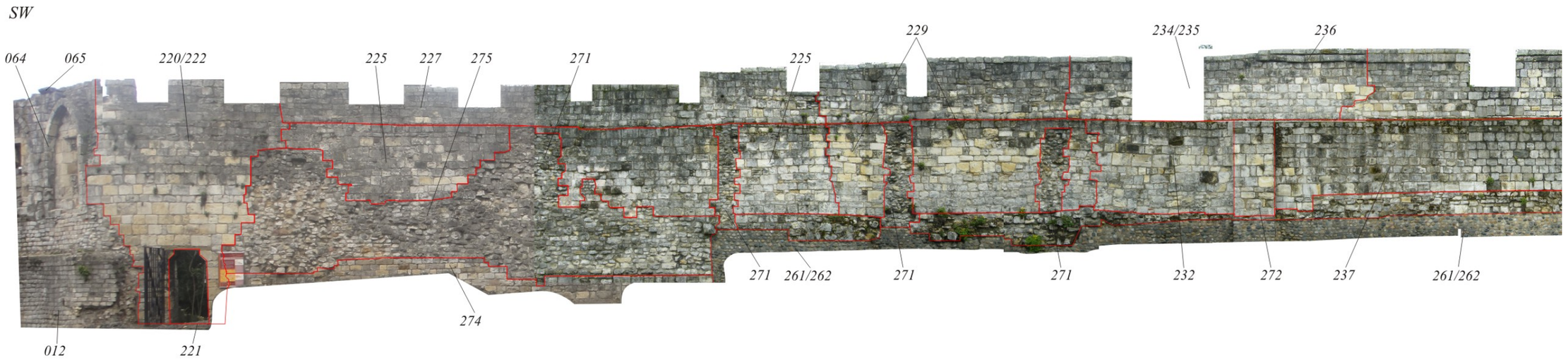
275 Re-facing work (II) below city wall, NE side of Multangular Tower 1960

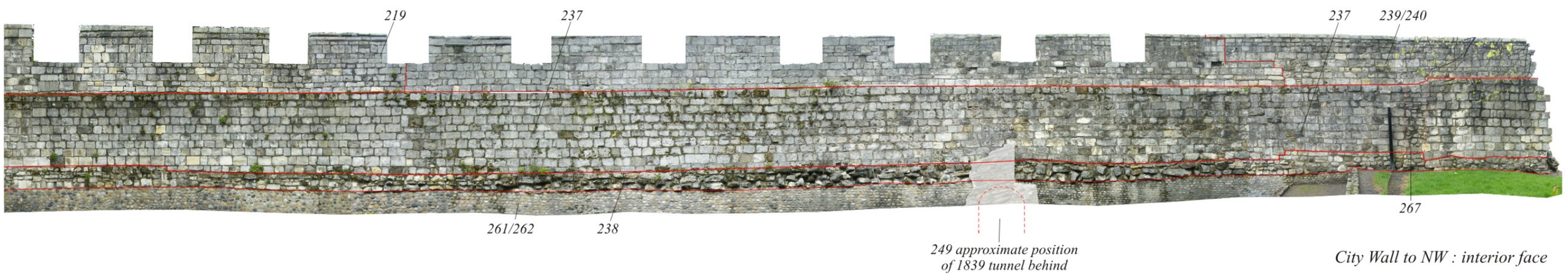
Above the *274* re-facing and below the lower parts of the city wall a zone of cement-bedded coarse rubble re-facing; embedded within this are two stones

dated '*1960*'. This area of facing runs between the *222* breach and the *262* cobbled re-facing work of.c1970-1 further NE.



City Wall to NW : exterior face

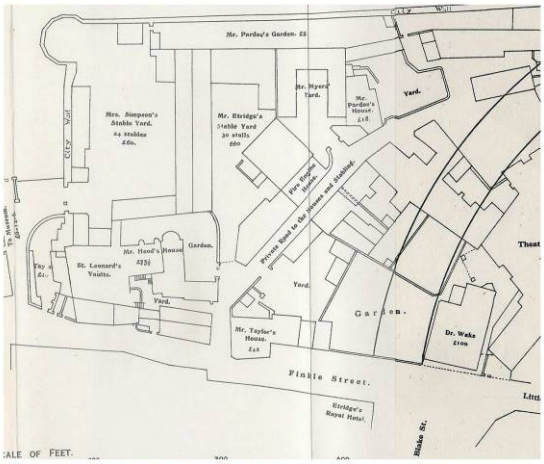




City Wall to NW : interior face

4.5 Later structures and features within the inner site area

Statutory designations	N/A	
Significance	*Adjacent character areas*	*Gazetteer individual features*
Neutral	All	*280 -310*



Introduction

This section of the gazetteer concerns later constructions within the interior parts of the present site, either existing, or known from historic sources and excavation. The area includes the site of the Central Library itself, its forecourt (character area A), the lane to the NE (character area E), the zone along the NW side of the Library (character area D), and the library lawn area (character area B).

Earlier remains within the area are described in other sections. In the post-Reformation period this area overall seems to have become disused, pre-existing buildings were rapidly dismantled, and much of the area given over to gardens. There was gradual encroachment through to the end of the 18th century and, at the beginning of the 19th, the establishment of livery yards, stabling, etc., that remained in existence until finally superseded by the construction of the present Central Library building in the 1920s.

280 Stables building (I) c1835-40

2-bay stables building of 2 storeys under a hipped slated roof; of mortared brickwork; early 19th century in date; does not appear on the 1831 plan of the Mint Yard area (Benson, 1968, figure 19), but is in existence by the time of the 1852 OS town plan; probably built c.1835-40 as stables for 8 St Leonard's Place. Contiguous with the *281* stables immediately SW, separated from it by the *282* cross wall. This building was built against the SE face of the *250* retaining wall.

281 Stables building (II) c1835-40

4-bay stables building of 2 storeys under a double-pitched slated roof hipped to the NE; of brickwork; early 19th century in date; does not appear on the 1831 plan of the Mint Yard area (Benson, 1968, figure 19), but is in existence by the time of the 1852 OS town plan; probably built c.1835-40 as stables for C. H. Elsby Esq., of 9 St Leonard's Place (connected to his garden by means of the *249* tunnel whose entrance emerges within the ground floor chamber to NE). Contiguous with the *280* stables to the NE, separated from it by the *282* cross wall. The SW part of the frontage steps back at first floor level. The NE ground floor room has a quarry tiled floor and evidence for a missing fireplace built against the centre of the NE wall (wall *282*). This building was built against the SE face of the *250* retaining wall.

282 Earlier remains within *280* stable range ?C17th / C18th

The cross wall forming boundary between the *280* and *281* stables buildings, visible internally (immediately NE of the entrance to the *249* tunnel; abuts the *250* retaining wall); seems to have formed part of a pre-existing structure; built of narrow, low-fired orange-red terracotta bricks; this wall must have formed part as the structure shown on the 1831 plan, annotated *Mr Myers' Yard*.

283 secondary modification to 281 stables building e/mC20th?

Existing garage entrances formed / extended - e/m C20th?

284 evidence for demolished building (stables?)

The 250 retaining wall immediately to the SW of the *281* stables preserves evidence of joist sockets, etc., probable evidence for a building shown running SE from this point on the 1852 OS; some evidence on the gable wall of *281*; demolished c.1925

285 fragments of earlier buildings – N angle of library complex

At the N angle of the City Library building the walls bounding the lane (NE- and NW-facing) preserve low level sections of brickwork from pre-existing structures, presumably stables buildings that are shown on the 1852 OS; the NE-facing wall section contains narrow brickwork of early date (recycled bricks or *in situ* walling?)

286 garden / garden deposits behind No.8 St Leonard's Place c.1835 -

The interior side of NW rampart was '*augmented with rubble and soil in the 19th century to create a level garden*' (Radley, 1972, 40); some of this material will likely survive beyond the NE end of the area excavated in 1970-1; garden belonged to No.8 St Leonard's Place (c.1832-5), its layout is shown on the 1852 OS town plan.

287 garden building to NE of Multangular Tower (site of) ?C18th/e.C19th

The 1852 OS and Storey's panorama of the YPS' gardens (c1860) show a narrow rectangular structure erected across the internal rampart of the city wall close to the W corner of the present library building (see maps); this appears to have had a stair and retained terrace looking over the interior of the Multangular Tower. A similarly sited structure appears as the SW terminus of a garden (*Mr Pardoe's Garden*) occupying the inner rampart on the 1831 plan of the Mint Yard area (Benson, 1968, figure 19). A summerhouse or gazebo?

288 stables yard (site of Central Library) eC19th

Stables yard shown on the 1831 Mint Yard plan, annotated *Mr Ettridge's Stable yard, 30 stalls* (Benson, 1968, figure 19); the broad range bounding the SW side of the compound and structures to the NW survived the formation from 1832 of St Leonard's Place (they appear on Edward Baines' plan of 1822) and were incorporated into a re-designed compound – see *289*. The extent of the yard broadly corresponds to the present footprint of the Central Library building.

289 stables yard (as remodelled after c.1830) post-1832

As shown on the 1852 OS, a triangular compound with entrance off Museum Street to the SE; also shown clearly on Storey's view of c.1860. While retaining

existing buildings to the SW and NW (see *288*), the E/NE range of the compound seems to have been erected after the formation, in 1832-5, of St Leonard's Place. The extent of the yard broadly corresponds to the present footprint of the Central Library building.

290 stables yard (site of library lawn/SW part of library site) pre-1845

The 1831 plan of the Mint Yard (Benson, 1968, figure 19) shows the SW part of the Mint Yard area as occupied by *Mrs. Simpson's Stable Yard. 24 stables*. It seems this complex included a range to the SE, structures built against the interior face of the Roman fortress wall to the SW, and shared part of a long range to the NE (shared with the *288/289* stables yard complex. This yard was accessed by an opening through the fortress wall to the S – *041*. The SW half of the yard area appears to have been detached c.1845-6 – see *291*.

291 stables yard (site of library lawn/SW part of library site) post-1845

The *290* stables yard was rearranged in c.1845-6 when the Yorkshire Philosophical society extended the Museum Gardens into the SW part of that area; the 1852 OS plan shows the reduced stables area to the NE including the NE range and structure to the NW – the latter was extended. This reduced area was segregated by means of a new wall. A new access was formed off Museum St., its creation necessitating the truncation of the SE end of the NE range and the removal of the SE range.

292 brick wall bounding NE side of library lawn c1845

A massively constructed brick wall, found at the north-east end of YAT Trench 3 (2001), appears to have formed the boundary between the YPS garden and the property (stables yard) to its north-east – see *291*

293 house at entrance to Mint Yard (site of) ?C18th

The 1831 plan of the Mint Yard (Benson, 1968, figure 19) shows a house at the entrance to Mint Yard from Museum Street. It is labelled, 'Mr Hood's House', and includes a yard and ancillary buildings on the E side of the St Leonard's Hospital ruin, and a garden area to its NE. The house itself abutted the NE gable of the chapel and extended along part of its SE wall; the construction of this dwelling seems likely to have involved the removal of 3 of the chapel's buttresses. The dwelling was bow-fronted to the NW suggesting that it was at least in part of 18th century date. The house, etc. seem likely to have been removed by or c.1845-6 when this area of land was brought into the Museum Gardens. It does not appear on the 1852 OS.

294 damage to the *114* infirmary chapel ?C18th

The construction of the 293 house evidently involved the partial truncation of the masonry of the 293 infirmary chapel – the removal of its buttresses – two at the E (NE) gable, reduced to their footings, and one on the SE wall. At latter point some evidence for tying-in of the house walling

295 entrance to Mint Yard (Central Library forecourt) post-1845

After 1845 the entrance to Mint Yard was re-organised. This involved the removal of a dwelling, *293*, and the re-formation of the entrance arrangements to the *290* stables yard – see *291*. The new arrangement appears on the 1852 OS.

296 'Garden of Antiquities' formed by the YPS after 1845

This seems to have been laid out between 1846 and 1852, when elements of the then recently excavated infirmary were laid out, including *in situ* column bases. These appear on the 1852 OS; the garden was further developed later in the century (see *297*). The garden featured the construction of sinuous dry-stone retaining wall, a podium for an upturned 12th-century capital, the laying of a hard mortar path surface alongside the 'exhibit' and the retaining wall, and the raising of the ground on the north side of the retaining wall (i.e. adjacent to the library)

The column bases on the 1852 OS and part of the garden as revealed by YAT in 2001

297 late 19th century improvement to the Garden of Antiquities

Revision of garden layout (depicted on the 1891 Ordnance Survey map), partly revealed during Time Team Live (1999). The 1891 OS also shows that the curving revetment wall retained a bank along the north-east side of the site, planted with trees. It is likely that these improvements were undertaken in 1887, to commemorate Queen Victoria's Golden Jubilee; a medallion commemorating the jubilee was found against the buried face of the revetment wall.

298 dwarf wall / railed enclosure surrounding St Leonard's ruin to SE c1845?

Section along the SE side of the infirmary ruin (fronting on to Museum Street) – railing panels between tall monolith piers of grit-stone – these railings extend to the SW continuing to the Museum Gardens entrance (interrupted by a drinking fountain of 1880); appears on 1852 OS. The railings evidently formerly enclosed the E and NE side of the infirmary ruin, subsequently re-designed – see 299. ? - John Walker's foundry, Walmgate, York.

299 dwarf wall / railed enclosure around St Leonard's ruin to E and NE c1930

Railings enclosing garden area to E and NE of infirmary ruin; part of Brierley's scheme probably repeated on the opposite corner, around 2 & 4 Museum Street; ornamental ironwork, including elaborate piers

300 gated entry between St Leonard's ruin and the Central Library c.1930

Existing gated entry formed with the construction of the Central Library – contiguous with *299*

301 demolitions in advance of the construction of the Central Library c.1925-30

302 excavation of the footprint of the public library c.1925-30

303 *008* kiln base, as re-sited after 1925 ?c.1925-30

008 kiln base re-sited following discovery in 1925; located against interior face of the *020* SW wall of Roman fortress – buried concrete plinth; kiln tiles re-

bedded in cement; now considerably degraded.

Kiln base

304 …

305 public air-raid shelter (WWII) – library lawn 1939

First revealed during Time Team Live, Trenches 1 and 2 (1999). No *in situ* roofing was found. The access stairs were located in Trench 3 - concrete risers were found, badly damaged by demolition of the shelter.

A section of the shelter was revealed in YAT Trench 3 (2001). It was therefore at least 27m long but only 2m wide, and comprised a flagged stone floor and reinforced concrete walls, in a machine-cut trench over 2m deep. The Victorian garden was levelled off and turned into a lawn at about the same time as the construction of the shelter. Ultimately the shelter was bulldozed, the shattered upper half being pushed into the bottom of the trench; the south corner of this demolition cut was observed on the north-east side of Trench 1.

The shelter appears to have passed right through the central arcade of the former 12th-century hospital infirmary hall, and may also have encroached on the south-western arcade too. Its impact on earlier, especially Roman deposits could not be gauged from the evaluation (Time Team report, 2000?).

Council Minutes (1938-9), 217-8,

AIR-RAID PRECAUTIONS COMMITTEE. (20th January, 1939)

It has also been decided … that further trenches should be dug and lined with concrete, as follows :-

Site	*Length Yds.*	*No. of persons to be accommodated*	*Estimated cost £*
Library Grounds	*50*	*150*	*275*

306 Levelling of the library lawn c1939

The Victorian garden was levelled off and turned into a lawn at about the same time as the construction of the *305* air-raid shelter (YAT, Project Design, 2002) – the existing library lawn; infilling / removal of the Garden of Antiquities.

307 demolition / infilling of *305* air-raid shelter post-1945

As examined in Time Team Live, Trenches 1 and 2 (1999); in both evaluated

locations the *305* air-raid shelter it was seen to have been extensively demolished and choked by its own superstructure.

308 *bluntcut* ledger stone, library lawn 1998

Installed in 1998, large ledger stone of York stone bearing the legend *www.bluntcut.com*; art installation, referred to as a 'grave for digital art'. Commissioned by Impressions Gallery in York as part of Photo98 (The Year of Photography and the Electronic Image,). The web-site notes,

> *In the gardens of York Museum a catafalque rests alongside mediaeval sarcophagii which are a cultural inheritance of the City of York. Its utilisation of ancient and contemporary interfaces engage the question of destiny.*
>
> *PreSet Softwar : v1.0 + v1.1 engages the legacy of the monument and its mediation of private and public memories.*
>
> *The gravitas of the stone is an ironic lever with which to prise* [sic.] *open the corpus of Bluntcut. Following the installation the oeuvre or corpus breaks down according to organic presets. A digital corpus is located via an inscription on the ledger of the York stone: www.bluntcut.com* [etc., etc. ...]

The stone was up-lifted during YAT's excavations and subsequently reinstated.

309 Site of booth, SE side of St Leonard's ruin e.C20th

4.6 Central Library (York Explore)

Statutory designations	Grade II (1257077)	
Significance	*Adjacent character areas*	*Gazetteer individual features*
Medium	A, B, D, E	330 – 349

Summary history

This building was built in several phases, the first part opened in 1927, the entrance elevation and the south west range in 1934, and the reference library in 1938. The well-known Yorkshire architect, Walter Brierley (1862-1926) was appointed as early as 1917, and it was one of his last designs, continued after his death by his partner James Hervey Rutherford (1874-1946).

References:

N. Pevsner et al. *The buildings of England: Yorkshire: York and the East Riding* (New Haven & London, Yale University Press: 2002)

National Heritage List entry in the appendix of this document

Summary description

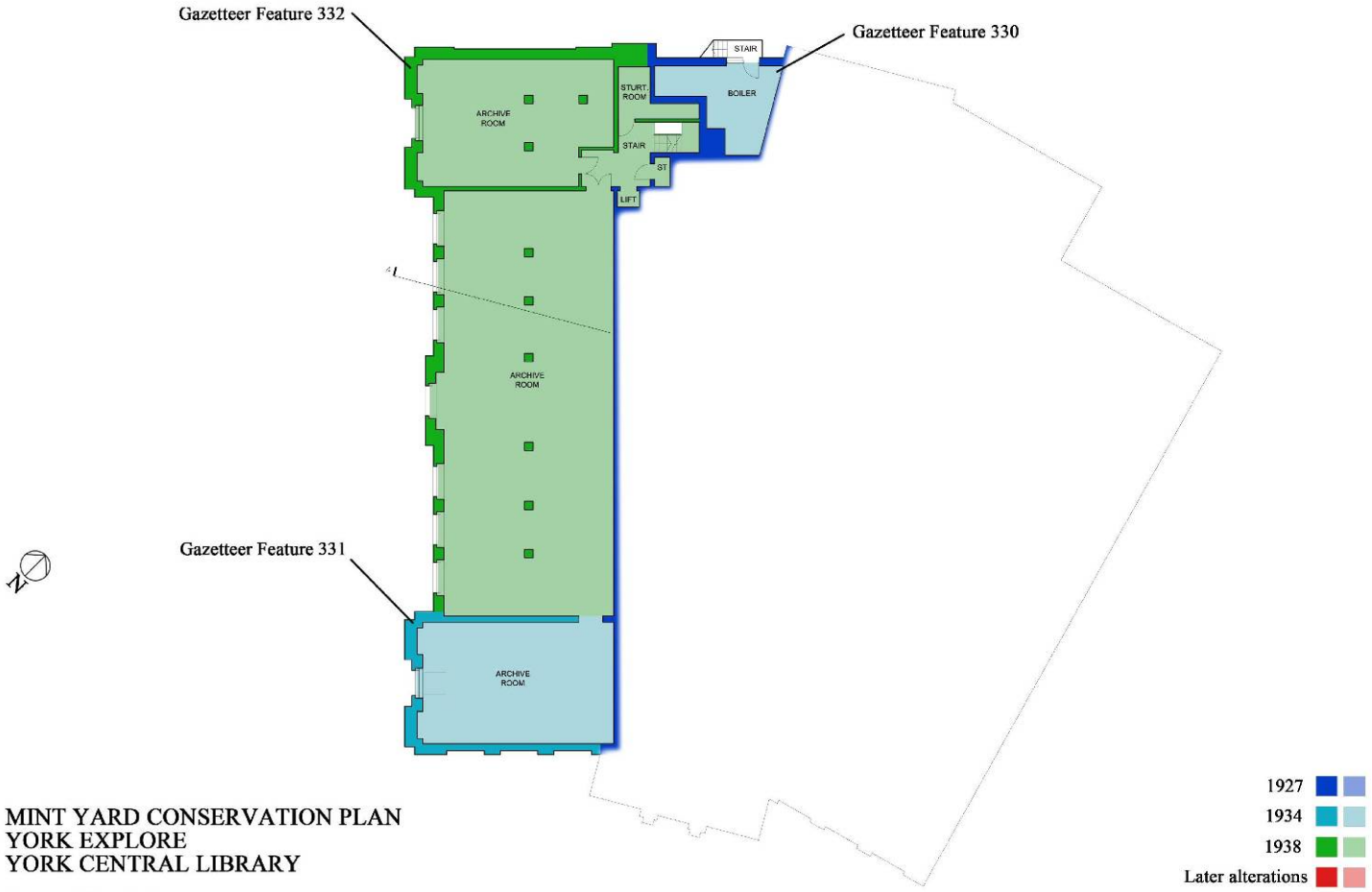
This building is built in brick with stone dressings and details, and a slate and lead roof. It is in the English Baroque Revival style. It has two principal elevations to character areas A and B, with the others not intended to be seen.

Observations

Despite the impressive style, the building is surprisingly small in scale, and well proportioned to the surrounding structures of St Leonard's Hospital and the city walls. The plan of the library was clearly conceived to respect these structures, and architecturally, it is an excellent example of its type. The contrast between the appearance of this building and other structures has been well considered, as the library is clearly a new, early 20th century building, and could not be mistaken for any other period. This legibility helps understanding the historical layering of the site.

Existing context

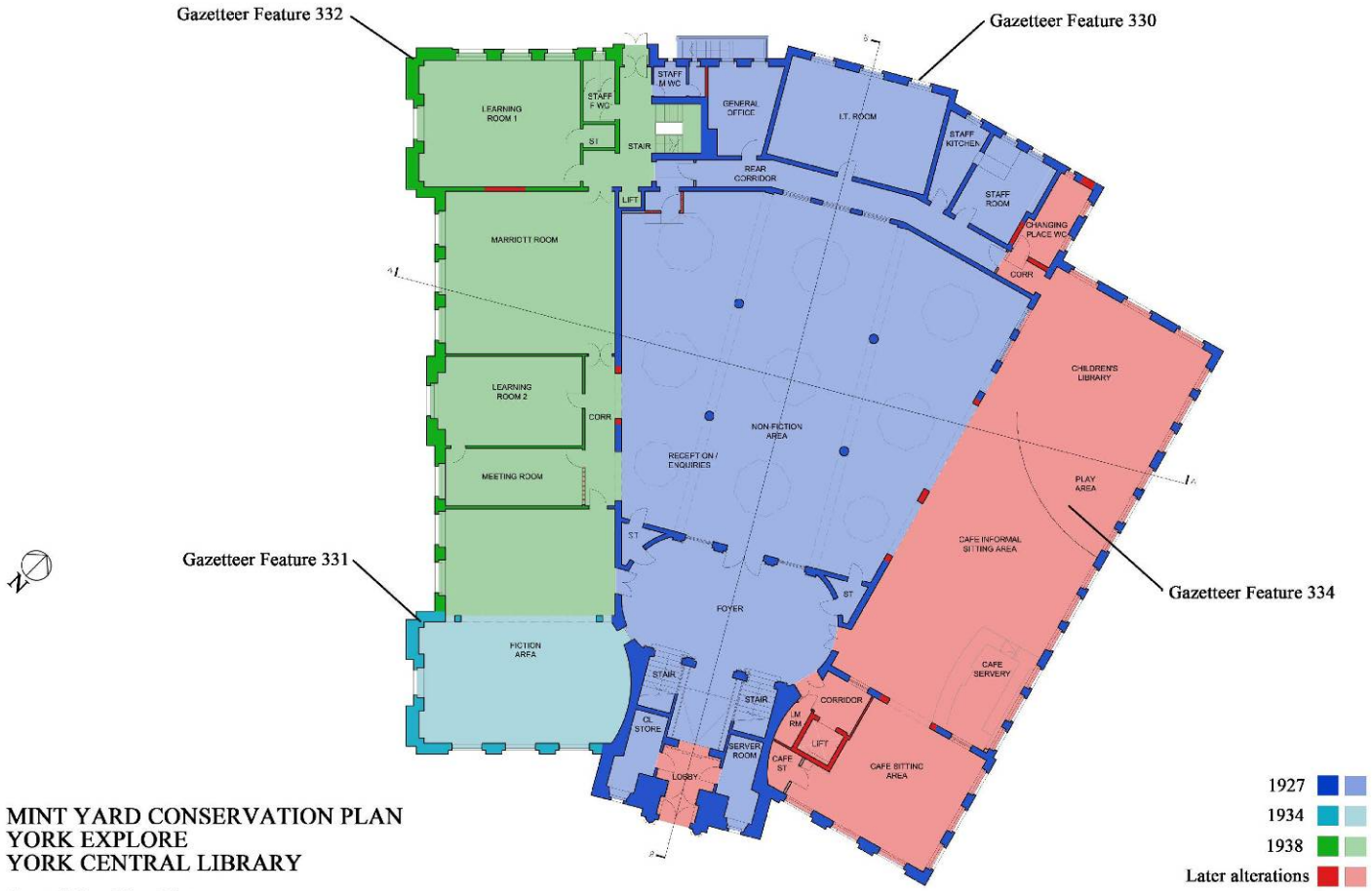
The way the building fits to the site is most interesting, because it was designed to take account of the existing surrounding structures. The northerly elevations were not designed to be seen, closely facing character areas D and E and their associated monuments. Because of this close fit, views of surrounding buildings is limited on these sides. There is vehicular access through the lane of character area E to garages and parking, some in character area D. The south east and south west elevations are the principal elevations, and face character areas A and B. The south east entrance elevation is symmetrical but is cleverly orientated, not being parallel to Museum Street, but apparently taking account of St Leonard's Hospital and no. 4 Museum Street. The south west elevation is more conventional in its symmetry, with two pavilion type ends, stepping forward of the façade. The rectilinear silhouette of the building is well scaled to reflect the rectangular shape and size of the lawn.



MINT YARD CONSERVATION PLAN
YORK EXPLORE
YORK CENTRAL LIBRARY

Basement Plan: History

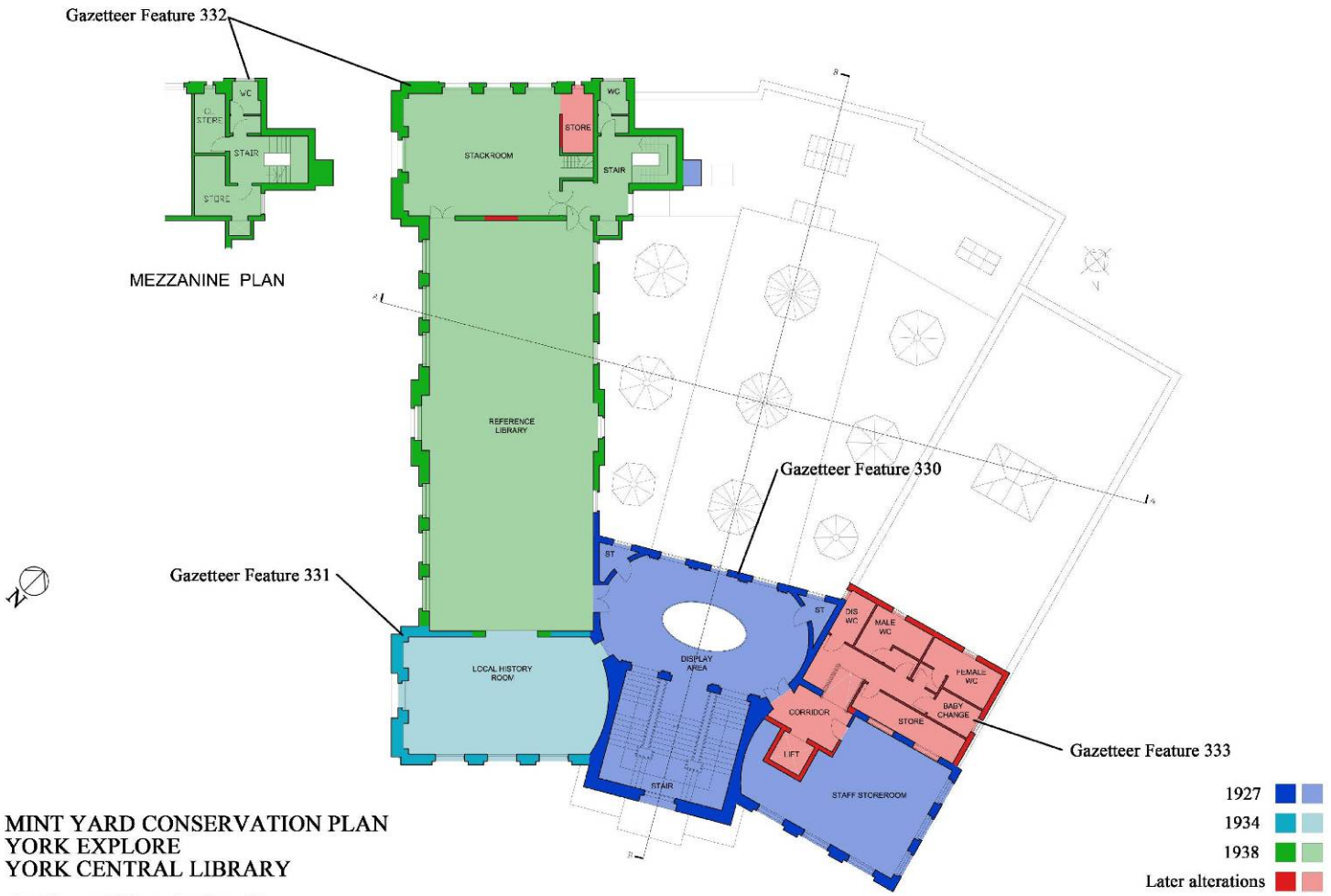
Based on a drawing by City of York Property Services
Scale 1:100 @ A1/1:200 @ A3 Simpson & Brown Architects/Addyman Archaeology April 2012



MINT YARD CONSERVATION PLAN
YORK EXPLORE
YORK CENTRAL LIBRARY

Ground Floor Plan: History

Based on a drawing by City of York Property Services
Scale 1:100 @ A1/1:200 @ A3 Simpson & Brown Architects/Addyman Archaeology April 2012



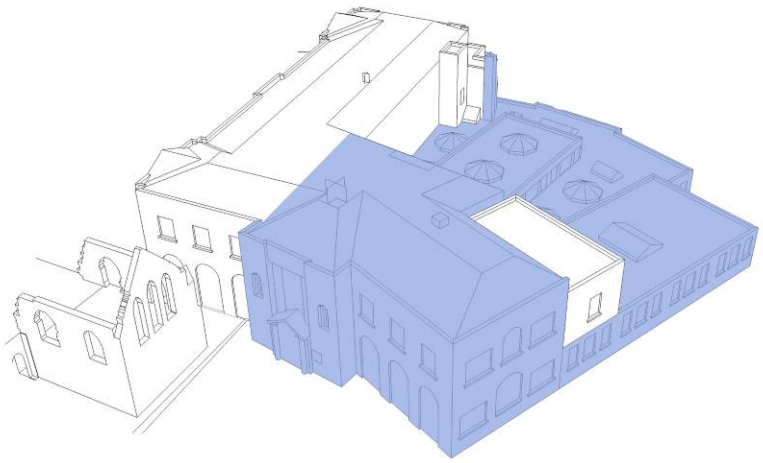
MINT YARD CONSERVATION PLAN
YORK EXPLORE
YORK CENTRAL LIBRARY

First Floor and Mezzanine Plan: History

Based on a drawing by City of York Property Services
Scale 1:100 @ A1/1:200 @ A3 Simpson & Brown Architects/Addyman Archaeology April 2012

330 Central Library – original construction 1926-7

Design by Brierley and Rutherford; Library opened by the Earl of Elgin on 23 Sept 1927



West elevations

There is some residual detailing at the western end of the south block so that the couth front is designed to have an appropriate context.

The west elevation is well constructed but clearly always considered to be the back of the building. The rainwater pipes are cast iron and they have 1927 indicated on the hopper heads. The detailing is simple. There are metal framed windows, a concrete projecting cope course, and concrete sills to the windows. The window heads have carefully constructed brick flat arches.

North elevations

The north elevation is also utilitarian. It uses the same sort of detailing as the west. The hoppers are also marked 1927. The extension for the toilet block above the eastern end of the main block is evident. It has been carried in a different type of brick. The north end of the east block has some detailing returning from the entrance front to the east across this side.

Roofs

The flat roof over the main lending library is flat and covered with asphalt.

Light fittings

Many light fittings are apparently original although the shades might be replacements. The chains and wires also appear to be original.

Radiators

The main interior spaces were heated by radiators generally placed under the windows in some of the more important spaces such as the entrance halls cast iron column radiators were set into recesses.

Entrance hall

The combination of stair and entrance halls is designed to manage the transition between the front entrance to the east and the various libraries ranged to the north, west and south of the entrance halls. Because the library building is a wedge shape with the library spaces fanning out to the north west and south west, the entrance halls have to accommodate some complex geometry. This is the basic reason that they are conceived as rectangles which are nearly square in plan with bowed ends to the north and south. The bowed ends allow access to more than one room.

The south part of the upper entrance hall has its door offset from the central axis of the space. This is a slightly unfortunate visual compromise which appears to have been required by the peculiar fan shaped planning of the building.

The upper and lower entrance halls spaces are one architectural entity linked by reversed imperial stair. The pilasters and windows in the upper and lower levels align, and the two spaces are connected by an oval opening in the ceiling of the lower entrance hall, surrounded by wrought iron railings.

The design at the upper and lower levels is consistent and the use of orders rises from Roman Doric at the lower level to Roman Ionic above in a manner which is correct according to Classical principles.

The style is English Baroque Revival. There are some mannerisms which are associated with the inventive use of Classical motifs most famously used by Lutyens but also used by other Arts & Crafts influenced architects in the early years of the 20th century.

The ceiling is a circular domed roof light which is a borrowed light from a conventional sloping roof light in the roof pitches above. It has an iron frame painted black with sheets of obscure or frosted glass in between. At the centre a circle is raised by about 150mm to provide ventilation.

The walls and ceiling are finished with plaster with Baroque Revival decoration. The decoration around the dome is particularly opulent. This is best seen from the lower entrance hall through the oval oculus.

The space contains three or four pieces of early furnishing, not necessarily associated with the design of the library. There are two glass cabinets for displaying books and photographs. The cabinet to the north looks to have been altered on the sides. It is possibly contemporary with the library. The cabinet to the south has glass sides and is a 19th century piece of higher quality than the north cabinet. There is an early 20th century chair.

The floor is a black and white floor which is made out of granolithic panels.

The balustrade to the oculus is an elegant piece of Baroque Revival wrought iron work. It alternates square section standards with pairs of twisted ones. There are four wrought iron panels with leaf forms breaking clear of curving motifs.

The design of the stair hall is remarkably successful. It is particularly attractive

in the way that it rises to the upper entrance hall. The same motif for the balustrade is used except that the twisted columns are in groups of three rather than two.

The niches are the simplest elements of this interior. This is the part which most suggests work of the 1920s rather than earlier since it has a "stripped back" Classical style.

The design is oddly asymmetrical to the north and south. To the north is a pair of apparently original doors which now lead to the lift which unbalances the north side in terms of symmetry. The oddity here is that the entrance to the lift is not the same height as the architrave over the central door. The central block set into the pulvinated frieze above each door were originally intended for signwriting, possibly in gold, directly onto the oak background. The insertion of a modern sign for the lift is crude. It would be possible to use the same signwriting techniques to indicate the position of the lift.

This is the largest space within the library building. It comprises a taller, central space in three main bays divided by shallow beams. Each bay has an octagonal rooflight in it. On the line of the beams are circular Doric columns which have octagonal bases. These columns support a cornice with a clearstorey above. In each bay of the clearstorey there is a horizontal rectangular window flanked by two smaller vertical windows. To the north and south are lower, wedge shaped spaces in plan also of three bays in length with shallow beams dividing the bays. They also have octagonal rooflights expanding in size from east to west as the compartments in the ceiling get bigger. The character of the architecture is clearly of 20th century classicism. This is given by the pronounced horizontal quality and the unusually wide spaces between columns. This makes the columns look too slender for the weight they are apparently carrying so the signal given out by the design is of a framed building. This unusual horizontal emphasis to the use of classicism is similar to contemporary Modern Movement buildings which use the same stripped back classical detailing, such as the London Underground stations designed by Charles Holden. Those on the Northern, designed from 1926, and those on the Piccadilly Line extension, from the early 1930s are contemporary with the interiors of York Explore.

At the eastern end are the three arches which form a tripartite screen next to the entrance hall. The detailing here is the most historicist Baroque in the main library space. The openings are filled at the lower part with oak screens with doors. The upper part of the doors and flanking panels are glazed in the same manner as a sash window with timber glazing bars. Above this is a transom at springing level. The central arch has a moulding which might be a later insertion judging by the incorrect character of the moulding. The two side panels have no applied moulding at this level and no sign of fixings for one. The central opening is an alteration to form a door where, formerly, there was a glazed screen next to the main library counter. The upper parts of the screen, within the arches, are filled with decorative fanlight divisions of glazing bars in a style reminiscent of Robert Adam. The use of Adam style motifs is not unusual. The Adam Revival was at its height from the Edwardian period into the 1920s.

At the western end the elevation is divided into a grid of six windows. This is rather disappointing design with very little articulation on it other than the dado rail running across at lower window sill height and the skirting.

The space is well lit by rooflights and by the clearstorey. The clearstorey gives a view to the inside facing walls of the south block and to the sky to the north where there is no equivalent upper floor to the north block. The rooflights are very successful in contributing to an attractive room. The three rooflights to the upper part appear to have original glazing. The rooflights to the lower part have, unfortunately, been replaced with lined sheeting which has a poor appearance and has stained. This is the case to both the north and south of the main central area. There are some cracked panes in the western of the upper rooflights. Some panes have been replaced with wired glass.

Ground Floor - Outer Lobby

The outer lobby is subdivided by brushed stainless steel sliding doors. Presumably these date from 2010 alterations.

Ground Floor - Back Corridor

This space has a parquet floor laid in herringbone pattern.

Ground Floor - Office to South of ICT and Media Suite

Office entirely changed. No original finishes except for simple skirting without moulding and architrave without moulding. 1920s door. Cabinet to south has 1920s-30s quality. One beam running north-south across ceiling. Two windows to west. Floor covered with carpet tile, restricting inspection.

Ground Floor - ICT and Media Suite

This room is divided into three bays with beams in the ceiling. There is a central rectangular rooflight. Three windows facing west towards the Anglian Tower and the inner face of the city walls. The room has lost its original shelving. It now has trunking on the walls and carpet on the floor. This room has neutral significance. There is no early furnishing.

Ground Floor - Staff Kitchen

Generally refitted but with firebrick floor in the kitchen area. Otherwise entirely changed apart from the 1920s doors.

Ground Floor - Toilets

Generally refitted in 2010. Some 1920s doors to cubicles.

Ground Floor - Gents Toilets

Similar. Refurbished 2010. 1920s door to cubicle including ironmongery and lock. Some fairly recent staining evident in ceiling under flat roof.

Ground Floor - Main Library, Non-Fiction

This is the largest space within the library building. It comprises a taller, central space in three main bays divided by shallow beams. Each bay has an octagonal rooflight in it. On the line of the beams are circular Doric columns which have octagonal bases. These columns support a cornice with a clearstorey above. In each bay of the clearstorey there is a horizontal rectangular window flanked by two smaller vertical windows. To the north and south are lower, wedge shaped spaces in plan also of three bays in length with shallow beams dividing the bays. They also have octagonal rooflights expanding in size from east to west as the compartments in the ceiling get bigger. The character of the architecture is clearly of 20th century classicism. This is given by the pronounced horizontal

quality and the unusually wide spaces between columns. This makes the columns look too slender for the weight they are apparently carrying so the signal given out by the design is of a framed building. This unusual horizontal emphasis to the use of classicism is similar to contemporary Modern Movement buildings which use the same stripped back classical detailing, such as the London Underground stations designed by Charles Holden. Those on the Northern, designed from 1926, and those on the Piccadilly Line extension, from the early 1930s are contemporary with the interiors of York Explore.

At the eastern end are the three arches which form a tripartite screen next to the entrance hall. The detailing here is the most historicist Baroque in the main library space. The openings are filled at the lower part with oak screens with doors. The upper part of the doors and flanking panels are glazed in the same manner as a sash window with timber glazing bars. Above this is a transom at springing level. The central arch has a moulding which might be a later insertion judging by the incorrect character of the moulding. The two side panels have no applied moulding at this level and no sign of fixings for one. The central opening is an alteration to form a door where, formerly, there was a glazed screen next to the main library counter. The upper parts of the screen, within the arches, are filled with decorative fanlight divisions of glazing bars in a style reminiscent of Robert Adam. The use of Adam style motifs is not unusual. The Adam Revival was at its height from the Edwardian period into the 1920s.

At the western end the elevations is divided into a grid of six windows. This is rather disappointing design with very little articulation on it other than the dado rail running across at lower window sill height and the skirting.

The space is well lit by rooflights and by the clearstorey. The clearstorey gives a view to the inside facing walls of the south block and to the sky to the north where there is no equivalent upper floor to the north block. The rooflights are very successful in contributing to an attractive room. The three rooflights to the upper part appear to have original glazing. The rooflights to the lower part have, unfortunately, been replaced with lined sheeting which has a poor appearance and has stained. This is the case to both the north and south of the main central area. There are some cracked panes in the western of the upper rooflights. Some panes have been replaced with wired glass.

Ground Floor, North Room with Play Area and Café Servery

This is one space of four structural bays. The beams in the ceiling dividing the bays presumably provide sufficient strength for a planned extension upwards. One bay, the second from the west, has a rectangular rooflight which might, possibly, have been introduced later. The space is adequately lit from three windows per bay on the north wall, three on the east wall and clearstorey windows to the south. The room has been considerably opened up into the library to the south and now forms a children's play area. There is relatively little detail of significance in this area. The windows are set too high to have a cornice. There have been a lot of alterations including trunking, lighting and services. The floor is covered with carpet tile. No original furniture is evident. The only original joinery being the skirting, dado rail, and double doors into the entrance lobby.

Ground Floor - Cafe

Similar in detail to the north room. The room has been subdivided to form a lobby. The room has moderate significance. There are cast iron column radiators under two of the windows. The lighting is by hanging fluorescent lights at the computer desk next to the partition formed for the lift. The floor has been covered with carpet tile. There is no 1920s or earlier furniture in this room.

The opening between this room and the cafe servery is probably an insertion. There are windows with glazing bars to either side which appear to be 1920s. The original entrance to this room was from the Baroque doorcase which now leads to the lift.

First Floor - Cupboard to South West of Upper Hall

There are some original paint colours in this space including a drab paint colour on joinery and on the joinery around the window. Some plaster repairs are required following previous leaks.

First Floor - Cupboard to the North West of the Upper Hall

Original drab paint colours on the walls. This room provides access to the roof space.

First Floor - Lift Lobby

This area was part of the offices to the north. It formed part of it originally and contains some original joinery. However, the character of the area is irretrievably altered by the insertion of the lift.

First Floor – Staff Storeroom and Office - North East Room

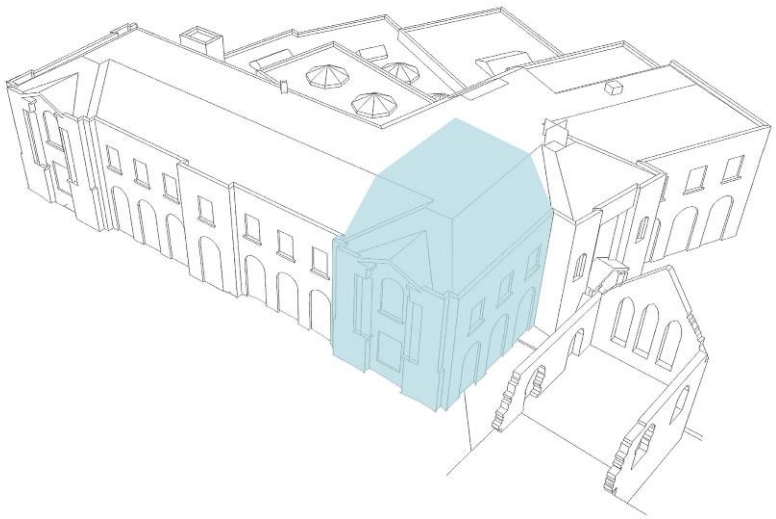
This is now used as a library office. This room has different detailing to the rooms to the south. There is no vault but a larger 18th century profiled cornice and no picture rail. The detailing around the windows is a simple band facing but the room is surrounded with a chair rail or dado rail, again using standard 18th century profiles. There is also a skirting with a different moulding to the one used in the reference library. Various alterations have been made to this space. It originally had a bowed end to the south but this has been filled with the lift and lobby. These two alterations appear to have been made at different times, with the cornice having been taken around the lift but not the lobby.

There is a lot of cabling and trunking added to this room. It is not practical to assume that it should be reversed for reasons of the conservation of the building but future alterations should be carried out with greater care.

To the west is an original outside wall which has had the toilet block built against it. There is some damp staining at cornice level and just below next to the inserted wall of the lobby. The floor is covered with carpet tiles restricting inspection. No significant items of furniture were noted.

331 Central Library – extension (I) 1934

First extension completed, the two-storey wing on entrance front and the south west range.



Ground Floor – Fiction Room

This room comprises two parts, the bow ended part to the east in the corner of the building, and the rectangular part with two bays of the south elevation. The ceiling has large beams in the part to the west with an 18th century profile cornice running around it. The moulding is quite unusual. There is a picture rail set quite low but slightly above the level of the springing of the arches. The picture rail runs around the room and does not acknowledge the positions of the beams except for the large beam between the two parts of this room which has square columns in antis and the picture rail meets the underside of this beam. There is relatively little original furniture in this room. The bookcases on the north wall of the eastern section appear to date from the 1920s. They are relatively low with the cornice at adult eye level. The floor is covered with carpet tile. The detailing around windows is similar to the upper floor north east room.

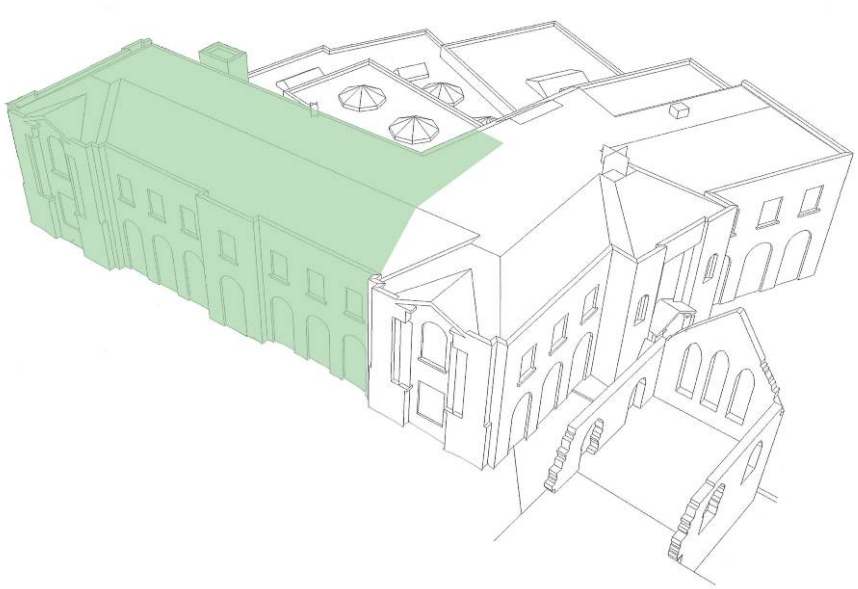
First Floor - Local History Room - South Block, East Room

Simple decoration. Vaulted space. The architecture has been kept relatively simple in characteristic 1920s style with a cornice that is a bit too small for the space according to Baroque Classical proportions and fairly minimal detail around windows. Below each window, a panel - possibly of heat resisting material - is set within a simple band. The detailing is characteristic for 1920s and this interior is less historic, more an identifiable 1920s interior than the entrance halls. The bookcases are in oak but also have relatively simple detailing. There is a folk art motif at the base and an attenuated frieze and cornice at the head. The shelves are adjustable. Some bookcases on west wall have lockable doors with mesh panels. Underneath the bookcases is the original 18th century profile skirting painted green. There is a mouse bead at the front

edge.

332 Central Library – extension (II) 1938

Second extension completed, two-storey south wing.



MINT YARD CONSERVATION PLAN

YORK EXPLORE
YORK CENTRAL LIBRARY

Third Phase: 1938

Basement

On north wall there are some minor cracks. The ceiling of this space is all concrete. Some water runs in from the pavement lights along the south side and has been flooding along the south side of the bookstore. This has only happened during the exceptionally wet weather during June and July 2012.

In the part under the eastern pavilion of the south front there is some water coming in at the pavement light over the gas meter to the north of the east wall. Electrical intake and distribution of the north wall of this space. The separating wall between this part and the main southern block is built in brick. There are some minor vertical cracks in this wall.

There are further diagonal cracks in main north wall of main space towards the eastern end.

Lendel Room

This is a room which takes up a single bay of the south front. The detailing on the window is similar to the room to the east but there is no cornice in this room. It seems always to have been intended as an office. There is no furniture of importance. Inspection of the floor was restricted by carpet tiles. The room is of neutral significance.

Ground Floor - Brierley Room

This room has a cornice, dado and picture rail. The joinery around the doors is still unpainted. The window has a column radiator underneath it with a mesh screen which appears to be original to the building. This mesh screen could

form the basis for screens over other radiators elsewhere in the building. This room is on the central axis of the south front. If a door were to be placed on this south front, this room could become, to some extent, a link between York Explore and the library lawn.

The floor has a solid, possibly parquet as elsewhere, but with carpet tiles restricting inspection. The lighting is by two suspended striplights. The position of the original central pendant light is obvious, including the rose and hook.

Ground Floor - Marriott Room

This room has a simple cornice and large beams supporting the floor of the local history library above. The walls are panelled with oak. The position of doors does not suggest bookcases and the survival of one bookcase on the east wall also suggests that the walls were intended to have the existing very flat panelling, possible for the display of maps. The cornice of the panelling is set to coincide with the springing level of the three arched windows on the south side. There is a cast iron column radiator below each window.

The floor is parquet set in a herringbone pattern. There is a small border panel about 150mm wide at the foot of the walls.

The room is lit by nine hanging striplights which presumably replace pendant lights in approximately the same position. Apart from two bookcases, no 1920s or earlier furniture is evident.

Ground Floor - Garden Room

The room has been extensively refitted and redecorated recently. The original detailing seems to have been similar to the detailing of the eastern room of the south block on the first floor. The ceiling has beams, presumably to support the book stacks above. The removal of original fittings, modern functional fitout of servery, lighting, and trunking in this room means that this room now has neutral significance. The original door survives but has been painted.

Back Stair

The stair is covered with vinyl with nosings. The balustrade and handrail is elegant with square balusters and a craftsman made handrail which has an Arts & Crafts quality.

At the head of the internal walls there is some flaking paint and some suggestion of rusting or reinforcement decay in the lintels to the east and west. There is some general cracking and flaking paint at the upper parts of the walls. There is a simple skirting, possibly formed in concrete.

Mezzanine Level Spaces

The back stair serves mezzanine levels. Off the upper mezzanine is a cleaner's store with Belfast sinks and tiled wall. There is a further toilet. Both have a 1920s quality. The original sink survives in the washing area of the toilet at this level. The sanitary ware appears to have been replaced. The interior has been painted brown stone colours which might be similar to the original colours. The small store room apparently has original paint finishes. Some graffiti indicates a sketch diagram of the plumbing system.

First Floor – Reference Library

This room occupies the central seven bay block of the upper part of the south

part of the building. The interior shares the same detailing as the western block. The cornice is the same. There are recesses at the central window of the south side and at the window opposite on the north side. Architecturally one of the detailing problems is that the traditional architecture is slightly at odds with the 20th century wall thickness. The detailing around the windows has possibly been altered with the addition of the strips of facing timber, although this has a 1920s character. Radiators are set below some windows, the original cast iron column radiators survive. Pipes run below the bookcases between the radiators. The bookcases are set on the panels between the windows and at the end walls. On the west wall there is a 6 bay break fronted bookcase flanked by double doors. On the east wall a central arch with Baroque lugged surround originally had three bays of bookcases to either side. The bookcases to the south have been lost leaving this end elevation asymmetrical. This room has moderate significance.

First Floor – Stack Room – South West Room

This room was designed as a service room for book storage. There is no cornice. It has two large beams running east-west. There is no articulation around the windows and a moulded front edge to the sills only.

First Floor - Staff Toilet

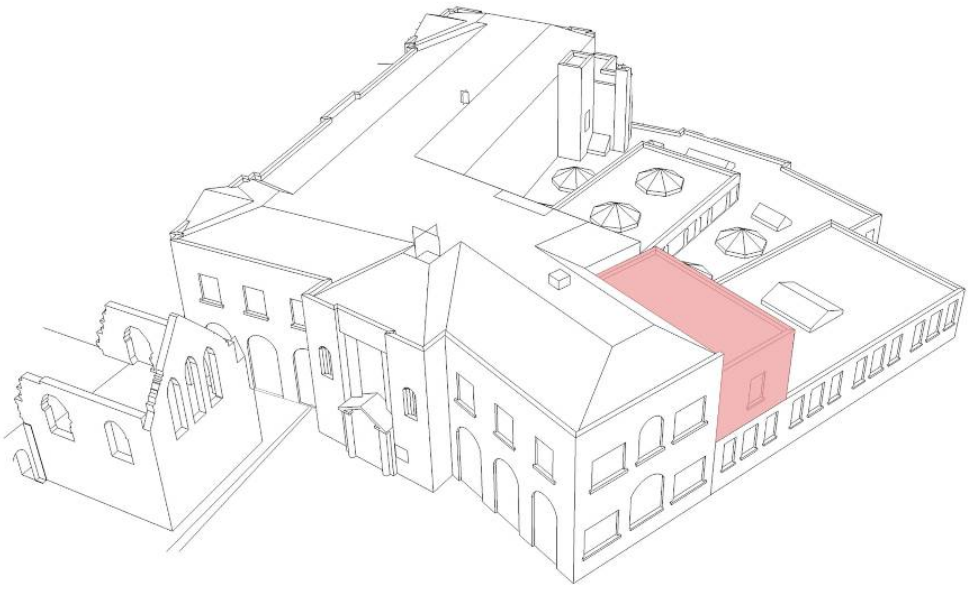
Characteristic 1920s wall finishing, doors, and granolithic floor. Neutral significance.

333 Central Library – addition of first floor block containing toilets on north east range Third quarter 20thC

It is a late 20th century fit out with plasterboard and painted wood finish. The significance of this area is neutral.

334 Central Library – refurbishment 2009-10

Refurbished library, renamed Explore York library, reopens, 24 May 2010



MINT YARD CONSERVATION PLAN

YORK EXPLORE
YORK CENTRAL LIBRARY

Alterations since 1940

4.7 Wider medieval topography of St Leonard's Hospital

St Leonard's Landing

Historic river access to St Leonard's, adjacent to Lendal Tower, on its SE side.

Ffotles gate (Footles St)

Ffotles gate juxta portam aquaticam. Access from St Leonard's landing to the water gate; Palliser (1978), 9

perimeter wall bounding the SE side of Ffotles gate ?C13th

Its alignment suggested by cartographic sources; mentioned by Raine (1955). Physical evidence – at its NE end at its junction with the Infirmary / water gate, the truncated wall end survives, the dressed back masonry at which point preserving its silhouette including what appears to be a stepped cope detail. The evidence at this point suggests a wall rising to a heath.

Finkle Street (expanded to create Museum Street)

abbey precinct wall - river to St Leonard's water gate (site of) C13th?

abbey precinct wall to SW and NW (site of / remains) C13th?

city ditch c.1300

Probably took the outflow of the St Leonard's hospital drain – *105* / *106* – to the Ouse

city wall to Lendal Tower c.1300

RCHME, York, Vol. II (1972), 110

Lendal Tower (St Leonard's Tower) c.1300

First referred to as *Turrim Sancti Leonardi* in 1315; RCHME, York, Vol. II (1972), 108-110; tower extended to the SE for waterworks after 1677 – this partly encroaching St Leonard's Landing.

St Leonard's precinct wall to SE - fronting on to Finkle Street (site of)

?lC12th /13th

St Leonard's gate – opposite Blake Street (site of)

St Leonard's precinct wall to NE to city wall by Bootham Bar

fragment of undercroft (within Theatre Royal) midC12th

Possibly guest accommodation. Formerly considerably more extensive; drawn in 1807 by J Halfpenny; much reduced c.1901 with expansion of Theatre Royal; recorded by Benson; Time Team Live (1999); YAT evaluation and recording.

well (within Theatre Royal) medieval

building at E angle of St Leonard's precinct		m/lC13th

4.8 1-9 St Leonard's Place

Statutory designations	Grade II* (1256761)	
Significance	*Adjacent character areas*	*Gazetteer individual features*
Medium	A, C, E	N/A

Summary history

This terrace was built in several phases after the laying out of the new street in 1830. The street itself was laid out as a response to increasing traffic problems around Bootham Bar and in the surrounding streets. They intended that the plots of the sweeping crescent would be snapped up by wealthy men, creating a fashionable quarter of the city. However, the City Corporation struggled for years to find buyers, and most of the plots were taken by councillors, and the terrace was only completed in the late 1830s.

The unified façade, known as a palace façade, was designed by York architect, John Harper. Far from the unified appearance that the completed terrace presents now, each house was built by different builders with different interiors, completed at different times, and there must have been toothy gaps in the terrace as each house was completed separately, long after the road was opened to traffic. No. 5 is noted on 19th and early 20th-century Ordnance Survey as a club, and no. 1 as a subscription library in the 1852 map.

Between the 1940s or 1950s, and 2012, nos. 1-9 were used by City of York Council as offices.

References:
Fawcett (2011), pp. 30-33.

N. Pevsner et al. *The buildings of England: Yorkshire: York and the East Riding* (New Haven & London, Yale University Press: 2002)

National Heritage List entry in the appendix of this document

---

Summary description

A terrace of nine three storey houses with attic, over basement. They are of red brick, stuccoed and painted white to the street elevations and the carpark to the north. The rear elevations to the west are not rendered. Slate mansard roof pitches.

Observations

The street elevation is a handsome crescent in form, a palace front elevation of end pavilions and a central block that advances forward of the main building line. There is a continuous balcony at the first floor with iron railings. However, the buildings appear to have been completed very economically, with little fine detailing. This means that they are also entirely astylar, and even the piers that support the porches have no classical order. There are cast iron down pipes and hoppers. Some projecting flat parts have been capped in lead. The rear of the buildings is only visible from a few angles and, in contrast to the uniform elevation to the street, seems to have had some extensions. The entrance to no. 9 is from the carpark to the north. The interiors were not inspected.

The street elevations have some areas of failing plaster and paint finishes, and are generally grimy with the passage of traffic. A few areas on these elevations are green, and the downpipes are rusty, with some staining to the walls. The railings have lots of flaking paint and faded gilding, with consequent areas of rust.

Existing context

This terrace is on the east side of St Leonard's Place and screens off the Mint Yard from the city to the north east. St Leonard's Place is a busy pedestrian and vehicular thoroughfare. The rear walls of the former garden plots of the buildings flank the lane which is character area E.

4.9 2 and 4 Museum Street

Statutory designations	Grade II (1257108)		
Significance	*Adjacent character areas*	*Gazetteer individual features*	
Medium	A	N/A	

Summary history

This single building of two houses was built in 1851. When built, it stood on the edge of the Mint Yard which was leased by the City Corporation for stabling. The design is odd with one fine corner house, with a great bay window facing south, and one rather poor house with no garden. This may indicate that it was a speculative development, with the houses intended for rent, rather than built for a specific client.

References:

N. Pevsner et al. *The buildings of England: Yorkshire: York and the East Riding* (New Haven & London, Yale University Press: 2002)

National Heritage List entry in the appendix of this document

Summary description

Two houses of four storeys over basement, built in red brick with dressings in buff-coloured masonry.

Observations

These houses have been designed to look like a single building, with a symmetrical façade either side of the porch to no. 2. The door to no. 4 to the north east is stepped back from the façade, and it almost appears to be part of a separate building. The style is fairly free with details drawn from the Italian Renaissance. The areas are railed from the pavement above with railings with gold-painted mushroom final details. To Library Square, character area A, there is a two storey bay window.

Existing context

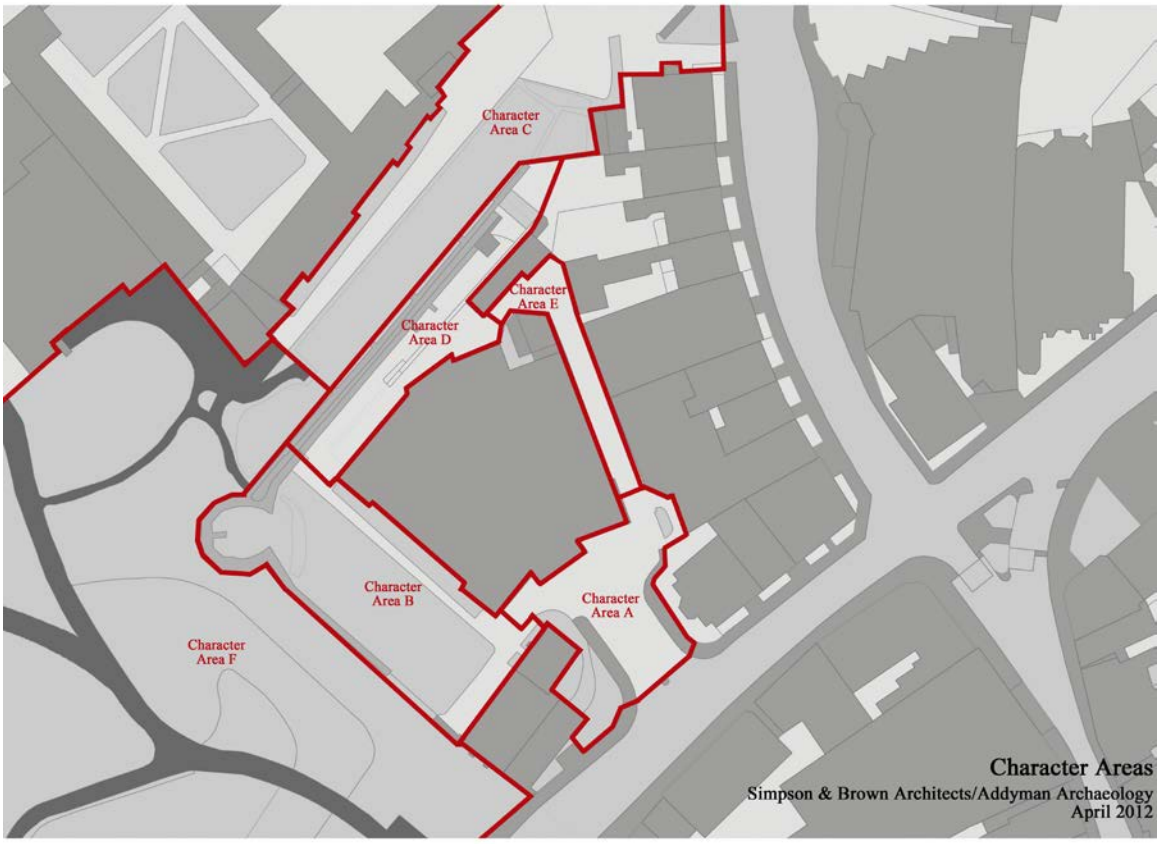
These buildings adjoin and are tucked in behind nos. 1 and 2 St Leonard's Place. The south west façade of No. 4 is designed to address character area A which was the entrance to stables when the building was built. Museum Street is a busy pedestrian and vehicular thoroughfare.

5.0 GAZETTEER OF HERITAGE ASSETS: OPEN SPACE CHARACTER AREAS

5.1 Introduction

Unlike the buildings gazetteer, this section assesses the open spaces of the study area, and not the built structures. It examines the inner study area and adjacent areas that are considered to have an effect on the inner study area. Essentially, the wider area boundary is that defined by the Conservation Area Character Appraisal.

As noted in Conservation Area Character Appraisal, the city of York has great diversity in its urban form, buildings, structures and topography. Even within the relatively small study area and adjacent areas considered in this conservation plan, there is significant diversity. The best way to understand this diversity is to break down the whole area into smaller parts, judged as being of similar character. Similar character was assessed by balancing the effects of built structures and buildings, man-made and natural boundaries, topography and urban grain. Inevitably, some areas are artificially separated or divided, but the sole purpose of this process, is to create a thorough understanding of the site by a logical analysis using the same objective methods.



Each entry begins with a general description based on observation. There is then a section on current use, followed by an examination of the boundaries of the area, and significant views. Each entry includes designations and English Heritage. Colour coding in the opening table of each entry corresponds to the summary table and plans showing statutory designation.

Overall cultural significance has also been indicated. Section 6 of this document, goes into more details, but the significance assessment is intended to guide decisions

about the future conservation and management of the site. The definition of these grades has been arrived at by discussion with English Heritage.

High Significance

Critical to an understanding of cultural significance

Medium Significance

Important to an understanding of cultural significance

Moderate Significance

Part of an understanding of cultural significance

Neutral Significance

Could be enhanced to provide understanding of cultural significance

Negative Significance

Detracts from an understanding of cultural significance

Summary table

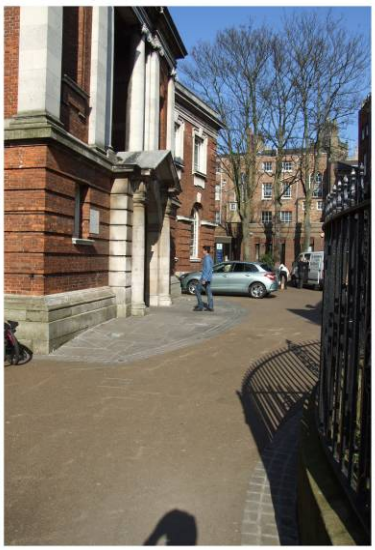
<table>
<tr><th>Character area</th><th>York City Council designations</th><th>Statutory designations</th><th>Significance</th></tr>
<tr><td>A</td><td rowspan="5">Area of Archaeological Importance: City Centre Area

Conservation Area: Central Historic Core</td><td>N/A</td><td>Medium</td></tr>
<tr><td>B</td><td rowspan="3">Scheduled Ancient Monument 1004910 and YO 30</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td>C</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td>D</td><td>High</td></tr>
<tr><td>E</td><td>N/A</td><td>Moderate</td></tr>
<tr><td>F</td><td>Area of Archaeological Importance: City Centre Area

Conservation Area: Central Historic Core
Flood zone 2</td><td>Registered Park & Garden Grade II 1000117</td><td>High</td></tr>
</table>

A Library Square

Adjacent gazetteer structures	200, 400, 700
Statutory designations	N/A
York City Council designations	**Area of Archaeological Importance: City Centre Area** **Conservation Area: Central Historic Core**
Significance	**Medium**



Description and principal features

This area is known as Library Square. It is the flat forecourt area of the library. It is surrounded by structures, but not enclosed and impermeable. It has recently been refurbished, surfaced in bound gravel, edged with square stone setts or cobble stones, and there are two saplings with black painted trunk cages. The surface material changes to grey paving slabs around the main entrance of the library and rises gently to form a level access. There are four modern benches all of the same form of a block of stone with a timber top, forming the seat. There are two modern pattern streetlamps, two sets of bicycle hoops, and handsome cast iron railings, contemporary with the library, currently painted black, set into stone copes. The railings and gate to character area B, the library lawn are more recent and not the same pattern. There are three quite mature trees in a raised brick bed near the entrance to the York City Council customer services office. More trees are in the area adjacent to Musuem Street, and form part of the picturesque setting of the St Leonard's Hospital ruin.

Current use

The area is the access to the main entrance of the library, and the service lane that leads to the rear of the building. It is also the access to York City Council customer services office, part of the rear of the offices on St Leonard's Place. It also provides pedestrian access to character are B, the library lawn, used as a route through to the Museum Gardens. This area also provides anti-social behaviour access to the vaults under the standing remains of St Leonard's Hospital, and character area D. The area is busy and dynamic

The current circulation through the space is restricted by the lack of a link between the pend that forms the eastern part of the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital and Library Square.

Boundaries and views

The most important view in this area is axially from Museum Street towards the main east door of York Explore.

To the north of this area, there is a view through character area E, the service lane to the east of the library, and the plot walls of the rear of the houses on St Leonard's Place. The brick rear elevations of the houses can also be seen. To the east, the area is bounded by these houses and nos. 2 & 4 Museum Street, behind . To the south east, the area is bounded by the busy Museum Street, and the buildings on the opposite side. Further to the south, there is a view towards the more handsome buildings approaching Lendal Bridge. To the south west are the dramatic standing ruins of St Leonard's Hospital, which are oddly separated from the rest of the area by railings. The semi-mature trees in this part of the character area provide some picturesque setting for the ruin and give a sense of the Museum Gardens breaking through to the busy road. There is a view through the former entrance pend of the ruins into character area F, the Museum Gardens, and another across character area B.

B Library Lawn

Adjacent gazetteer structures	400, 500, 600, 700
Statutory designations	Scheduled Ancient Monument 1004910 and YO 30
York City Council designations	**Area of Archaeological Importance: City Centre Area** **Conservation Area: Central Historic Core**
Significance	**High**

Description and principal features

This area is largely a flat grassed lawn, with a loose gravel path running from the gates to character area A, to a stone-paved area adjacent to the walls, which runs into character area D. The steps lead to another loose gravel area, on top of the gap between the Roman and the medieval walls, and the small gate in the walls into character area F, the Museum Gardens. There are several traditional pattern timber benches, mostly ranged along the edge of the path. The gravel areas become waterlogged easily, causing pedestrians to walk on the grass instead. In the west corner, the area drops down a steep slope into the lower part of the Multangular Tower, where there are several stone sarcophagi dating from the Roman period. There are two interpretation panels, one mid to late twentieth century on the standing ruins of St Leonard's Hospital, and the other more modern, on the wall adjacent to the gate into character area F. The green colour of the grass is the dominant colour of the area, contrasting strongly with the orange brick of the library, and the grey colours of the stone ruins.

Current use

As this area is secluded, away from the busy Museum Street and Museum Gardens, and faces south west, it is used by local people in fine weather. It is also used as a pedestrian thoroughfare, from character area A to F, and around the library generally. The south east end of the area gives access to the vaults under the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital which is sometimes the site of antisocial behaviour.

Boundaries and views

This area is enclosed and intimate, and bounded on all sides by structures, with some views into other character areas. To the north east, the area is bounded by the symmetrical façade of the library, but there is sight and access into both character areas D and A. To the south east, the area is bounded by the standing the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital, with its dark vaults. To the south west, the area is bounded by the Roman walls, but there is a view into character area F, through a breach in the walls. To the north west, the area is bounded by the walls and the Multangular Tower.

Views into the site are restricted. There is a view into the site from the door through the city wall to the west. The view through the gap on the Roman wall is restricted by trees and railings, more so in the summer than in the winter.

The main views within the site are of the symmetrical elevation of the library and looking into the Multangular Tower. The view towards the library is rarely seen because it means walking across the lawn to a point next to the Roman wall. Even from here, the side of the library is very wide to be seen in one glance. The view into the interior of the Multangular Tower is more interesting than it is attractive. It is used as part of guided tours to present the history of York.

There is an evocative view from the vault in the ruins of St Leonard's Hospital. Across Library Lawn towards the interior of the Multangular Tower. This view is possibly the best way to appreciate the south front of the York Explore building.

In front of the St Leonard's Hospital vaults, close to the corner of the point where the St Leonard's Hospital meets the Roman Wall, there is a good oblique view of the library building.

C Between the city walls and the Kings' Manor

Adjacent gazetteer structures	500
Statutory designations	Scheduled Ancient Monument 1004910 and YO 30
York City Council designations	**Area of Archaeological Importance: City Centre Area** **Conservation Area: Central Historic Core**
Significance	**High**

Description and principal features

This area consists of Manor Lane and adjoining areas, running from Exhibition Square to character area F, the Museum Gardens. The area is divided by the retaining wall of the medieval ramparts, the south east side being the grassy rampart and the north west side being Manor Lane. This retaining wall is built of squared blocks of stone to the south. To the north is built of brick with a more regular, newer looking cope detail in stone. Note that the tree immediately next to the retaining wall appears to be causing damage to it through roots pushing out the wall. The wall continues northwards, enclosing a carpark, used by the City of York Council offices. The lane also continues northwards, crossing the former boundary St Mary's Abbey, the former precinct wall defining the south east side of the lane. The lane and car park are fairly flat, but the man-made rampart rises up to the city walls. Where it is not grassed, the ground is largely surfaced in tarmac, with some areas of paving. There are several mature trees in the car park and two on the rampart. There is an isolated block of the Roman walls in the carpark, surrounded by a flowerbed. There is one short length of iron railing on top of the rampart, to prevent access to character area D.

Current use

This area forms a pedestrian route between Exhibition Square and Museum Gardens. It is not very well known, because the entrances from both ends are not very obvious. The car park is well used at present.

Boundaries and views

This area is very enclosed at its southerly end and more open to the north. To the northeast are views into Exhibition Square, and up to Bootham Bar. The former walls of St Mary's Abbey enclose the lane. At the northerly end, to the east is St Leonard's Place. Further south, the area is bounded to the south east by the medieval city wall, and to the south west there is a gateway with stone piers into character area F, the Museum Gardens. To the north west, the area is entirely bounded by the buildings of the King's Manor and the enclosure of its forecourt.

The significant views within the southern part of this character area are at an angle along the side of King's Manor and along the face of the City Wall seen across the bank and through trees. These views from both north and south are more important than any views directly towards King's Manor or the City Walls.

There is also an important view looking southwards past King's Manor which still captures the feeling of a lane past a group of medieval buildings.

The views in the northern part of the site are generally from the car park and the grassed area next to it towards architectural set pieces - the symmetrical end of the St Leonard's terrace, the Theatre Royal, the 20th century extension to the Theatre Royal, the De Grey Rooms, then Bootham Bar, and lastly the art gallery. Less prominent are views towards King's Manor. The views towards the main north front of King's Manor are restricted by trees. The half-timbered gable and other features, such as finials and chimneys make more of an impression on the eastern block when seen from the car park.

D Rear of the library within the city walls

Adjacent gazetteer structures	300, 400, 500
Statutory designations	Scheduled Ancient Monument 1004910 and YO 30
York City Council designations	**Area of Archaeological Importance: City Centre Area** **Conservation Area: Central Historic Core**
Significance	**High**

Description and principal features

This area is between the library building and the city walls, and contains the remains of the Roman walls and the Anglian Tower. The area is very enclosed and linear, with paths created between the different phases of walling. Directly behind the library the area is surfaced in asphalt for parking and deliveries. At the north east end, there is a late 1960s interpretation, showing the different phases of the earth rampart, and beyond an un-excavated section of the same rampart. Above this, the bank is turfed and there is an iron railing. There are several sarcophagi.

Between the medieval retaining wall and the Roman wall, the area is paved, and beyond that the upper path between the city wall and the Roman wall is loose gravel with poor drainage. At the south west end, all three paths between the walls and the library can be accessed, the upper path between the city wall and the Roman wall has no connection to the other paths, and is an elevated and very narrow dead end. The well preserved Roman walling is exposed to damage and parts are falling off. The central path is also a dead end, at a lower level with some steps down, and the sheer medieval city walls and nineteenth century stables walls tower over the narrow space. These make it feel overshadowed and threatening.

Current use

The asphalt area is used but the density of parking is low. Parked cars detract from the appearance of the place which has high heritage value. The paths, particularly at the north east dead-end are the site of antisocial behaviour, because they are so hidden and sheltered. Access is limited and the area is cut off from anywhere else.

Boundaries and views

The area is open to the south west into character area B, the library lawn, and also leads into character area E to the east. On all other sides, the area is enclosed by structures. To the north east, the site is bounded by the un-excavated bank, its interpretation and the railing. Beyond, the back of the St Leonard's Place houses are visible in winter but almost entirely obscured by leaves in the summer. To the east and south east, is the back of the library building. To the south west is a view into the Multangular Tower in character area B. To the north west, the area is bounded by the medieval city wall, sitting very high on its late 1960s underbuilding where the rampart was removed.

Views within the space are of greatest interest southwards towards the interior of the Multangular Tower. To some extent the tower looks more interesting and attractive in the views along the original Roman wall than it does from the library lawn. This is partly because the regular pattern of arches and cross shaped guns and arrow slots is more legible and that the arrow slots can be partly seen in silhouette. The bulk of stained and mossy stone at the lower part of the interior of the Multangular Tower is less visible. The growth of flowering weeds on all three walls, but in particular the Roman Wall, is attractive but not in the interests of the conservation of the wall.

The view northwards is mainly characterised by the channel-like quality created by the medieval city wall and the back of the mews building. The Anglian Tower is set low down in this view. The principal character is given by the substantial tree on excavated part of the bank to the north. The lines of the interpreted bank are largely hidden by the Anglian Tower.

E Lane to the north east of the library

Adjacent gazetteer structures	100, 400
Statutory designations	N/A
York City Council designations	**Area of Archaeological Importance: City Centre Area** **Conservation Area: Central Historic Core**
Significance	**Moderate**

Description and principal features

This area is the lane between the library and the rear of the houses on St Leonard's Place. It has a tarmac surface patched in places, and is surrounded by brick walls, the east wall of the library, and the rear of the former garden plots of nos. 1-6 St Leonard's Place, all occupied by rear extensions to the houses. There is no amenity lighting. The combination of the walls, and lack of lighting means that this area might feel threatening at night.

Current use

This lane provides access to the rear of the library, character area D, and the rear of the rear of the St Leonard's Place former garden plots. Because the lane is accessible at all hours of the day and night, it provides access to character areas D and B, the library lawn, even when the gates between character areas A, Library Square, and B, library lawn, are locked shut. This enables the seclusion of character area D and the vaults of St Leonard's Hospital to be sites for antisocial behaviour.

Boundaries and views

The buildings that border the lane on the east side are of one or two storeys high and the rear elevations of the houses on St Leonard's Place are glimpsed over them. The boundary wall is a mixture of 19th and 20th century brickwork, of different designs. To the south east, the area opens into character area A, with a longer view onto Museum Street. The library borders the west side of the lane, with one garage to the north which preserves some older brickwork, the remains of the eighteenth and nineteenth-century stables buildings that previously occupied the Mint Yard.

The views within, into and out of the area are not significant.

F Museum Gardens

Adjacent gazetteer structures	500, 600, 700
Statutory designations	Scheduled Ancient Monument 1004910 and YO 30 Registered Park and Garden: Grade II: 1000117
York City Council designations	**Area of Archaeological Importance: City Centre Area** **Conservation Area: Central Historic Core** **Flood zone 2 and 3**
Significance	**High**

Description and principal features

This area is the Museum Gardens, occupying the former precincts of St Mary's Abbey. Much of this area is designated a registered park and garden by English Heritage. It includes the ruins and standing remains of the former abbey, a length of the city wall running down to the River Ouse to Lendel Tower, and the precinct walls of St Mary's Abbey. There are numerous standing buildings, many of which are listed, the most important of which are Lendal Tower, the King's Manor, the Hospitium, Observatory and the Yorkshire Museum. The gardens area is largely covered in grass with winding paths and nineteenth-century pattern streetlamps, with attractive planting and mature trees. The Greek Revival museum building commands the landscaped slopes down towards the Ouse. The lower part is designated as part of York's Flood Zones 2 and 3. There are some interpretation panels, and in some parts of the ruins of the abbey, the outline of the Romanesque abbey church has been laid out. There are also some Roman sarcophagi. There are many architectural fragments and carved stones around the character area, many of

which are used as borders to flower beds. There is a fernery between the Multangular Tower and character area C which contains many carved stones.

The access to the gardens from Museum Street has iron gates and a nineteenth-century Gothic Revival lodge, which breaks the connection between the entrance pend of the remains of St Leonard's Hospital, and its former watergate and landing at the foot of *Ffotles Lane*, now Lendal. The lane is cobbled and slopes down to the river embankment, The Esplanade. The city wall stands high in this part of the site, and runs down the western side of this lane. It abuts a tightly packed set of buildings around a court adjacent to Lendal Tower, comprising Lendal Hill House (listed grade II), and the former waterworks engine house (listed grade II). These buildings convey an impression of how densely packed with buildings the lane and the Mint Yard itself were in the eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries.

The Museum Gardens can also be accessed from two pedestrian gates from The Esplanade embankment, where the gardens are enclosed by iron railings on stone copes (listed grade II). Neither of these gates is particularly conspicuous. From Marygate, there are several ways into the area, through the standing walls of the former abbey precinct. On Bootham, these walls remain, in many places hidden behind the buildings facing the street.

For a fuller account see:
Appendix: National Heritage List entry
York central historic core: conservation area appraisal

Current use

Apart from being an area of natural beauty in the urban centre, and a public amenity as a park and garden of high value, the area is used for two principal pedestrian routes to Marygate, from Museum Square, via character area C, and from Museum Street. The observatory remains in use.

Boundaries and views

On all landward sides, the area is bordered by walls and structures, many with view out into adjacent streets and of adjacent buildings. To the north, the area is bordered by the walls and buildings along Bootham. To the east is St Leonard's Place and its adjacent buildings, with a longer view to York Minster from Museum Square. To the south east, the area is bounded by Museum Street. Though the river is the boundary to the south, it is not very visible from within the character area due to the distribution and density of planting.

Views into the Mint Yard site, towards the York Explore building across the library lawn are restricted by trees, railings and flower beds. In addition, the eye is drawn away from these views by being partly blocked by advertising banners for Yorkshire Museum set on tall, white standards.

In contrast to the way that the museum gardens layout treats the south wall between it and library lawn, the Multangular Tower was given a landscape treatment which treats it as an important feature. It is framed by trees and is seen across lawns from the main path rising up towards the Yorkshire Museum. The front of the Yorkshire Museum is roughly aligned with the Multangular Tower and the visual relationship between the two buildings is probably a conscious part of the designed parkland.

This is the most characteristic view of the Multangular Tower and possibly the best view to interpret some of its most significant historical and architectural aspects, such as the way that it provided an impressive fortification facing towards the river. The Multangular Tower is framed by mature trees and has a backdrop of the upper floor of the York Explore building. Its Baroque Classicism is an addition to the view that was imagined by the designers of Museum Gardens. It adds qualities of fresher limestone, brick and stone covered roofs to this view but it possibly detracts from the original intention that the Multangular Tower and the walls to either side of it would be seen in silhouette when viewed from the south.

There is a more distant view of the Multangular Tower from the lower part of Museum Gardens next to the river. Most of the edge of Museum Gardens to the river is heavily planted with evergreen trees and so views towards the Mint Yard area would be restricted both in summer and winter. In these views the observatory building on a mound in front of the Yorkshire Museum is most prominent.

The ruins of St Mary's Abbey can be seen to the left. The views of the Multangular Tower, the wall to the south of library lawn and the library building itself are restricted by dense foliage in summer. In the winter the museum is more prominent, as are the west towers of York Minster on the skyline behind the library. In these views, the Multangular Tower is still visible but less easy to understand as an object because it is partly hidden by trees. The wall to the south of Library Lawn is visible but in shade and mainly obscured by trees and a flower bed.

6.0 ASSESSMENT OF HERITAGE VALUE

6.1 Introduction

This section discusses the heritage value of various aspects of the Mint Yard, following English Heritage guidelines. The statement of significance that follows is based on this discussion, and is essentially an analytical conclusion.

Conservation principles sets out a method of assessing the cultural significance of a place against four criteria of heritage value: [30]

Evidential value

Historical value

Illustrative historic value

Associative historic value

Aesthetic value

Design value

Fortuitous aesthetic value

Communal value

Commemorative and symbolic value

Social value

Spiritual value

The *Burra Charter* provides the following definition of cultural significance:

> *'Cultural Significance means aesthetic, historic, scientific, social or spiritual value for past, present or future generations. Cultural significance is embodied in the place itself, its fabric, setting, use, associations, meanings, records, related places and related objects.'*

The following assessment of the heritage value of the Mint Yard study area is based upon an analysis of the historical development of the site, including the tangible documentary and physical evidence, as well as intangible historic, and social associations, analysed using the methodology of *Conservation Principles*.

Understanding the heritage values of the place leads to establishing significance. Therefore, in the assessment, the elements from each historical phase are given a value level using the same terminology as the significance as follows. The definition of these grades has been arrived at by discussion with English Heritage.

[30] *Conservation principles: policies and guidance for the sustainable management of the historic environment* (English Heritage: 2008)

High Heritage Value ~ High Significance

Critical to an understanding of cultural significance

Medium Heritage Value ~ Medium Significance

Important to an understanding of cultural significance

Moderate Heritage Value ~ Moderate Significance

Part of an understanding of cultural significance

Neutral Heritage Value ~ Neutral Significance

Could be enhanced to provide understanding of cultural significance

Negative Heritage Value ~ Negative Significance

Detracts from an understanding of cultural significance

6.2 Evidential Value

> *'Evidential value derives from the potential of the site to yield evidence about past human activity. Physical remains of past human activity are the primary source of evidence about the substance and evolution of places, and of the people and cultures that made them… Their evidential value is proportionate to their potential to contribute to people's understanding of the past… The ability to understand and interpret the evidence tends to be diminished in proportion to the extent of its removal or replacement.'*[31]

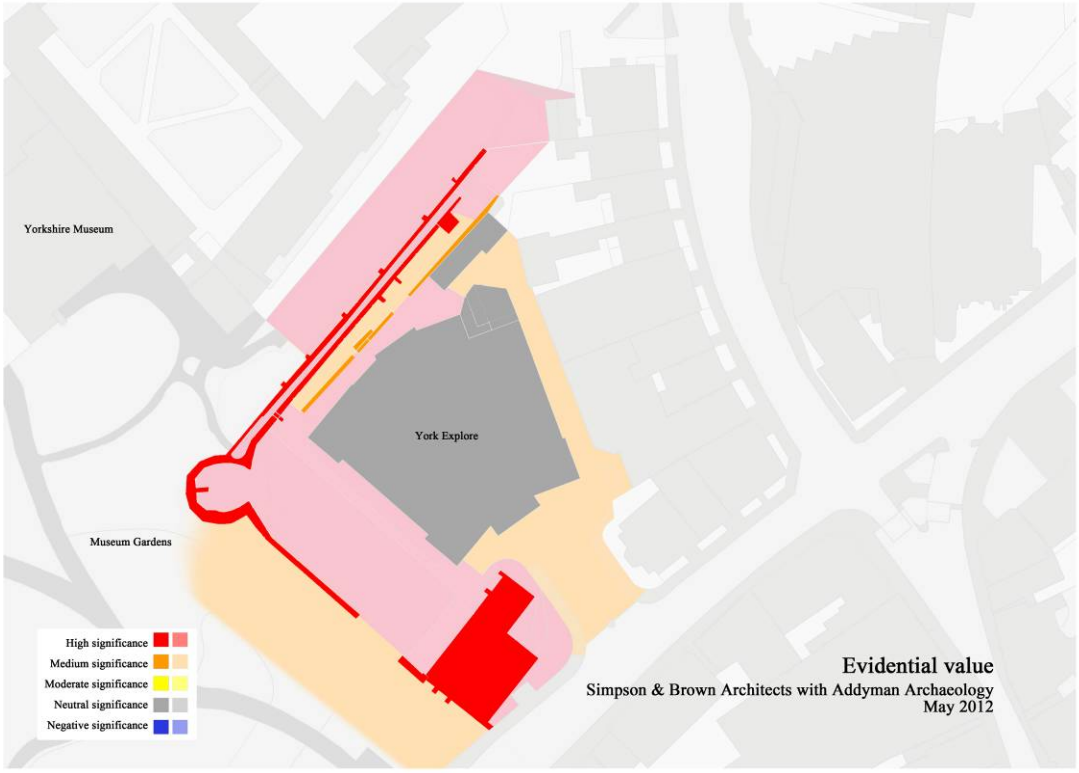
The Mint Yard project area is most important for its archaeological value. The site preserves deeply over-layered archaeological remains of the city's defences dating from the early years of the Roman occupation through to the later medieval period. The site also incorporates parts of the medieval hospital foundation of St Leonard, and with the exception of the Minster, nowhere in York is such a sequence of archaeological remains more dramatically legible. Many of the remains at Mint Yard are substantial and upstanding, however others are the less tangible below-ground deposits and features that are known from an important series of excavations or may be otherwise inferred.

By contrast the site is now largely devoid of surviving archaeology of the post-Reformation and early modern periods. It seems not to have been intensively occupied during this period; with the gradual removal of hospital buildings the ground seems to have been given over to garden areas and, later on, increasingly to

[31] EH *Conservation principles: policies and guidance for the sustainable management of the historic environment* (EH: 2008) p. 28

stabling. What had existed during this time was largely removed in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries.

The activity on the site in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries by antiquarians and archaeologists is also of importance, and will be examined subsequently.



In the north and northwest part of the site, in character area C, the inwards-facing rampart was largely excavated away in 1970-71 for the purposes of public display, resulting in a total loss of evidential value in this localised area. In this area much of the overlying archaeology was destroyed in the process. However further northeast a section of the rampart remains that will doubtless preserve a similar stratigraphic sequence, from the Roman period through to the medieval. The library lawn area overlies the site of the later twelfth century infirmary block of St Leonard's Hospital; an extension to this structure to the south east in the thirteenth century includes the upstanding remains. The infirmary structure overall has been demonstrated to overlie exceptionally well preserved remains of the early Roman earthen ramparts.

The library lawn area and the surviving areas of rampart to the northwest have the most potential for further archaeological investigation within the site area. The construction of the air-raid shelter in the Second World War has however resulted in a loss of evidential value for some of this area. The construction of the cellarage of the existing Central Library building will have eradicated most of the archaeology that had survived in that area. Isolated areas of archaeological survival may remain along the northeast and northwest perimeters of the library and perhaps, at deeper level, within the forecourt area fronting onto Museum Street.

In general, it is possible that organic matter of archaeological value may be discovered in excavations of remains from any period.

6.2.1 Roman period (71 – c410)

The evidential value of the Roman period is **high**. This is derived from the nature of the below and above-ground archaeology, including the well preserved architectural fragments of the Roman defences.

The Roman masonry remains at the Mint Yard are exceptionally well preserved and their importance has been recognised since first being described by Martin Lister in the late seventeenth century. While York's Roman defences have been encountered in other areas during excavation, this is the only point in the city where they are now accessible, with the exception of the eastern corner of the fortress and adjacent wall section of the northeast perimeter. However, the remains at the Mint Yard are the more extensive and are highly instructive for the study of ancient fortification, and Roman engineering and construction.

The Multangular Tower and adjacent wall sections are of high evidential value, as they are some of the best preserved upstanding remains in the United Kingdom. The Multangular Tower is the best preserved example of its type, one of the two polygonal corner towers of the fortress, probably dating from the first century AD.

There are many examples in the United Kingdom of Roman remains, but what is so remarkable about this tower and its walls, is that it is not below ground, but standing architecture. It is in many ways fortunate that the later earth rampart to the south was cleared at some point in the later medieval period. The rampart probably protected the Roman walls and the lower parts of the Multangular Tower, from damage before the English Civil War, and its exposure emphasises the architectural value of the remarkable structure. However the excavation of character area D, to the north west of the library has reduced the evidential value of this area, because of the emoval of the layers of earth rampart. However, evidential value remains high below the current unexcavated ground level. Evidential value also remains in the standing Roman walls, but the effects of weathering, poor drainage, cement repairs and rough racking have caused accelerated deterioration of this asset.

The visible remains of Roman occupation within the site area also include the oven-base and the numerous Roman sarcophagi, though these are mainly nineteenth-century antiquarian gatherings from elsewhere.

Below-ground archaeology associated with this period includes the interval tower to the south east of the Multangular Tower, but the potential for further discoveries is high, particularly in the unexcavated earth bank in the north of the site. There is high potential for the site to yield significant evidence of the Roman period.

6.2.2 Sub-Roman period (c410-c450) and Anglian period (c450 to 867)

The evidential value for this period is **high.** The so-called 'Anglian Tower' is a defensive addition to the Roman fortress circuit, whose exact dating, whether late Roman or early post-Roman is still a subject of debate.[32] Discovered in the late 1830s by its accidental piercing by an access tunnel through the rampart, [33] the fact that all four walls and part of the vaulted ceiling of this tower remain, make it a unique survival of the period. The wall footings of similar structures have been excavated elsewhere, but only the Anglian Tower stands to first floor height. It is possible that

[32] RCHME *An inventory of the historical monuments in the City of York: volume II, defences*. p. 115
[33] RCHME *Defences* p. 113

other below-ground evidence will also be discovered, and the potential of the site to yield significant evidence of activity in this period is high.

6.2.3 Anglo-Scandinavian period (867 - 1066)

The evidential value for this period is **medium**. The post-Roman occupation of the site has preserved important archaeological remains in the tenth-century Anglo Scandinavian rampart at the northwest perimeter of the site. Again, the potential for further discoveries in the unexcavated earth bank in the north of the site is high, this section perhaps still preserving further parts of the upper works that were seen during general excavation in 1970-71.

It is unclear whether archaeological remains relating to the original tenth-century hospital and church of St Peter's may exist within the site area.[34] It is assumed that the original foundation, renamed St Leonard's Hospital when rebuilt in the eleventh century, was located further north and closer to the Minster because of the presence of the early architectural fragment within the Theatre Royal. There is some potential for the site to yield evidence of activity in this period.

6.2.4 Norman period - later 11th & 12th centuries

The evidential value for this period is **high**. Unexcavated areas in character area D will contain evidence of the improvements of the defences following the Norman conquest of York, when the rampart was further built up and topped with a wooden palisade.

Part of the standing ruin of St Leonard's Hospital was built in this period. It was a very substantial structure, with a vaulted range abutting the interior of the Roman fortress wall. The remains of the footings of this structure, an associated major drainage ditch, and a number of architectural fragments have been revealed in successive excavations and attest to the architectural stature of the range. Further fragmentary remains of the period, parts of the undercroft of what may have been guest accommodation, survive beneath the Theatre Royal. The core area of the Mint Yard site has considerable potential to further elucidate occupation at this period.

6.2.5 Later medieval period to the Reformation – 13th to mid 16th centuries

The evidential value for this period is **high**, because in this period the major medieval remains on the site were constructed, including the existing rampart and city wall to the northwest, the upper parts of the Multangular Tower, and St Leonard's Hospital. In both cases the remains represent individual parts of a much greater whole, that each extended well beyond the site area.

As a system of defence the medieval fortifications of York are the most complete example in the country. The Mint Yard sections form an integral part of this system although they latterly became physically separated with the formation of St Leonard's Place and with the removal of the wall section at the entrance to the Museum Gardens. Radley's excavations of 1969-70 demonstrated how this system represented the culmination of more than a thousand years of successive

[34] RCHME *An inventory of the historical monuments in the City of York: volume v, central.* p. 93

development. Though much patched the northwest section of the wall preserves much evidence of the process of construction, with successive building of varying character clearly visible. The upper stage of the Multangular Tower is individually significant for the sophistication of the arrangement of crosslet arrow-slits, one of the better examples of this within the entire walled circuit.

The evidential value of the fragmentary upstanding remains and buried elements of St Leonard's Hospital is also high, though not fully understood. The upstanding remains of the infirmary, a major extension to the earlier range, demonstrate a structure of the highest quality and one of great extent. Buried remains of demolished parts of the structure exist to the south east and north west. These have considerable potential to further elucidate the understanding of this structure. Other upstanding remains within the site include the hospital perimeter to the northwest, where substantial walling remains retain the inner rampart of the city wall.

The surviving remains and buried archaeology have considerable potential to enhance the understanding of this part of the St Leonard's precinct. However much of the central area, within the footprint of the library building, will have been destroyed.

Any consideration of the archaeological importance of St Leonard's must necessarily take in the wider precinct area that extended further north as far as Bootham Bar and to the southwest to the mid point of Museum Street. The site also extended to St Leonard's Landing by Lendal Tower to the south west. The archaeological study of this area, a major element of the medieval city, has considerable potential in spite of the losses, particularly in the area of St Leonard's Place. The various upstanding remains within the Theatre Royal remain little understood and even their surviving extent is unknown.

The remains of St Leonard's Hospital are thus not fully understood. Whatever the extent of their survival, they have very considerable potential to contribute to the understanding of one of the most important but little understood medieval institutions in the city and, as a medieval hospital, one of the most significant and influential in the country. The better understanding of the precinct area, up to and including the abbey perimeter wall of St Mary's which, latterly formed the hospital boundary to the north west and south west, will contribute very significantly to the understanding of the urban morphology of this area of York.

There is high potential for the site to yield significant evidence of this period.

6.2.6 The Reformation to the 17th century

The evidential value for this period is **medium**. From the time of the Reformation, with the dissolution of St Leonard's in 1540, through to the earlier nineteenth century, potential of the site to yield evidence about its use and occupation is lower than the earlier periods. This is in part because the hospital seems to have become progressively disused, and its buildings successively dismantled, and the land given over to garden areas and stabling. Its lesser evidential value is also in part because much of the more recent archaeological remains that may have existed within this area were removed between the second quarter of the nineteenth and the second quarter of the twentieth centuries. Interestingly, in the adjacent King's Manor, evidential value for this period is substantial.

The effect of the Siege of York during the English Civil War in the early 1640s on the archaeology of the area is tangible in some areas of damage to the walls, particularly the stretch between the Multangular Tower and the remains of St Leonard's Hospital. One particular area of repaired damage is a canon-ball impact, possibly from a gun battery at Holgate Hill captured at the beginning of June 1642.[35] The damage is illustrated by Martin Lister in his paper to the Royal Society of London in the mid 1680s,[36] but as there was financial provision for repair of the city walls in the 1665 city charter,[37] it seems possible that Lister's drawing from the late 1670s was not actually based on damage that was still visible. The wall is patched at this about the point indicated in Lister's illustration. There is some potential for the site to yield evidence of activity in this period.

6.2.7 The 18th century

The evidential value for this period is **neutral** based on the cartographical evidence. Later built structures were generally low status stabling, both private stables serving individual households and larger commercial stables with horses and vehicles for rent. Many occupied the site under the library or other standing buildings, and evidence may have been destroyed. In character area E, some of the brick mews buildings incorporate earlier eighteenth-century fabric. However, in general archaeological fabric from this period is of low value or has not survived.

6.2.8 The 19th century

The evidential value for this period is **medium**. The library lawn is the only area where evidential value is concentrated for this period, as others, like the stabling, have been destroyed. The lawn appears to have been largely free of development until some time in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth century when the evidence of views and maps shows that buildings were erected against the inside of the stretch of walls between the Multangular Tower and the remains of St Leonard's Hospital. These buildings were removed by the 1852 Ordnance Survey, were of low status and not very substantial, though their building affected the walls themselves with windows punched through at various points, and may have negatively affected any ground archaeology.

Following the acquisition of the site in the late 1820s by the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, they laid out a Garden of Antiquities using architectural fragments to define areas of planting. The evidential value of this antiquarian response to the site is of high value.

However, the Yorkshire Philosophical Society's excavation of the base of the Multangular Tower in 1831[38] negatively affects the evidential value of this part of the site as archaeological deposits have been destroyed. There is potential for the site to yield some evidence of this period.

---

[35] RCHME *Defences* p. 24
[36] Lister M. *Transactions of the Royal Society of London*, referred to in Wenham, P. T*he great and close siege of York* (Kineton: Roundwood Press, 1970). p.112
[37] RCHME *Defences* p.27
[38] RCHME *Defences* p.111

6.2.9 *The 20th century to the present*

There is **moderate evidential value** for this period. The early twentieth century library is largely extant and provides good evidence of how libraries were intended to function in this period. However, the air-raid shelter in the library lawn in the 1940s, and the largely uncontrolled excavation of character area D around the Anglian Tower in the 1960s negatively affected the earlier evidential value of these areas.

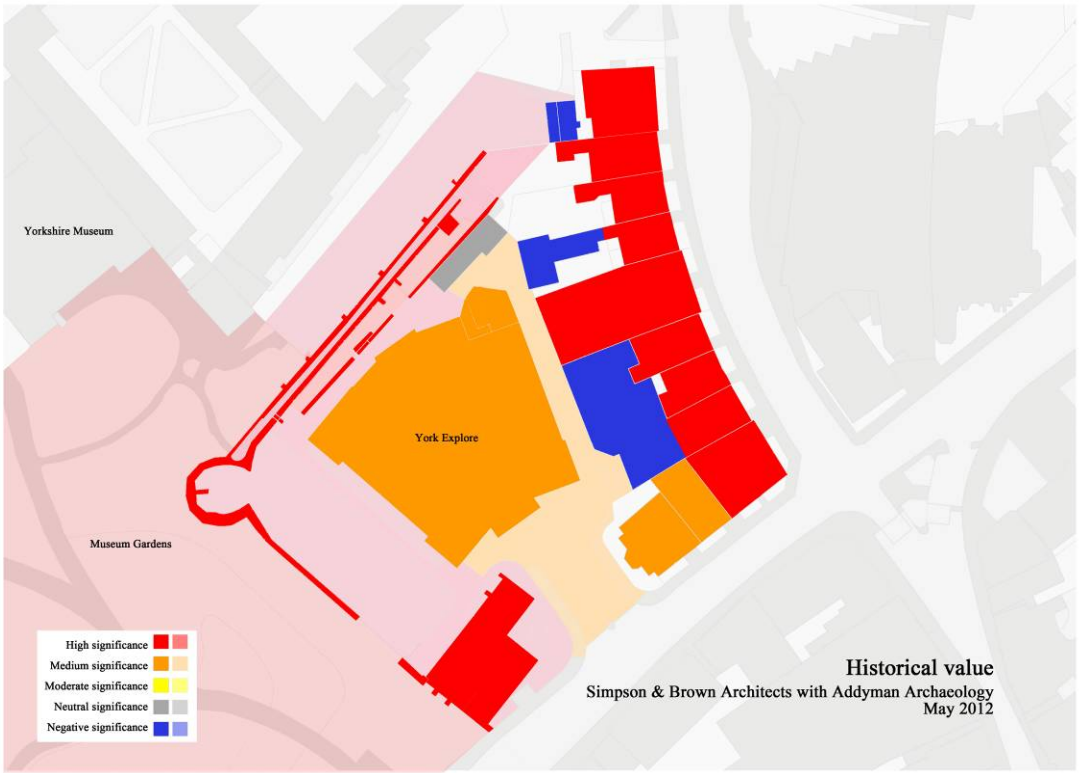
6.3 Historical Value

'Historical value derives from the ways in which past people, events and aspects of life can be connected through a place to the present. It tends to be illustrative *or* associative*…'*

'Illustration depends on visibility in a way that evidential value (for example, of buried remains) does not…'

'The illustrative value of places tends to be greater if they incorporate the first, or only surviving, example of an innovation of consequence, whether related to design, technology or social organisation…'

'Association with a notable family, person, event, or movement gives historical value a particular resonance. Being at the place where something momentous happened can increase and intensify understanding through linking historical accounts of events with the place where they happened – provided, of course, that the place still retains some semblance of its appearance at the time.'[39]



[39] EH *Conservation principles*. p. 28

6.3.1 Roman period (71 – c410)

Illustrative

There is **high** illustrative historical value to the Mint Yard site in the Roman period. This is because the upstanding remains of the Roman fortress are so well preserved, and show the way that Roman fortresses looked, and were constructed and arranged.

The site has the most impressive remains of the last Roman fortress of Eboracum. The extent of the remains is astonishing, and uniquely illustrates Roman military architecture, showing the intention of the Roman military architects in creating structures that were simultaneously defensive and impressive, intended to address the civilian town across the River Ouse. The walls show the way that the Romans built defensive structures, with an outer skin of small squared blocks of Magnesian Limestone (known by their Roman name of *saxa quadrata*), and a red tile bonding course, with a rubble core. All of this is highly visible, well preserved and unique in the city of York. The Multangular Tower is also a unique example in the United Kingdom, showing how the unusual Roman multi-faceted tower would have looked. Though there are other examples of Roman fortresses in the United Kingdom which have stretches of walling of equal or better illustrative value to those in the Mint Yard, none has a tower that so well presents the appearance of a Roman multi-faceted tower.

Associative

There is **high** associative historical value to the Mint Yard site in the Roman period. This is derived primarily from the fact that it was once the south west corner of the Roman fortress, garrisoned at one point by the Ninth Legion.

The site is defined by its historical layout as part of the legionary fortress of Eboracum built in the first century AD. Eboracum was one of the three permanent legionary fortresses in Britain, the others being Chester (Deva) and Caerleon (Isca). Being the most northerly, it was intended to strengthen the Roman military presence in the region and spearhead occupation further north. The civilian settlement that sprang up to the south of the River Ouse in the second century, was granted the title of *colonia*, meaning an independent chartered town. This was the most important type of civilian settlement in the Roman system, and meant that this was the most important in the north of the country.[40] The presence of Roman sarcophagi, though probably not excavated on the site, and the *colonia* or civilian settlement, provides historical associations with Roman burial practices.

The fortress was originally built by the Ninth Legion. This is one of the best known legions in Roman-British history, because of the curious nature of its disappearance from Roman histories in the second century, leading to wild speculation about its destruction.[41] Whatever the circumstances, it was replaced by the Sixth Legion until the withdrawal of the legions in the fourth century. These associations of the site, and the extensive surviving evidence of the Roman presence, gives the site high historical associative value in this period.

---

[40] RCHME *An inventory of the historical monuments in the City of York: volume I, Eboracum*. p. xxxvi

[41] RCHME *Eboracum*. p. xxxii

6.3.2 Sub-Roman period (c410-c450) and Anglian period (c450 to 867)

Illustrative

The Anglian Tower has **high** value in illustrative terms as an exceptionally rare standing structure from this period. The tower itself is of illustrative value as it shows mortared masonry construction, with round-headed openings, presumably learned from the Romans. Its incorporation into the Roman defences shows how they continued in use in this period by the subsequent occupiers of the fortress. Interestingly, the Anglian Tower also illustrates a difference in intent from the Roman engineers, with little concern for the refinements in appearance of smooth ashlar or decorative bonding courses.

Associative

There is **high** associative value for this period in the site, primarily because the Anglian Tower remains standing. This high value is in spite of the fact that the so-called Anglian period, following the departure of the Roman legions in the fourth century, is not understood in the same level of detail as the Roman period. However, it is clear that the fortress and *colonia* remained in occupation during this period, but few historical details are known or recorded.[42]

6.3.3 Anglo-Scandinavian period (867 - 1066)

Illustrative

There is **no** illustrative value for this period as there are no standing structures. The heritage value in this period is predominantly evidential, in the archaeological deposits on the site.

Associative

There is **medium** associative value for the site in this period. York is well known as the centre of the Viking kingdom of Jorvik in the north during the ninth century. However, though the walls of the Roman fortress were refortified, and the site remained in occupation, heritage value predominates in the evidential archaeological deposits for this period.

6.3.4 Norman period - later 11th & 12th centuries

Illustrative

There is **low** illustrative value for this period as there are no standing structures. The heritage value in this period is predominantly evidential, in the archaeological deposits on the site.

Associative

The associative value of the site in this period is **medium** because there are no visible remains. However, as in the previous periods, the site remained in occupation, and the walls were again refortified. This was significant because the walls were important for the Norman taxation of the city, following the Conquest. By the 1130s

[42] Pevsner, N. & Neave, D. *Buildings of England: Yorkshire: York and the East Riding*. p. 119

York was the fourth highest taxpaying city in Britain, after London, Winchester and Lincoln.[43]

It is also historically important that in this period, the first records associated with St Leonard's Hospital emerge. It is important that the Mint Yard site was given by King William IInd, son of the Conqueror, and a chapel erected to St Peter, from which the hospital took its name. The chapel and whatever hospital buildings existed were destroyed in a fire in 1137, and any remains may have been entirely destroyed by the replacement buildings and the new church dedicated to St Leonard. The new buildings included the remains now incorporated into the Theatre Royal.[44]

6.3.5 Later medieval period to the Reformation – 13th to mid 16th centuries

Illustrative

This period has **high** historical value because of the city walls and St Leonard's Hospital both largely constructed in this period. The city walls are only one part of the extensive survival of the walls of York, but illustrate their scale and the way that they were constructed. The extent of subsequent excavations at the bases of the walls in character areas C and D also illustrates the shallowness of their foundations.

The ruins of St Leonard's Hospital are also extensive. This structure illustrates the way that medieval monastic institutional buildings were constructed, especially in their use of vaulting in the undercroft. The ruins also illustrate the layout of the hospital with its entrance pend leading to a landing stage and watergate on the Ouse. This common arrangement in riverside institutional buildings of the period is well illustrated with St Leonard's, though it could be significantly enhanced.

Associative

This period has **high** historical associative value because of the extent of the survival of the city walls and St Leonard's Hospital, both constructed in this period. The ashlar facings and decorative cope stones, show that there was an aesthetic intention for how the walls looked, and the impression of money and power that they would have given to the city when completed. The survival of the walls on this site is not unique for York, but as most other cities in the United Kingdom have lost their medieval city walls, all survivals of medieval walls are of high value.

St Leonard's Hospital is an architectural fragment of one of the largest medieval hospitals in Britain,[45] and one of the three major medieval institutions of York, along with the Minster and St Mary's Abbey. St Leonard's Hospital, which was still known as St Peter's until the thirteenth century,[46] had been a growing institution in the city from at least the mid 1000s, and in this period reached full maturity. In the mid 1200s, new buildings were built, including the fragment of which remains on the south corner of the Mint Yard site.[47] In 1299, the hospital precinct was also extended to the north west as far as the walls.[48]

---

[43] Pevsner *Buildings of England: Yorkshire*. p. 122
[44] RCHME *Central*. p. 93
[45] RCHME *Central.* p. 93
[46] RCHME *Central*. p. 93
[47] RCHME *Central*. p. 94
[48] RCHME *Defences.* p. 11

6.3.6 The Reformation to the 17th century

Illustrative

The illustrative value of the site for this period is **neutral**. There are no standing structures from this period, however the patching of the damage caused by artillery impact during the Seige of York is an interesting example. The heritage value in this period is predominantly associative.

Associative

The associative historical value for this period is **medium**, and largely derives from the way that the site acquired its name. In the Reformation and Dissolution of the Monasteries, the precincts of St Leonard's Hospital became property of the Crown, and were granted to Sir Arthur Darcy in 1544, ending the 500 year service of the hospital to the city of York. He sold the hospital back to the Crown in 1546, and the Royal Mint was moved from the castle to the old hospital buildings in 1546.[49] This suggests that the buildings were in good condition, as the Mint could not have been housed in buildings that were not secure. It was operational until 1553, revived in 1629 and removed in 1642.[50]

There may be an association of the relocation of the Mint, with the use of the former abbot's lodging of St Mary's Abbey as the King's Manor. The lodging was Crown property immediately the abbey was dissolved, and the official residence of the President of the Council of the North from 1561, until the council was abolished in 1641.[51]

Thus, the site took its name from this one brief event in its long history. The reason that it retained the name after the mint was removed is probably because the earliest maps of the area dating from the same period, the earliest being Speed's 1610 map, label the area Mint Yard.[52] The name appears to have become firmly established following this historical event.

Also of historical associative value is the continuing importance of the walls. The city maintained and repaired the walls sporadically in this period, and they functioned both as an economic barrier for enforcing taxation, and for military defence during the Siege of York during the Civil War. After the Civil War, a garrison occupied the Kings Manor, and permanently manned the walls and gates until 1688.[53]

6.3.7 18th century

Illustrative

The illustrative value for the site in this period is **neutral** because the only standing structures are the fragments of brickwork which may be eighteenth century in the mews buildings in character area E. The heritage value in this period is predominantly communal.

---

[49] RCHME *Central.* p. 94
[50] RCHME *Central.* p. 94
[51] Pesvner et al. *Yorkshire* 186
[52] RCHME *Defences.* p. 2
[53] RCHME *Defences.* p. 27-28

Associative

The associative historical value in this period is **moderate** because of the refortification of the city walls in the early eighteenth century.

During the Second Jacobite Rising in the early 1740s, there was a serious threat that the city of York might be attacked, and the defences were repaired and consolidated. It is not clear whether the walls in the Mint Yard area were specifically affected, but most of the city walls were repaired and in some places, the outer earth rampart was dug down to increase the height of the walls.[54] Fortunately, as the city was not attacked, the walls were not tested, as they would certainly not have withstood bombardment from artillery.

6.3.8 19th century

Illustrative

The illustrative historical value for this period is **high** because of the St Leonard's Place crescent, and the laying out of the Museum Gardens.

St Leonard's Place is of high value as the only example in York of an essentially British innovation in town planning, the crescent. [55] It illustrates the conception of the urban picturesque of the unfolding and emerging architectural composition, with Bootham Bar acting as an eye-catcher. This had been refined in London by Sir John Nash, with the approach to the Regent's Park development from St James's. [56] The houses are united in a terrace and illustrate a typical palace-façade type of design, symmetrically disposed, with emphasis on the centre and pavilion ends, and little other differentiation between the other houses in between. This makes the building look like one monumental design, like a palace, and makes it more impressive. This type of façade had been used in British towns and cities since the early eighteenth century, with particularly good examples by Wood in Bath.

Nos. 2 & 4 Museum Street are a very interesting illustration of the importance of appearance in the mid-nineteenth century. They show how two houses could be made to look like one, in order to create an impression of grandeur to the visitor to no. 4. This looks like a large symmetrical house around the axis of its front door, but in fact no. 4 is only the western part, with the door to no. 2 and tucked in a recess at the east end, and occupying the eastern half of the building.

The illustrative value of the Museum Gardens adjacent to the Mint Yard site is also high. It was laid out in the mid 1840s by the Scottish horticulturist, Sir John Naesmyth, and the plan that he devised largely survives.[57] It illustrates the broad diversity of interests of nineteenth century antiquarianism, in this case history, archaeology, botany and astronomy, and how the design was intended to integrate them into a coherent landscape.

Associative

The associative historical value is **high**, because the city walls survive today, despite attempts in the period to demolish them. The last time that the walls had been

---

[54] RCHME *Defences.* p. 29
[55] Summerson, *Architecture in Britain.* p. 364
[56] Summerson, *Architecture in Britain* p. 447
[57] English Heritage *National Heritage List Entry: Museum Gardens, York* (2000)

manned for defence was in riots in the 1750s,[58] and from the 1790s, the City Corporation sought permission to demolish the city walls in their entirety, because, they argued, they were a hindrance to economic development and traffic circulation, and the stone could be sold at a profit.[59] The Corporation made continued attempts through to the 1820s, when a pressure group was formed for the complete restoration of the walls, which became the York Footpath Association.

It is relevant to the Mint Yard site that the group was unsuccessful in preventing the demolition of walls between the Anglian Tower and Bootham Bar after 1831, for the laying out of the new street of St Leonard's Place. Though a section of the walls in this area had collapsed in August 1828,[60] they are shown in their entirety on the proposal plan for St Leonard's Place of 1831.

The building of St Leonard's Place itself is connected to the City Corporation's need to ease traffic flow around Bootham Bar and to raise income from rental revenue. They decided to demolish existing buildings on the Mint Yard site and drive through a grand crescent, for the private building of large private houses, which would command high ground rents.[61] There was an earlier scheme which was rejected, and the Corporation had trouble selling the plots. When the scheme was eventually completed in the late 1830s, the majority of the houses were owned by members of the Corporation. This story contributes to the associative value.

Walking the walls had been an attraction to tourists since the mid eighteenth century,[62] when interest in the medieval past was on the rise with popular thriller-type Gothick novels, begun with Horace Walpole's *Castle of Otranto* of 1764. However, by the nineteenth century, interest in the walls can be connected to the moralised romantic ideals of the medieval past in the early nineteenth century, as the pressure group was led by the painter William Etty, with support from the famous medievalist and novelist, Sir Walter Scott.[63] Attempts to demolish specific bars and sections of the walls continued in the nineteenth and early twentieth century, but none affected the Mint Yard area.

This emerging consciousness in the first half of the nineteenth century of the historical value of the walls, became specific to the Mint Yard site from the 1820s. In 1827, the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, formed of antiquarians, began to acquire the former lands of St Mary's Abbey outside the Mint Yard and planted them as botanical gardens around the new museum.[64] One of the essential aims of the society was the preservation of the abbey remains from further ruin.[65] The society excavated the lower part of the Multangular Tower in 1831.[66]

There are many early photographs and illustrations of the Multangular Tower from this period, showing the level of interest in the site and its structures. Most of them

---

[58] RCHME *Defences.* p. 29
[59] RCHME *Defences.* p. 31
[60] RCHME *Defences.* p. 32
[61] Fawcett, B. *George Townsend Andrews of York: 'the railway architect'* (York: Yorkshire Architectural & York Archaeology Society with the North Eastern Railway Association, 2011) p. 30
[62] RCHME *Defences*. p. 30
[63] RCHME *Defences.* p. 31
[64] English Heritage *National Heritage List Entry: Museum Gardens, York* (2000)
[65] Yorkshire Philosophical Society *Minutes of the Council* 7th March 1826. p. 36
[66] RCHME *Defences.* p. 111

are not analytical or scientific images, but influenced by romanticism, and intended to elicit an emotional response, for instance, to the gothic remains of St Leonard's Hospital.

There is also associative value in the historical social context of the Museum Gardens design. Naesmyth was approached in 1844,[67] the same year that Sir Joseph Paxton provided the design for Birkenhead Park, recognised as the first specifically designed public park in the United Kingdom.[68] There are design similarities, with meandering paths in the picturesque manner, and they were both influenced by developments in English landscape design. More importantly, Naesmyth and Paxton provided their designs in the context of social reform affecting the fabric of cities, a campaign led by Edwin Chadwick, which called for public parks to improve the morals and health of the urban poor. Though the Museum Gardens were exclusively for the use of members of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society, they were open to the public on occasional days,[69] but even so, it was considered at the time that just being able to see nature was uplifting to the soul.

6.3.9 20th century to the present

Illustrative

The illustrative value of the site in this period is **medium** as it derives from the building of the Central Library, now York Explore, by the firm of Brierley & Rutherford. The building is a very good illustration of the institutional work of the practice in the first quarter of the twentieth century, and of the Queen Anne, English Baroque Revival style in general.

The usually very practical designs of the practice were clothed in a variety of stylistic treatments, including Arts & Crafts, and Neo-classical. The Queen Anne Revival style of the library is of historical illustrative value because Brierley seems only to have used it on institutional buildings, like his Board schools and the Northallerton County Hall. Like many *fin de siècle* architects, he was confronted by clients needing buildings for which there was no architectural precedent, and he was challenged to find appropriate architectural expression for these buildings. He began using Queen Anne Revival in his School Board designs in the 1890s.[70] He followed the precedent of Board schools in London, led by Robson, who advised that the Queen Anne Revival style was particularly appropriate because it was disassociated with the church, was flexible to site and plan, and cheap because it was executed in brick.[71] In its principal elevations to the south east and south west, and its entrance hall and stair, the library building is a fine illustration of this style.

The derivation of the overall form of the library is also a good illustration of architectural thinking in the early twentieth century. The footprint is a curious wedge shape that was derived from the limitations of the site itself. Brierley was clearly well aware of developments in architecture at the end of the century, including ideas that seem to have emerged from the Arts & Crafts movement

---

[67] English Heritage *National Heritage List Entry: Museum Gardens, York* (2000)
[68] Bergdoll, B. *European Architecture 1750-1890* (Oxford University Press: 2000) p. 244
[69] English Heritage *National Heritage List Entry: Museum Gardens, York* (2000)
[70] Nuttgens, P. *Brierley in Yorkshire: the architecture of the turn of the century.* (York Georgian Society: 1984) p. 17
[71] Robson, E. R. *School architecture: being practical remarks…* (London: John Murray, 1874) p. 339

concerning organic design, and *Beaux-Arts* concerns of the integration of a functional plan with a symmetrical form. The library is a free plan, but symmetrical, focussed on its function as a library, with clear distinctions between circulation space and reading rooms, and arranged into a footprint entirely generated by the shape of the site. This organic response was common to the best architects of the period, including Lutyens to whom Brierley is often compared.[72] The library is a good illustration of many of the influences of architectural thinking in the early twentieth century.

Associative

The associative value of the site in this period is **medium**, and derived from the recognition of the importance of the site and the protection of its structures, the archaeological activity, and the building of the library.

Following the early nineteenth century antiquarian interest in the site, when initial action was taken by the Yorkshire Philosophical Society to protect the heritage value of the site, the structures were finally awarded statutory protection in 1922. The city walls, including the Roman remains and the Multangular Tower, were scheduled as an Ancient Monument in April 1922, under the Act of Parliament 1913. [73] This is a very important moment in the history of the site, as it marks a watershed in the understanding of the heritage value of the walls and their environs in the city of York. The same structures, including the ruins of St Leonard's Hospital, were also listed in 1954, affording them additional statutory protection.

The site also has historical associative value because of the amount of archaeological investigations which took place at various points in the twentieth century. The sheer number and extent of the excavations shows how important the site had become. The excavations also show the changing nature of archaeology, from the antiquarianism of the nineteenth century, to a modern scientific approach. Perhaps the best indicator of this change in attitudes is the scandal caused by the unsupervised digging out of character area D in the 1960s, and the destruction of the archaeology.

The building of the library in this period has historical associative value because of the firm of architects, Brierley & Rutherford. This firm had a prolific output at the end of the nineteenth century and early twentieth. The practice was largely confined to Yorkshire and the north east, with other commissions coming through the personal connections of Brierley himself and recommendations. They produced excellent quality, modern designs, and there are myriad buildings that function and look well, by this firm. They generally lack the inspirational quality of contemporaries like Lorimer and Lutyens, but are none the less of value. Despite this however, there is very little information available on the firm and they are not well known. The practice is worthy of more research than has previously been attempted. As discussed in the previous section, the library design brings together many threads of contemporary architectural thinking, but in a very modest way, creating a highly functional and well designed building.

The building of the library has its own historical associative value, as it was the last public library in the country to be primarily funded by a grant from the Carnegie Trust, the philanthropic trust who had funded the building of public libraries in the United Kingdom from the 1880s.

---

[72] Watkin D. *A history of western architecture* (3rd ed. London, Lawrence King: 2000) p. 632
[73] RCHME *Defences*. p. 33

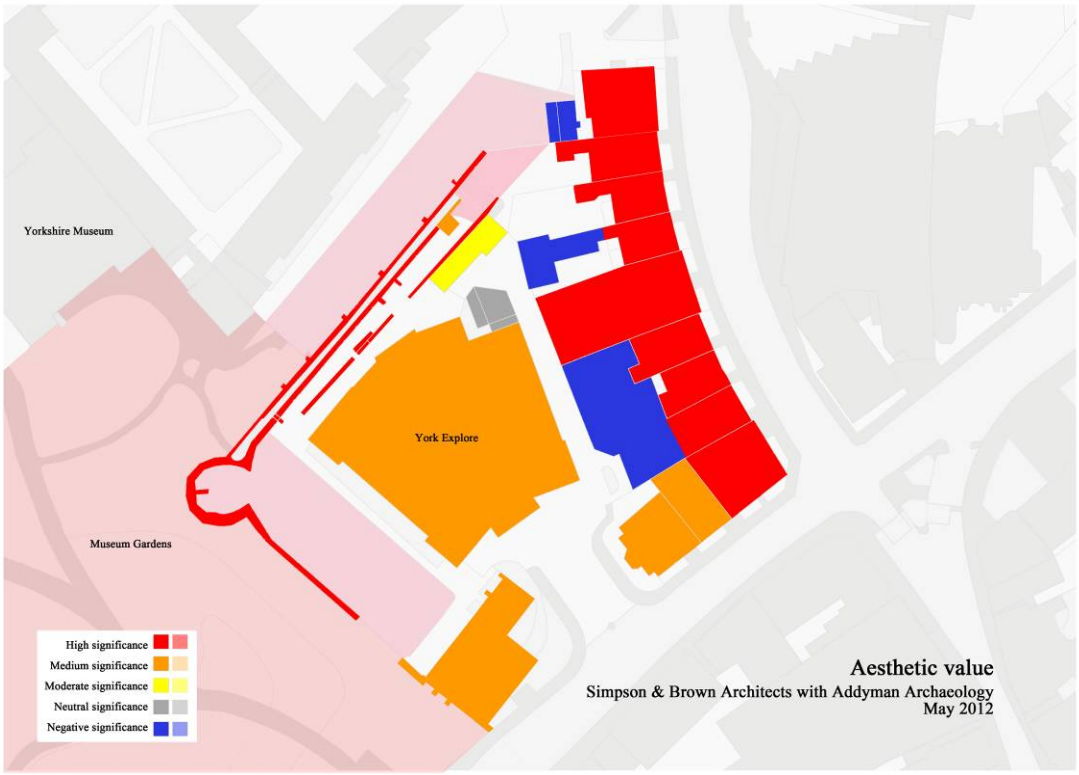
From the period of the Second World War, there is associative historical value of the library being used as part of the civil defence. An air-raid shelter was dug into the library lawn, destroying the archaeological deposits in that area. However, physical evidence of the civil defence occupation of the library has disappeared, and the air-raid shelter demolished. This connection is of value because it shows the extent to which the war effort affected all aspects of the built environment, not just through the effects of enemy attack.

6.4 Aesthetic Value

> *'Aesthetic value derives from the ways in which people draw sensory and intellectual stimulation from a place.*
>
> *Aesthetic values can be the result of the conscious design of a place, including artistic endeavour. Equally, they can be the seemingly* fortuitous *outcome of the way in which a place has evolved and been used over time. Many places combine these two aspects…'*
>
> 'Design value *relates primarily to the aesthetic qualities generated by the conscious design of a building, structure or landscape as a whole. It embraces composition (form, proportions, massing, silhouette, views and vistas, circulation and usually materials or planting, decoration or detailing, and craftsmanship…)… Strong indicators of importance are quality of design and execution, and innovation, particularly if influential...'*
>
> *'Some aesthetic values are not substantially the product of formal design, but develop more or less fortuitously over time, as the result of a succession of responses within a particular cultural framework...'*
>
> *'Aesthetic value resulting from the action of nature on human works, particularly the enhancement of the appearance of a place by the passage of time ("the patina of age"), may overlie the values of a conscious design.'*[74]

The Mint Yard has a contrasting mix of elements, buildings and structures, in varying styles, colours and textures, and it is perhaps in these contrasts that the site overall gains much of its aesthetic value. Some of these contrasts are intentional and some are not, and *Conservation Principles* usefully divides them into designed and fortuitous aesthetic value. It is not unusual in the city of York to find contrasts between medieval structures and eighteenth or nineteenth century buildings, but it is only in the Mint Yard area that the contrast is extreme and includes dramatic standing Roman remains, with medieval additions and a mannered early twentieth century library. It is this contrast that creates much of the overall aesthetic value of the site.

[74] EH *Conservation principles*. pp. 30-31



6.4.1 Roman (71 – c410)

Design value

The designed aesthetic value of the Roman period is **high**. The walls replaced the previous timber palisade, and were well designed both to appear impressive to prospective attackers and the civilian *colonia*, and to act as an effective defence. To create the visual impact, the walls were designed with colour contrasting materials, magnesian limestone ashlar *saxa quadrata*, and two red stripes of brick, only one of which survives. The upper course certainly survived in the eighteenth century as it is shown in Drake's 1736 coloured view of the walls.[75] This simple design would have been conspicuous from a distance. Though the design of the Multangular Tower was practical, intended to command views of the walls both to the south east, and north west, the ten-sided plan is essentially decorative, as round towers would have provided the same view. This adds to the design value of the structure as it was not purely practical. When completed, the fortress was one of the most visually imposing in the Roman Empire.[76]

Fortuitous aesthetic value

The Roman remains are of **high** fortuitous aesthetic value because they are rugged and dramatic in the context of the modern city and provide a backdrop to the Museum Gardens. The extent of their survival is unexpected and a pleasing surprise to the visitor. The Multangular Tower is an aesthetically appealing structure that became of interest to artists and photographers from the early nineteenth century onwards. The stretch of Roman wall running south east of the Multangular Tower is

[75] Drake, F. *Eboracum: of the history and antiquities of the city of York…* (London: 1736). pl. 57
[76] RCHME *Eboracum.* p. xxxiii

aesthetically attractive and acts as a backdrop to Museum Gardens. The Roman sarcophagi are clearly a curiosity to visitors, and contribute much to the aesthetic effect of an ancient site of a mysterious past civilisation.

6.4.2 Sub-Roman period (c410-c450) and Anglian period (c450 to 867)

Design value

The aesthetic design value for this period is **moderate**, as the Anglian Tower is the sole upstanding structure from this period. It was clearly designed, and not merely thrown up, because it has a square plan and semi-circular headed doorways, with a vaulted ceiling. It straddles the Roman walls, and was probably erected to plug a breach. The fact that it survived being buried under later ramparts shows that it was built well. However, there was little concern for design values in the building, which is built in rough rubble.

Fortuitous aesthetic value

The sub-Roman remains are of **moderate** fortuitous aesthetic value, as the ruin of the Anglian Tower is unexpected and something of a curiosity. However, it is not particularly attractive or striking in the context of the Mint Yard site.

6.4.3 Anglo-Scandinavian period (867 - 1066)

There is **no aesthetic value** for this period as there are no standing remains. The value for this period is primarily evidential.

6.4.4 Norman period - later 11th & 12th centuries

Design value

There is **medium** aesthetic design value for this period, as it is in this period that the earliest parts of St Leonard's Hospital were built, then known as St Peter's, and survive as part of the Theatre Royal. The remaining arches and vaults were well designed to support the first floor of the building, which may have been a guest range, and employ pointed vaulting. Gothic pointed arches and vaulting was a very practical method of spanning space in the later medieval period. Semicircular arches are always in proportion of 1 to 2, one being the height of the arch and half of the width of the span. This means that the wider the span, the higher the arch. Pointed arches do not have this proportional constraint, and can be wider than their neighbour without being taller and vice versa. The stones are smooth ashlar, and intended to look good.

Fortuitous aesthetic value

The fortuitous aesthetic value of the elements from this period is **high.** The medieval masons never intended the vaults to be part of another building, and the chance discovery of the arches and vaults embedded in the fabric of the theatre is both surprising and exciting. There is a sense that the history of the place, which appears to be a nineteenth-century theatre, is much richer, stretching back into the medieval period.

6.4.5 Later medieval period to the Reformation – 13th to mid 16th centuries

Design value

There is **high** aesthetic design value in this period, as it is in this period that the medieval city walls and the fragment of St Leonard's Hospital were built.

The remains of St Leonard's Hospital are of particular aesthetic design value. This is largely derived from the surviving vaults in the former pend and undercroft. They were very well designed to support the first floor structure, and employ pointed vaulting. As discussed above, the pointed arch system was very flexible in spanning different distances without creating proportional variations in height. In the vaults, where the highest points of the ceiling are the same throughout, there are two different widths of arch, a wider double aisle, flanked by two narrower aisles.

Though gothic arches were a very practical method of spanning space in the later medieval period, it was also recognised that they could be embellished to provide decoration. In particular, the vaulting in the pend shows this kind of embellishment, with multiple colonnettes and cluster piers that are not necessary for structure. All of the stone is smooth ashlar, intended to look good.

Like their Roman predecessors, the medieval city walls were intended to look impressive to prospective attackers and the civilian population of the city, as well as being an effective means of defence. The walls are constructed in roughly dressed magnesian limestone, with pointed cope stones. These two elements were practical, the dressed finish intended to prevent the walls being scaled easily by attackers and the pointed copes to shed water from the wallhead. However they also have the intended aesthetic effect of making the walls appear strong and well fortified, and built by a wealthy and well-organised city. The arrow-loops and internal relieving arches in the Multangular Tower also have aesthetic value, intended to be practical, and pleasing in their repeating design.

Fortuitous aesthetic value

The fortuitous aesthetic value of the elements from this period is **high.** The remains of St Leonard's Hospital are particularly dramatic with the high standing chapel gable facing Library Square, and being situated on what has become a key point on the route to York Minster from the station. It contrasts with the surrounding buildings and structures because it is a ruin, and it is different in scale. The structure bears the marks of centuries of use and reuse, with the evidence of vanished ribs, vaults and buttresses, and there is a rich patina of age and a sense of a connection to the past. The entrance pend is perhaps the most interesting part, however this experience is rendered less pleasant as the pend leads nowhere, and the undercroft vaults are not adequately protected from vandalism, especially graffiti.

By contrast, the city walls have a different character of age, and a different fortuitous aesthetic value. From the outside in character area C, they appear comparatively clean, fresh and intact in contrast to the ruins of St Leonard's Hospital, and they must have looked similar when they were newly completed. The walls are aesthetically attractive commanding a high position on their rampart, seen from the Museum Gardens.

6.4.6 The Reformation to the 17th century

There is **no aesthetic value** for this period as there are no standing buildings. The value for this period is primarily evidential.

6.4.7 18th century

There is **no aesthetic value** for this period as there are no standing remains. The value for this period is primarily evidential.

6.4.8 19th century

Design value

There is **high** aesthetic design value for this period, as it is in this period that the Museum Gardens was laid out, St. Leonard's Place was formed, and the clutter of buildings and structures accumulated in the Mint Yard and around the ruin of St. Leonard's Hospital were cleared.

The Museum Gardens are a designed landscape in the former precincts of St Mary's Abbey, land acquired by the Yorkshire Philosophical Society from 1827.[77] The 1840s design by the Scottish horticulturist, Sir John Naesmyth, was intended to create a coherent landscape to unite the diverse interests of the Yorkshire Philosophical Society's antiquarian membership.[78] The area had been developing as a botanical garden in the precincts of a medieval abbey, and the design was intended to unite botany and horticulture in the specimen plant, shrubs and trees, and archaeology and history in the medieval remains of the abbey.

It was carefully designed in the picturesque manner, with paths meandering through the landscape, to provide changing views of the landscape. The design took advantage of the existing historical ruins and used them to catch the eye, including the City Walls, Multangular Tower, the Roman wall and St Leonard's Hospital. Naesmyth was approached for a design in 1844,[79] the same year that Sir Joseph Paxton provided the design for Birkenhead Park, recognised as the first specifically designed public park in the United Kingdom.[80] The Birkenhead Park design has similarities to Naesmyth's Museum Gardens with serpentine paths influenced by the picturesque, and contemporary developments in English landscape design.

The grand terrace of buildings on St. Leonard's Place, unlike most of the streets in York that existed when it was built in the 1830s, was a very carefully controlled design. The design emerged as a result of a lack of interest from developers in the plots on the new street. In 1834, after the road itself had been built, York's Recorder offered to take a plot on the condition that his architect, John Harper, be engaged by the council to create a unified façade design for the west side of the street.[81] The buildings in most streets in York in the early nineteenth century, had developed piecemeal over the centuries, where as the new street of St Leonard's Place was designed as a single composition for the entire street. The palace façade was a method of making the houses look very grand externally, as part of a single monumental and palatial design. The buildings are pleasingly detailed internally and externally in a modest Greek Revival style.

---

[77] English Heritage *National Heritage List Entry: Museum Gardens, York* (2000)
[78] English Heritage *National Heritage List Entry: Museum Gardens, York* (2000)
[79] English Heritage *National Heritage List Entry: Museum Gardens, York* (2000)
[80] Bergdoll, B. *European Architecture 1750-1890* (Oxford University Press: 2000) p. 244
[81] Fawcett *George Townsend Andrews of York.* p. 30

As part of the growing recognition of the importance of the Mint Yard and its rich collection of standing remains, the buildings and structures that had organically developed around the remains of St Leonard's Hospital and the city walls, were gradually cleared away in the early nineteenth century. The 1831 proposal drawing for St Leonard's Place shows a confusion of buildings, but the 1852 first edition Ordnance Survey shows them all cleared away.

Fortuitous aesthetic value

There is **moderate** fortuitous aesthetic value of the elements established in this period. This is derived from the maturing of the landscape and planting, established in this period. The trees around the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital contribute to the value, as the gardens break into the streetscape. All of the other elements, the Museum Gardens, including its landscape setting, and the development of St Leonard's Place were willed and designed, and are therefore of aesthetic design value.

6.4.9 20th century to the present

Design value

The aesthetic design value of the elements in this period is **medium**. The major designed change to the site after the nineteenth century, was the building of the library. The Queen Anne Baroque Revival style was carefully chosen by Brierley as appropriate architectural expression for a relatively new building type, the public library. In his Board school buildings at the end of the nineteenth century, Brierley followed the precedent of Board schools in London, led by Robson, who advised that the Queen Anne Revival style was particularly appropriate because it was disassociated with the church, was flexible to site and plan, and cheap because it was executed in brick.[82] It is also essentially a very English style, details and materials being based on buildings from around the time of the reign of Queen Anne in the early eighteenth century, and often incorporating English vernacular elements, like half timbering. Brierley, following other architects of the period like Shaw, extended his use of the style from private houses and schools, to institutional buildings, including the Northallerton Town Hall.

The library design is very pleasing, with two principal façades, the other elevations with no stone dressings. The volume of the design is well proportioned to the adjacent open spaces of Library Square and the library lawn, though aesthetically and functionally unconnected to the latter. This is not a fault of the design, but the lack of landscaping, presumably following the gift of the area to the city by the Yorkshire Philosophical Society in 1961.[83]

The library is carefully designed to occupy the site in a very organic manner, and is well oriented to Museum Street. Its' designed setting is enhanced by the contemporary railings, which focus the view from the street, and also surround the ruins of St Leonards's Hospital. There is a carefully conceived contrast between the library entrance façade and the gable wall of the St Leonard's Hospital chapel, and the south west elevation and the Roman walls. This contrast is one of the most interesting aesthetic aspects of the site in the townscape.

---

[82] Robson, E. R. *School architecture: being practical remarks…* (London: John Murray, 1874) p. 339
[83] English Heritage *National Heritage List Entry: Museum Gardens, York* (2000)

The 2010 re-landscaping of Library Square to form an improved forecourt to the library is well designed. It improved the former car-parking area with a poor relationship to the library entrance façade, to a semi-pedestrianised civic space, with designed modern benches and a bound gravel surface.

Fortuitous aesthetic value

There is **no fortuitous aesthetic value** for the elements in this period. All of the elements are more important for their designed aesthetic value.

6.5 Communal Value

> *'Communal value derives from the meanings of a place for the people who relate to it, or for whom it figures in their collective experience or memory…'*
>
> 'Commemorative *and* symbolic *values reflect the meanings of a place for those who draw part of their identity from it, or have emotional links to it. …Such values tend to change over time, and are not always affirmative…'*
>
> 'Social value *is associated with places that people perceive as a source of identity, distinctiveness, social interaction and coherence...'*
>
> *'They may relate to an activity that is associated with the place, rather than with its physical fabric...'*
>
> *'Compared with other heritage values, social values tend to be less dependent on the survival of historic fabric.'*
>
> *'Spiritual value… includes the sense of inspiration and wonder that can arise from personal contact with places long revered, or newly revealed.'*
>
> *'Spiritual value is often associated with places sanctified by longstanding veneration or worship, or wild places with few obvious signs of modern life.'*[84]

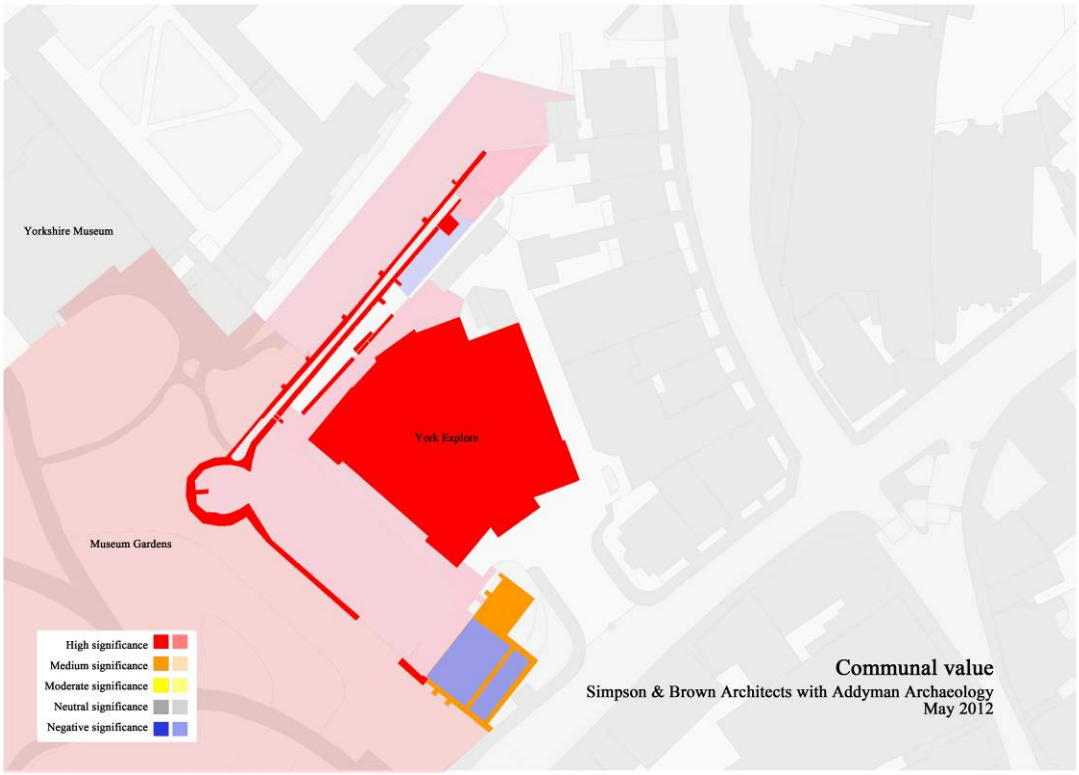
The Mint Yard today is a richly used area of the City of York with high communal value. All of the features of the site were established in the past, but it is what they have become to mean now to users, and ways that they could be interpreted for people today that contributes to communal value. The site is in a highly visible and central location, seen and used by many passing tourists and residents alike.

6.5.1 Roman (71 – c410)

Commemorative and symbolic

The communal symbolic value for this period is **high** as the fortress which was arguably designed to symbolise the might of the Roman Empire, because of its unique state of preservation, still communicates this impression. The value has changed over time as the Roman Empire no longer exists and our appreciation of the value is essentially historic, as of past civilisation.

[84] EH *Conservation principles*. p.31



The Roman elements are also signifiers of the long established history of the City of York and contribute to drawing tourists to the city in the twenty-first century. The medieval walls incorporating their Roman elements, have become an essential symbol of York as one of the few cities to retain its walls.

Social value

The communal social value for this period is also **high**. The *colonia* of Eboracum was one of the most important civilian towns in Roman Britain,[85] and this, combined with the fact that the Roman remains are the earliest on the site, show that the York has been an very important settlement for over two thousand years, and continues to be so today.

The archaeological remains and historical associations from this period are of very high educational value for increasing understanding about the Romans in Britain, and for teaching about Roman defensive architecture.

The Multangular Tower was an iconic antiquarian monument from the late seventeenth century when it was illustrated by Martin Lister.[86] The structure was of considerable fame and seems also to have inspired some architectural schemes in the eighteenth century, such as Hawksmoor's antique walls within the designed landscape of Castle Howard. In the nineteenth century, it was the subject of many early photographs.

Spiritual value

[85] RCHME *An inventory of the historical monuments in the City of York: volume I, Eboracum*. p. xxxvi

[86] Lister M. *Transactions of the Royal Society of London*, referred to in Wenham, P. *The great and close siege of York* (Kineton: Roundwood Press, 1970). p.112

The communal spiritual value for this period is **moderate** due to the presence of Roman sarcophagi. These connect the site to the spiritual practices of the Romans. This spiritual value, like the symbolic value of the walls symbolising the might of the Roman Empire, has changed over time and is now an essentially historic value.

6.5.2 Sub-Roman period (c410-c450) and Anglian period (c450 to 867)

There is **no communal commemorative and symbolic, or spiritual value** for this period as there are no remaining structures.

Social value

The communal social value for this period is **medium** as there is educational potential in the ruin of the Anglian Tower in teaching about the continued occupation of the Roman fortress before the arrival of the Vikings, and how buildings were built in the period.

6.5.3 Anglo-Scandinavian period (867 - 1066)

Commemorative and symbolic

There is **no communal commemorative and symbolic value** for this period as there are no remaining structures.

Social value

The communal social value for this period is **moderate** as the presence of the Viking remains show that the site remained an important settlement, as it became the chief settlement in their kingdom of north Britain. The present day popularity of the Jorvick Viking Centre gives the site some added communal social value, as anything connected to the Vikings has social cachet and resonance.

Spiritual value

The communal spiritual value for this period is **neutral.** St Peter's chapel was founded in the tenth century, and subsequently grew to prominence as a monastic hospital in the next chronological period. This value has changed over time, as there is now no physical evidence to indicate the location of this chapel, and the spiritual value is essentially historic.

6.5.4 Norman period - later 11th & 12th centuries

Commemorative and symbolic

The communal commemorative and symbolic value for this period is **moderate** as the monastic hospital building of St Peter's would have been a symbol of the medical care administered by the monks. This value has changed over time, as the institution no longer exists, and the value is essentially historic. The medieval walls built in this period, have become an essential symbol of York in the twenty-first century as one of the few cities to retain its walls.

Social value

The communal social value for this period is **moderate** as there is educational potential in the ruins of St Leonard's Hospital in teaching about the functioning of

monastic hospitals in general and St Leonard's Hospital in particular. The ruins could also be used in teaching about architecture in this period.

Spiritual value

The communal spiritual value for this period is **neutral.** St Peter's chapel was replaced by a church dedicated to St Leonard in this period, but as there is now no physical evidence of the location of this structure, the spiritual value is essentially historic.

6.5.5 Later medieval period to the Reformation – 13th to mid 16th centuries

Commemorative and symbolic

The communal commemorative and symbolic value for this period is **high** because of the city walls and the ruins of St Leonard's Hospital. These elements are now signifiers of the long established history of the City of York and contribute to drawing tourists to the city.

Social value

The communal social value for this period is **high** as there is educational potential in the ruins of this period. St Leonard's Hospital could be used in teaching about monastic hospitals, and the city walls in teaching about the functioning of medieval cities, and York in particular. The ruins could also be used in teaching about architecture in this period, and are part of the identity of modern York.

Spiritual value

The communal spiritual value for this period is **medium** as the liturgical east gable wall of the chapel of St Leonard's Hospital stands to full height. As it is no longer an active chapel this value is diminished but not vanished, as the architectural fragment is still distinctly that of a chapel.

6.5.6 The Reformation to the 17th century

There is **no communal commemorative and symbolic, or spiritual value** for this period as there are no remaining structures.

Social value

The communal social value for this period is **moderate** as the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital potentially could be used in teaching about the Dissolution of the Monasteries in this period.

6.5.7 18th century

There is **no communal commemorative and symbolic, or spiritual value** for this period as there are no remaining structures.

Social value

The communal social value for this period is **moderate.** Towards the end of the eighteenth century, walking the walls became popular with tourists.[87] Tourists now

[87] RCHME *Defences.* p. 30

form one of the major social groups to which the site and indeed the city of York is oriented.

The Theatre Royal was also built in this period. This building, subsequently much altered, remains an important public building in York, both for performing arts and as a place that people meet and socialise.

6.5.8 19th century

There is **no communal commemorative and symbolic, or spiritual value** for this period as there are no remaining structures within the core site boundary. There is some associated communal symbolic value with the scientific buildings in the Museum Gardens, then leased by the Yorkshire Philosophical Society. For example, the museum and observatory buildings symbolise the rise in the popular interest in natural history and science in the period. They are monuments both to the gentlemen amateurs and later professional men of science in the society who built them, and an interested public that they knew would visit them.

Social value

The communal social value for this period is **high** with the development of the Museum Gardens from the 1830s by the Yorkshire Archaeological Society. It is now a very well-used amenity and city park. As it is a route between Museum Street and Marygate, it is well used by pedestrians as a thoroughfare. The gardens are also an access to the Yorkshire Museum at all times of the year. It is an important open space in the city.

The space that is now the library lawn was also created in this period. It is sheltered, secluded and south-facing, and is used by local people who know it exists, particularly in fine weather. The area is usually calm and quiet, and never as busy as Museum Gardens.

The elements from this period could also be used in teaching about landscape design and the appearance of urban parks in this period.

6.5.9 20th century to the present

Commemorative and symbolic

The communal symbolic value for this period is **medium** derived from the library. The building is a symbol of the philanthropy of the Carnegie Trust who funded its building. This trust was important in the development of libraries across the United Kingdom, as they funded building programmes from the 1880s.

The Queen Anne, English Baroque Revival style of the library building is also symbolic. It was chosen to express the secular nature of the educational resource, and also expresses national identity, as it is a uniquely English style.

There is symbolic value in the 2010 changes to the library, from being known as the Central Library to York Explore. The extensive changes to the interior of the library included the opening up of spaces and the removal of much of the purpose-designed original library furniture and joinery. This is because this was perceived to be symbolic of what libraries were in the past, and did not symbolise appropriately the modern purposes of a library. The refurbished interior of the main non-fiction library, café and children's library incorporating modern fixtures and fittings and some adapted original furniture, is intended to symbolise an open and accessible resource, and a welcoming destination where a visitor might spend time. This was

dispel an apparent impression that the library was an esoteric and exclusive resource for the educated elite, and only a book store from where books could be borrowed.

Social value

The communal social value for this period is **high.** The building of the library in this period provided York with a major pubic amenity. The more recent change of the library to York Explore, with the intended relocation of the city archives to the building, means that the building not only has high significance as an amenity to local people from a wide variety of social backgrounds with a similarly wide variety of needs, but also to scholars and researchers.

The library lawn also has social value as it is used by local people and library users, particularly in fine weather, where it benefits from being south facing, and sheltered. It has a tranquillity that is absent in Museum Gardens, and it would be unfortunate if this were lost in the future.

There is negative social value with the antisocial behaviour concentrated and sheltered in the north west part of the site in character area D, and under the vaults of St Leonard's Hospital.

All of the elements and interventions in the site from this period have educational potential now in teaching about archaeology and conservation in the twentieth century.

Spiritual value

There is **no communal spiritual value** for this period in the buildings or structures on the site.

6.6 Summary Matrix

HERITAGE VALUE	Roman	Sub-Roman and Anglian	Early Medieval/Anglo Scandinavian	Norman 11th and 12th centuries	Late Medieval 13th century to Reformation	Reformation to 17th century	18th century	19th century
EVIDENTIAL	First earth rampart phase Masonry phase Archaeological potential of lawn Stone sarcophagi	Anglian Tower Minor sub-Roman Construction methods Quarry source Mortar mix in Anglian Tower	Earth ramparts and palisade Foundation of St Leonard's Hospital	St Peter's Church possibly outside site Earth rampart Remains under library lawn and elsewhere Remains under Theatre Loose stones in vaults and Museum Gardens Second earth bank	City Walls St Leonards' Church St Leonard's Hospital ruin Stone from hospital and Abbey City Walls	Minor repairs Alterations to earlier structures Evidence of Seige of York 1643-4 Site of the Royal Mint: name of the area	Fragments of stables buildings Widening of Museum Street: destruction of part of St Leonard's Hospital City ownership of site	1839 tunnel Fragments of stables buildings Mews Building Breaking through of Roman wall for stables access St Leonard's Place built Museum Street and St.Leonard's Place
HISTORICAL	Roman occupation of Britain Roman defences Roman masonry construction and materials	Uncertain construction date Lack of sites to compare	Earth ramparts and palisade Caring for the sick	Mint Yard area granted to hospital Lack of relationship to St Mary's Abbey Relationship to River Ouse Power: one of three great institutions of York Medieval hospital as a social service	National importance of York Consolidation of a major institution Power: one of three great institutions of York Medieval hospital as a social service	Private owners Residences in former monastic hospital Antiquarian interest Civil war damage Picturesque/Antiquarian views	Building of Theatre Royal Stable Yard Private annexation Preservation of City Walls and tourism Antiquarian interest	Anglian Tower discovered & cleared 1830 William Etty & Walter Scott preserve City Walls York Philosophical Society and Museum Gardens Antiquarian interest and excavations Mews Buildings
AESTHETIC	Upstanding remains to south east Brick bonding course Dominating façade towards *colonia*				City walls Multangular Tower extension Hospital remains			Picturesque/Antiquarian paintings and views Context of St Leonard's Place Museum Gardens constructed The ruin of St.Leonard's Hospital
COMMUNAL	Roman masonry remains Influence of Roman fortress walls Roman sarcophagi	Unique survival of Anglian Tower Development of the site		City management: defence, financial, social Medieval history: St Leonard's Hospital Medical history	City management: defence, financial, social Medieval history: St Leonard's Hospital Medical history Hanging out space Graffiti and damage	Royal mint moves to St Leonard's		Town planning: building St. Leonard's Place History of conservation Antiquarian movement Laying our of Museum Gardens

KEY
High significance
Medium significance
Moderate significance
Neutral significance
Negative significance

6.7 Summary of Significance

6.7.1 Summary Statement of Significance

The previous sections of this conservation plan have divided the site of the Mint Yard area into standing structures, separate elements and open space, and examined them in detail to asses the elements individually and collectively for cultural heritage value. Overall the site is of high significance, and much of this is derived from the rich layering of heritage values that pertain to the site. These four sets of values – evidential, historical, aesthetic and communal – combine to define the character of the place.

The high evidential value of the site is particularly concentrated in the Roman, and late medieval periods, with the other periods of lesser value as many archaeological deposits have been destroyed by later human action. The most important distinct elements include the legionary fortress, the Anglian Tower, the medieval city walls and St. Leonard's Hospital, with high potential for further evidence in other unexcavated areas of the site.

The high historical value of the site is concentrated in the Roman and sub-Roman periods, with the later medieval period and the nineteenth century. The other periods are of lesser value because there are fewer surviving elements associated with them. The initial enclosure of the space by the carefully designed walls of the fortress defined the site and this part of the city. The historical significance of St Leonard's Hospital is exceptional for its high status and social function in the medieval city, its great size in medieval England, and its longevity at around 500 years. The use of the former hospital buildings as the Royal Mint between the mid sixteenth and early seventeenth centuries is however also important, because it gave the site its name. The development of the area in the nineteenth century by the Yorkshire Philosophical Society as the Museum Gardens is of high value as it largely characterises the area now, and this early antiquarian interest ensured its preservation.

The high aesthetic value of the site is largely derived from the Roman, later medieval and nineteenth structures and landscapes. These elements, which include the standing Roman and medieval structures, and the Museum Gardens, were each originally designed to meet a functional and aesthetic requirement. There are wide contrasts in the site between the different architectural styles and distribution of buildings, and their organic fit, some of which was intended and some of which was fortuitous.

The high communal value derives from origins in the Roman period, with some in the later medieval period, and much in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. The Romans began by defining boundaries to the site that shaped its development, and the development of the city as a whole. The later medieval walls in many ways performed a similar function, and have continued to represent that early importance and success of the city, that continues to thrive today. The nineteenth century development of the Museum Gardens and the twentieth century building of the library itself, provided the people of York with two highly valuable assets which continue to be well used and important in the communal life of the city.

To conclude, the Mint Yard is a site of ancient origins which has high evidential, historical, aesthetic and communal value. It is especially significant for its Roman and later medieval remains. It is significant that they were important to the laying out of the Museum Gardens in the nineteenth-century, which demonstrated the

growing appreciation in that period of the evidential, historical and fortuitous aesthetic value of the remains.

The Roman defences strongly influenced the development of York and they are rare nationally on account of their above-ground survival, and decorative architectural character.

The site occupies a key position in York on the main tourist route between the railway station and the Minster. There is the potential for tensions to arise between the protection and presentation of the remains and the maintenance of the aesthetic values embodied in the adjacent Museum Gardens designed landscape, of which the remains form a key visual element. In the overall context of York, the Mint Yard site shares some of its values with other areas of the city, but there are none where each of the values is so highly represented, or so concentrated in a single site.

The site is also of very high significance today for its public use by service users of the library and tourists to the remains.

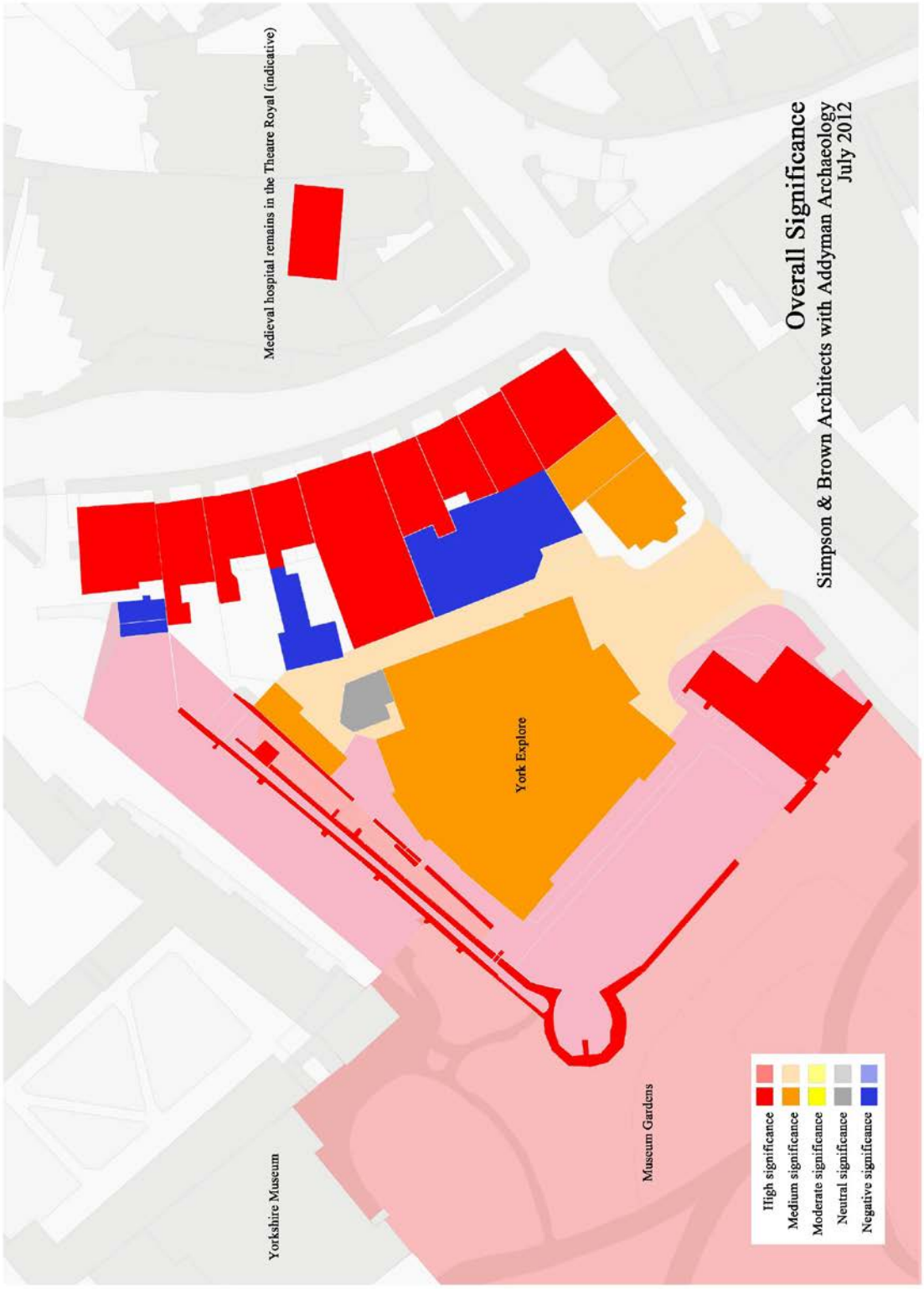
The Mint Yard site is of **high cultural significance overall**, with exceptional inter-relationships between different chronological periods and cultural heritage values.

6.7.2 Grading of significance

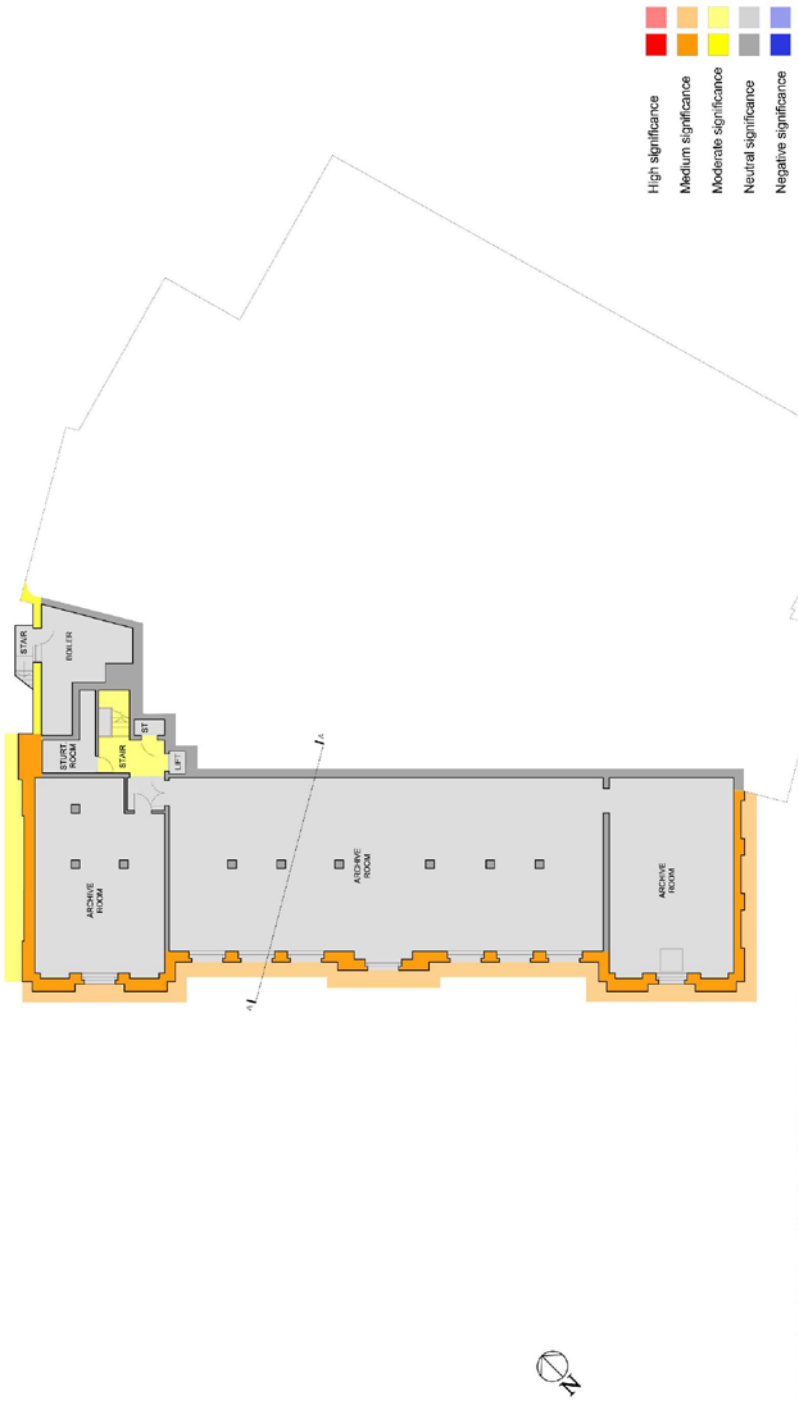
The various elements of the site have been graded to assist with guiding decisions about future conservation and management. The decisions on significance grading have been based on the previous assessment of heritage value and statement of significance. The definition of these grades has been arrived at by discussion with English Heritage.

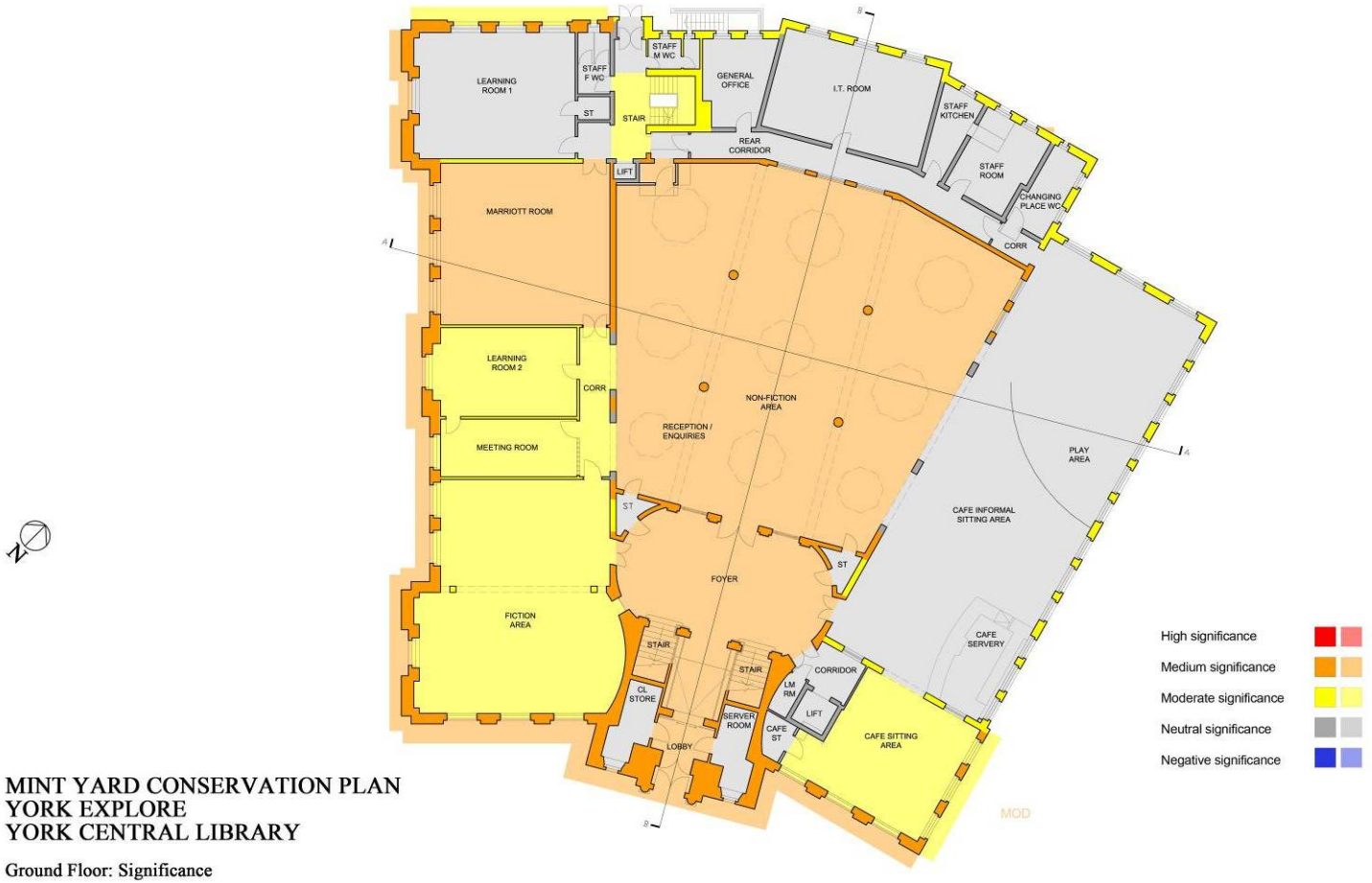
High Significance
Critical to an understanding of cultural significance
Medium Significance
Important to an understanding of cultural significance
Moderate Significance
Part of an understanding of cultural significance
Neutral Significance
Could be enhanced to provide understanding of cultural significance
Negative Significance
Detracts from an understanding of cultural significance

6.7.3 Significance Plan of the Site



6.7.4 Significance Drawings of York Explore Building

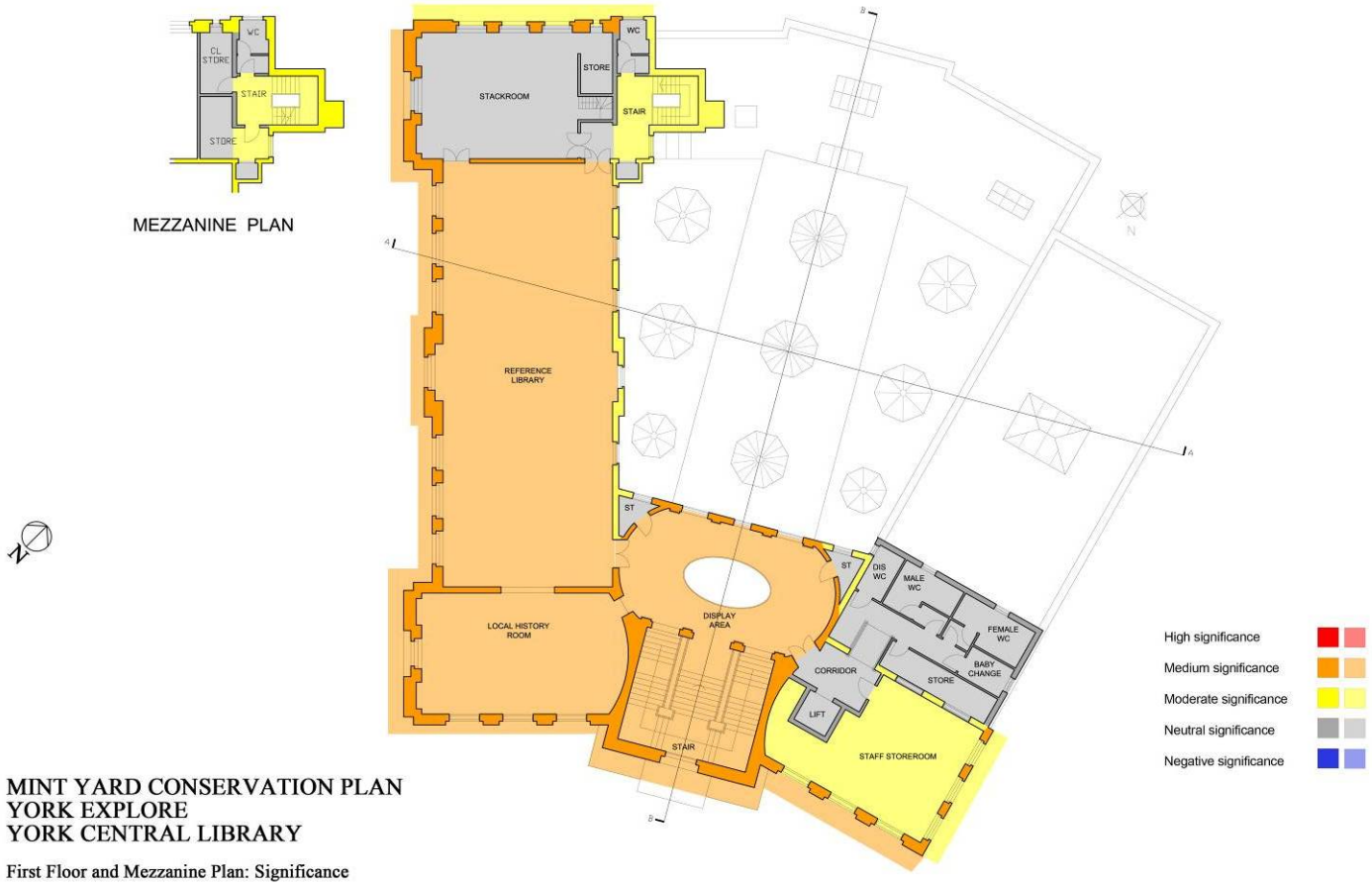




MINT YARD CONSERVATION PLAN
YORK EXPLORE
YORK CENTRAL LIBRARY

Ground Floor: Significance

Based on a drawing by City of York Property Services
Scale 1:100 @ A1/1:200 @ A3 Simpson & Brown Architects/Addyman Archaeology April 2012



MINT YARD CONSERVATION PLAN
YORK EXPLORE
YORK CENTRAL LIBRARY

First Floor and Mezzanine Plan: Significance

Based on a drawing by City of York Property Services
Scale 1:100 @ A1/1:200 @ A3 Simpson & Brown Architects/Addyman Archaeology April 2012

7.0 CONSERVATION ISSUES

7.1 Introduction

The majority of structures within the Mint Yard site appear to be in good condition, however there are some that have been identified as requiring substantial repair and conservation work.

7.1.1 Vulnerability

Some parts of the site are more vulnerable to decay or damage than others. As a roofed building, York Explore/Central Library is relatively easy to maintain because it still has the surfaces designed to shed water in place.

However, some of the most significant parts of the site are also the most vulnerable. The Roman walls to the north west and south west of York Explore are freestanding walls without protection. Freestanding masonry is always vulnerable to the action of rainwater and frost. Walls which are not protected by roofs are generally saturated and will decay, slowly. The water which saturates the wall causes decay by freezing and thawing. These walls also support weeds and other vegetation which tends to decay the wall through the action of roots and organic acids.

Apart from the normal action of water and frost decay, these walls are the subject of causal vandalism. It is ironic that the archaeological, historical and educational value of these walls to our society, in the case of the walls to the west of the library, have left them more vulnerable following excavation and exposure for forty years, than at any time since the fortress fell into decline around 1600 years ago.

As a further freestanding masonry structure, St Leonard's Hospital shares the same vulnerability as the Roman walls. The hospital building and the stones within it are the subject of casual vandalism at present.

The highly significant buried archaeology is less vulnerable than the upstanding Roman walls. This is partly in reaction to the perhaps misguided wholesale removal of archaeological deposits around the Roman walls in the relatively recent past. But also because there are now well considered legislative controls in place to protect the archaeological deposits that remain *in situ*.

The York Explore building is vulnerable to leaks from the roofs, some of which have evidently damaged internal paint finishes. The construction, which uses concrete rather than timber in many places, means that the building is less vulnerable to decay through water ingress than many buildings of a similar scale. The building is vulnerable to damage by a disaster, such as a fire.

Changes are currently being planned to the York Explore building. These changes include a new block on the upper floor of the north east wing, a small link block between the new construction and the upper entrance hall, and alterations to other rooms within York Explore. As long as they are designed with care, York Explore is not necessarily vulnerable to these changes. This is because the proposed extensions will be almost invisible from the main views of the building, and its significant elevations to the forecourt and Library Lawn. The location of the proposed extensions is also in a part of the building built most recently, and of the lowest design quality from the outside. It could be argued that the proposals are an opportunity to enhance the significance of York Explore in design terms, and access, as they will increase the use of the building.

Options for alterations to the other structures within the Mint Yard site are considered as part of the work in this conservation plan. If implemented, they will also change the appearance and moisture content of the significant walls, for instance by introducing new materials such as lime, and the removal of cement. The internal moisture content of the structures would begin slowly to lessen, allowing the structure to dry out. The options for alterations to protect these remains are a reaction to the identified vulnerability of highly significant walls but they need to be designed with care so they do not further damage the vulnerable structures that they are intended to protect.

In this conservation plan, a matrix showing the perceived vulnerability of structures has been prepared. This is because the site is unusually complex with a variety of buildings and remains with different histories and conservation requirements.

7.2 Statutory & Non-Statutory Constraints

7.2.1 Listed Building and Scheduled Ancient Monument Consents

For listed and scheduled buildings and structures, appropriate consent is required prior to any programme of repair, conservation or alteration works. Consent is granted by the local authority, advised by English Heritage. EH is a statutory consultee on Listed Building Consent applications for Grade I and II*, and buildings at Grade II owned by the LA.

Several of the Mint Yard structures are Scheduled Ancient Monuments (SAM) and are also listed. In these cases, SAM consent takes precedence over Listed Building Consent. However, Planning Consent, granted by the council will still be required in most cases.

English Heritage has published the following guides:

Scheduled monuments: a guide for owners and occupiers (2009)

This guide explains the implications of scheduling for the owners or occupiers of scheduled monuments and summarises the main provisions of the *Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act 1979 As Amended*.[88] SAM consent is primarily processed by English Heritage.

Building regulations and historic buildings (2004)

This document is an interim guidance note on the application of Part L building regulations, balancing the needs for energy conservation with those of building conservation.[89]

The setting of heritage assets (2011)

This document sets out English Heritage guidance on managing change within the settings of heritage assets, including archaeological remains and historic buildings, sites, areas, and landscapes.[90]

---

[88] http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/scheduled-monuments-guide-for-owners-and-occupiers/

[89] http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/building-regulations-and-historic-buildings-balancing-the-needs/

[90] https://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/setting-heritage-assets/

See appendix of this conservation management plan for National Heritage List entries.

7.2.2 Registered Parks and Gardens

Museum Gardens is identified on the register of parks and gardens. The boundary is shown in the national heritage list entry in the appendices of this conservation plan.

The register is managed by English Heritage and is taken into account when proposals are assessed for an identified area due to their recognised level of importance as a designed landscape.

7.2.3 Tree Preservation Orders

Trees in conservation areas like the York Central Historic Core conservation area, are protected. If any felling or repair is proposed for a tree in a conservation area, the owner must give the council six weeks notice using the Tree Works Application Form. If permission is not given, a Tree Preservation Order (TPO) may be placed on the tree.[91]

There are various specimen trees in the Museum Gardens which are recognised as unusual or important varieties. They do not have different statutory protection from other trees in the area, as they are sufficiently protected by the conservation area and the Grade II listing of the gardens as a registered park and garden.[92]

7.2.4 National Planning Policy Framework

On the 27th March 2012, the National Planning Policy Framework was published, setting out the Government's planning policies for England. This supersedes previous documents relating to planning, including Planning Policy Statement 5 (PPS5), which itself superseded *Planning Policy Guidance 15: Planning and the Historic Environment* (PPG15) (1994), and *Planning Policy Guidance 16: Archaeology and Planning* (PPG16) (1990). However the Practice Guide that accompanies PPS5 is still recommended by EH: "The references in the document to PPS5 policies are obviously now redundant, but the policies in the NPPF are very similar and the intent is the same, so the Practice Guide remains almost entirely relevant and useful in the application of the NPPF."[93]

---

[91] http://www.york.gov.uk/environment/Parks_and_open_spaces/Tree_and_hedgerow/Trees_in_conservation_areas/)

[92] There is a competent tree strategy presented in section 5.4 of *St Mary's Abbey Precinct York: conservation management plan* Bertram Hyde Ltd, Gifford, Donald Insall Associates (2005)

[93] http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/pps-practice-guide/ Accessed: May 2012

7.2.5 City of York Development Control Local Plan[94]

This document (1998 with fourth set of changes April 2005) states that "a high priority will be given to the protection of the historic character and setting of York" and "the most critical elements contributing to the historic character of York are the core of historic buildings within and immediately adjacent to the City Walls". Policies relevant to the Mint Yard site are as follows and should be consulted:

- Policy HE2: Development in Historic Locations
- Policy HE3: Conservation Areas
- Policy HE4: Listed Buildings
- Policy HE5: Demolition of Listed Buildings and Buildings in Conservation Areas
- Policy HE9: Scheduled Ancient Monuments
- Policy HE10: Archaeology
- Policy HE12: Historic Parks & Gardens

The site is within the conservation area designated as the Central Historic Core. It is also in the City Centre Area of Archaeological Importance.

> *The Conservation Area mainly defines the old City of Roman, Viking and Medieval York, for the most part contained inside the ancient City Walls. The Conservation Area was first designated in 1968 and extended in 1975 (after public consultation) to include the Bars and Walls themselves, their approaches and surroundings which contained Georgian, Regency and Victorian buildings.*

In 2011, detailed assessments of this conservation area were made in *York central historic core: conservation area appraisal.*[95] This remains in draft form at time of writing (April 2013), but the wider study area of this report is examined as area 4, 'Museum Gardens and Exhibition Square'.

Policies HE2 and HE3 in the Local Plan sets out the policy regarding development within conservation areas in York. HE3 permits only development that has no adverse affect on the character and appearance of the area. In addition Policy HE5 relates to the demolition of Listed Buildings and Buildings in Conservation Areas.

Area of Archaeological Importance

The centre of York, under the 1979 Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act, is designated as being an Area of Archaeological Importance (AAI), one of only five historic centres so designated. This designation provides a statutory investigating authority (York Archaeological Trust) with statutory access to observe, record or undertake an investigation of archaeological remains that could be

---

[94] http://www.york.gov.uk/environment/Planning/Local_Plan/View_the_local_plan/ Accessed: May 2012

[95] http://www.york.gov.uk/info/200560/conservation_areas/94/york_central_historic_core_conservation_area_appraisal_final_draft

destroyed during development. York's Local Plan supports this designation with policy HE10.

Parks and Gardens of Special Historic Interest

English Heritage also holds a national Register of Parks and Gardens that are of special historic interest in England. The purpose of this record is to recognise the existence of sites that are of particular historic importance. It will ensure that the features and qualities that make the landscapes of historic interest are safeguarded during ongoing management or change by raising awareness of their value and encouraging the people involved with them to recognise and protect this value.

The Museum Gardens are registered as Grade II, indicating that they are of national importance. The extent of the site is shown on the national heritage list entry in the appendix of this conservation plan. The description of the site includes the stretch of Wall from St Leonard's Hospital to the Multangular Tower, the Tower itself and the parts of the City Walls within the Museum Gardens' boundary stretching to the north east towards St Leonard's Place.

Local authorities are required to make provision for the protection of the historic environment in their policies and their allocation of resources. Local planning authorities must, when determining whether or not to grant permission for development, take into account the historic interest of any site on the Register.

York's Local Plan includes a policy regarding the protection of these sites:

Policy HE12: Historic Parks & Gardens

Proposals affecting historic parks & gardens will be permitted providing they have no adverse effect on the character, appearance, amenity, setting or enjoyment of the park or garden.

Policies Relating to the Natural Environment

Bats have been sighted at several places along and near to the Walls. Any repairs including timber treatment, reslating of roofs, pointing of walls or use of excessive artificial lighting, could threaten bat roosts. It is up to anyone doing work to satisfy themselves that bats will not be encountered during works. All bats and their roosts are fully protected by the *Wildlife & Countryside Act 1981* (*as amended by the Countryside and Rights of Way (CRoW) Act 2000*) and the *Conservation (Natural Habitats etc.) Regulations 1994*. In addition *The Planning and Policy Guidelines (October 1994, Nature Conservation DoE, PPG9)* make the presence of a protected species a material consideration when a local planning authority is considering a development proposal, which if carried out, would be likely to result in harm to the species or its habitat. *The Town and Country Planning Act 1990* requires local plans to include policies in respect of the conservation of the natural beauty and amenity of the land and the improvement of the physical environment. The relevant local policies set out in the Local Plan include:

NE6: Species Protected by Law

Where a proposal may have a significant effect on protected species or habitats, applications will be expected to undertake an appropriate assessment demonstrating their proposed mitigation measures. Planning permission will only be granted for development that would not cause demonstrable harm to animal or plant species protected by law, or their habitats. The translocation of species or habitats will be an approach of last resort.

NE7: Habitat Protection and Creation

Development proposals will be required to retain important natural habitats and, where possible, include measures to enhance or supplement these and to promote public awareness and enjoyment of them. Within new development measures to encourage the establishment of new habitats should be included as part of the overall scheme.

NE8: Green Corridors

Planning permission will not be granted for development, which would destroy or impair the integrity of green corridors (e.g. river corridors, roads, railway lines, cycleways, etc).

7.2.6 English Heritage Guidance

Introducing Easy Access to Historic Buildings (2004)

Easy Access to Historic Buildings is a substantial update of a document first published in 1995 to help owners and architects find solutions to the access problems of their historic buildings, monuments and landscapes. The guidance advises primarily on proposals affecting listed buildings, but the principles and advice are applicable to all historic buildings and landscapes. It considers the challenges and constraints posed by buildings such as shops, offices and civic buildings, as well as those open to the public as historic attractions.[96]

Easy Access to Historic Buildings (2004)

These guidelines focus on physical access issues because these often pose the greatest challenges as well as opportunities for historic buildings.[97]

BsEST Practice 1 - Principles of Conservation Practice: Engineering the past to meet the needs of the future (2008)

This paper is the first in a series of information guides aimed at providing "easy to understand" advice on the most appropriate conservation and installation principles for incorporating building services into historic or traditionally constructed buildings, many of which will be listed.[98]

Technical guides

English Heritage also offers the following technical guidance for specific building elements and materials:

- *Soft capping historic walls (2009)*[99]
- *External Lighting for Historic Buildings (2007)*[100]

---

[96] http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/introducing-easy-access-to-historic-buildings-2004/
[97] http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/easy-access-to-historic-buildings/
[98] http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/bsest1-principles-of-conservation-practice/
[99] http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/soft-capping-historic-walls/
[100] http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/external-lighting-for-historic-buildings/

- *Door and Window Furniture (1997)*[101]
- *Draughtproofing and Secondary Glazing (1994)*[102]
- *Metal windows (1997)*[103]

In addition, SPAB offers the following guidance:

- *Repair of Ancient Buildings (1995)*[104]
- *Repointing Stone & Brick Walling (2002)*[105]

7.3 Ownership, Management & Use

See Figure 77.

7.3.1 Visitors and Tourists

As an open space attraction figures are not available for the number of visitors to the Mint Yard area. In the fiscal year ending March 2012, York Explore received 518,511 visits according to entry counter records.

7.4 Condition

7.4.1 Central Library/York Explore

A condition survey of the Central Library was prepared by the LHL Group for the City of York Council in 2008. The report considered the exterior but did not include a survey of the interior. The interior has been partly repaired and redecorated during the major refurbishment programme that created York Explore

The recommendations arising from the inspections were divided into two main priorities;

- Priority 1 – urgent work to be carried out in the short term
- Priority 2 – work to be carried within a period of five years

The priority 1 works were generally items which are causing actual harm to the building fabric which required urgent attention to prevent further damage. However, the consequent damage from leaks is less severe than in most buildings due to the use of concrete in the roof construction. The building is regularly maintained.

---

[101] http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/door-and-window-furniture/
[102] http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/draughtproofing-and-secondary-glazing/
[103] http://www.english-heritage.org.uk/publications/metal-windows/
[104] http://www.spab.org.uk/online-shop/the-bookshop/?sSubCategory=Other
[105] http://www.spab.org.uk/online-shop/the-bookshop/?sSubCategory=Technical%20Pamphlets%20and%20Guides

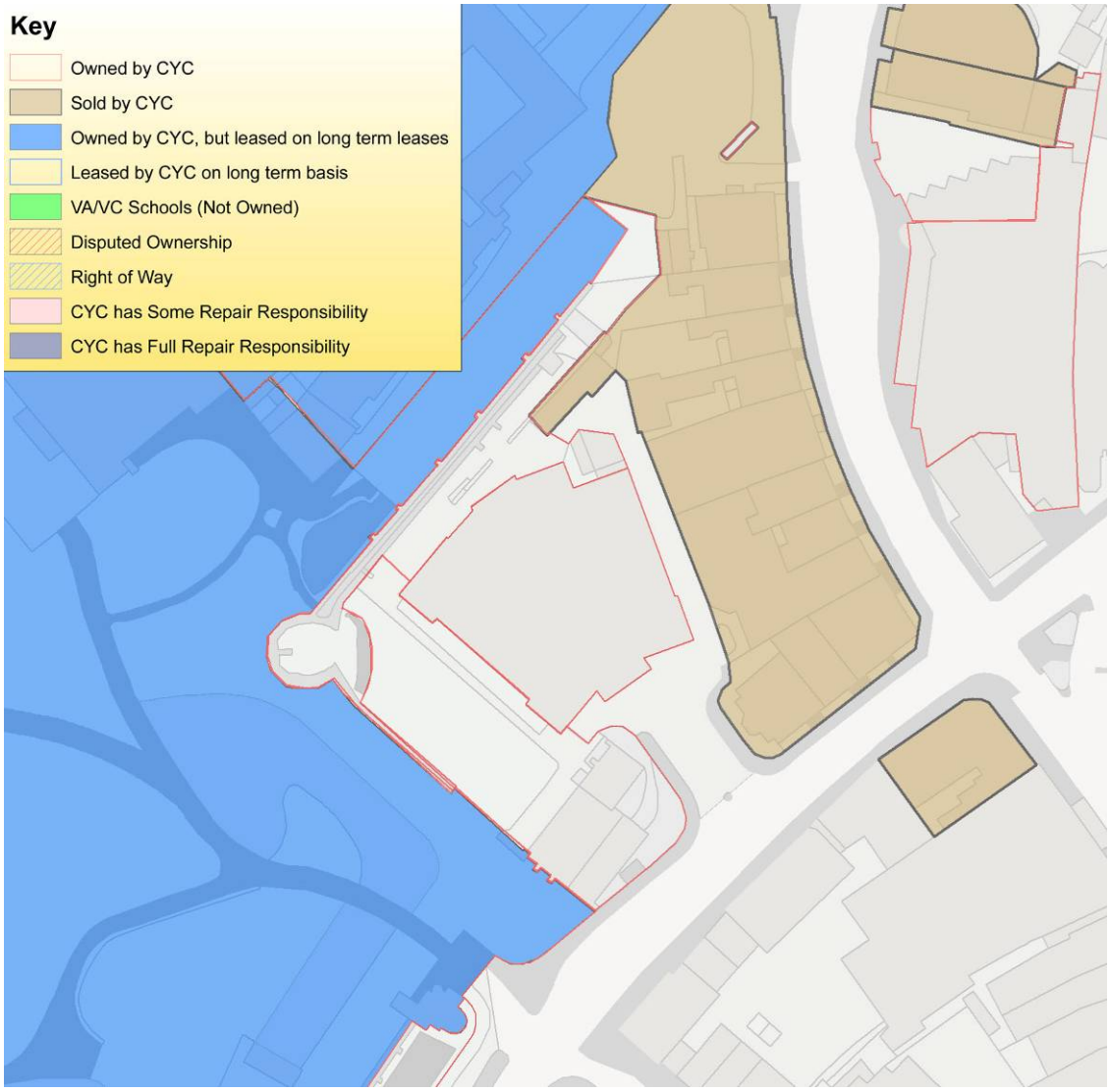


Figure 77 Plan showing ownership. *City of York Council*

The report identified a significant amount of work required to the roofs. Most of the flat roofs were recommended for removal of the existing asphalt surface and replacement with a new similar material. Some of the slated pitches were also noted as being in fairly poor condition and needing short term repair involving taking off the slates, repairing the substrate and reslating, reusing as many of the existing slates as possible. The lead flashings and gutters also needed replacement and were mainly included in the Priority 1 works. The condition survey provided the opportunity for considering installing insulation. This omission is regrettable.

The recommended repairs to the walls were not as comprehensive or as high cost as the roof works. The walls generally were assessed as being in good condition and the works noted were a large number of relatively minor repairs. The metal windows required overhauling including some removal of rust, removal of excess paint layers and repainting. Many of the concrete lintels were noted as having cracks or surface damage caused by rusting reinforcement.

The report suggested that a more detailed appraisal by a structural engineer was needed.

The report had indicative costs for each item. The total cost of the recommended works in both priorities was £473,000 excluding fees and VAT. The figure included a provisional allowance for unspecified structural repairs. This cost includes some works which will be superseded by the planned extension above the north block to accommodate the archives.

Repairs were carried out to the external envelope of the building as part of the 2009/10 refurbishment project to create York Explore. The most urgent of the asphalt roofs was renewed along with some associated flashings. On the external walls, some of the cracking and spalling lintels were renewed. Not all the Priority 1 work was done and no Priority 2 work was carried out. Using the amounts in the report as a guide for comparison, work to the estimated value of £81,000 was carried out. This is approximately 17% of the total value of the repair work recommended in the 2008 condition report.

It is possible that the urgency of repairs was overestimated in the 2008 report. The building does not look to be in significantly worse condition than it was in 2008 even thought the majority of urgent repairs have not been carried out. The lack of an internal survey or photographs is unfortunate because it means that it is not easy to monitor if the peeling paint in the upper floor rooms in the south block is more extensive now than it was in 2008. The overall condition assessment made for this conservation plan suggests that the recommendations for repair in the 2008 condition assessment are sound and that a considerable amount of work is still required to the roofs of the building to bring them to a condition where they can be easily maintained.

7.4.2 Roman and Medieval City Walls

The condition and rate of decay of the archaeological remains to the north west of York Explore is a serious concern. The remains have weeds growing on them and their roots are tending to decay the original mortar. Mortar will be subject to frost damage. Some of the mortar used for repointing in the 1970s is missing and, where it survives, looks to have been at least part cement mix. The wallheads are unprotected, saturated and covered with moss. Some stones along the head of the Roman wall are falling off and there were fresh broken stones lying on the ground at the time of the inspection. More significantly, some of the tile course has been cracked and damaged by frost caused by water saturation.

The masonry of the multangular tower is in better condition. The wallheads are not well protected and have weeds and moss on them. The rate of decay of this masonry is probably relatively slow but some work is required to improve the wallhead protection, probably by rough racking but possibly by turf topping.

The wallhead of the Roman wall to the south east of Library Lawn is not protected adequately and there is saturated masonry, moss and weeds along its full length. Better rough racking, protection or turf topping is required. At the lower level on the library lawn side, the condition of the masonry is poor.

7.4.3 St Leonards Hospital

The ruin of St Leonard's Hospital needs some repair.

The two downpipes on the west side are inadequate and overflow during heavy rain. This is saturating masonry below them and in both areas the masonry is supporting weeds and ferns. Along the eastern side is a cast iron gutter with two downpipes. During heavy rain this gutter has water dripping over it for almost its full length. It

has weeds and silt in it which should be cleared out urgently. This gutter will be prone to blockage because trees pass over it. Considerable improvement to the rainwater disposal from the upper level and drainage below is necessary.

At the foot of this side are two trees next to the telephone boxes which come very close to the wall. These trees may be self-seeded. Their roots will be growing under the wall, and may cause undermining in the future. They should be cut away. This might mean that the tree closest to the telephone box should be felled.

Although the masonry is heavily eroded in places it should be left with as few indents as possible. Stone should only be indented where it is either affecting the structural capacity of the wall or it is conducting water into the interior stone. In this case, even if it were conducting water into the interior this defect would probably be dealt with by pointing rather than by indenting.

The offsets formed by missing stones support moss and weeds and should be repointed and possibly have slates bedded in mortar that covers the ledge discreetly to provide a weathering surface. On the plinth there is a build up of moss.

On the east side of the north projecting block there is further weed build-up at the sill of the northern upper window. The line of the asphalt at this sill detracts from the appearance of the building. At the south east corner facing eastwards is an offset which is supporting weeds and grass.

Figure 78 Photographs of graffiti April 2012, subsequently removed.

The south side faces Museum Gardens. This side is in good condition with some weeds growing up from the lower level.

In the block to the north there is an attractive probably 19th century door. The hinges on this door and the latch are rusted and should be repainted. The latch has lost its ring which should be reinstated.

Within the main vaulted space, the walls have been damaged by graffiti. This has largely been cleaned off leaving some marks still in place. There is some minor pen graffiti on some of the loose stones. The loose stones are vulnerable for theft as well as damage. The metal grilles in the window and the grates and doors in the north are in fair condition and kept well painted. It is assumed that the fixings into the masonry are either stainless steel or other non-ferrous metal.

To the east of the entrance arch is some pipe and redundant cabling which should be stripped out. Within the pend, the condition of the masonry is good. There is some minor graffiti.

7.4.3 Mews Building

The condition of these buildings is not particularly good. They have been maintained but are relatively lightweight buildings. The roofs are intact and the ridge copes appear to have been rebedded recently on the northern block. The leadwork on the southern part needs replacement. These should be replaced using tingle straps. There is distortion in the roof of the southern block which suggests some movement in the roof structure.

7.5 Archaeological Issues

The below-ground archaeology that still survives within the Mint Yard project area is generally not under threat, it being protected by overlying deposits and structures, and its preservation subject to statutory controls as already outlined. The principal potential threat must be in relation to new works that may be proposed for the site in relation to the variety of schemes suggested in the options appraisal – these affecting St Leonard's and the excavated inner rampart area to the NW, and ground-works associated with the extension of York Explore / Central Library building.

Figure 79 Plan showing archaeological excavations to date, marked in purple.

7.5.1 Introduction

The principal threat to the archaeology of the Mint Yard project area is to the standing monumental remains, particularly to the masonry remains of the legionary fortress and the Anglian tower whose masonry is less robust and considerably older than medieval remains at the site. The poor condition of many of the walls is self-evident having suffered from a combination of poor maintenance, general water ingress and moisture concentration, this exacerbated by the past employment of cement-based repair and consolidation, vegetation growth and physical damage, very often through vandalism. The change in ambient conditions from 1600 years of burial, to partial exposure as a consolidated ruin, will also be the source of a range of particular conservation issues.

7.5.2 Below Ground

An assessment of the probable extent of survival of below-ground archaeological remains within the Mint Yard area has been undertaken as part of this conservation plan. As noted the potential threats will primarily be from any proposed works.

St Leonard's ruin

There is particular vulnerability in the area of the ruin of St Leonard's. Within the undercroft area very significant archaeological remains lie close to the present gravelled surface. Ground reduction in this area may have considerable impact on these. Likewise any proposed structural additions to the ruin – stair towers, etc. will likely involve some impact on buried remains.

Inner rampart area to the NW

Any ground-works associated with possible new building in the area of the excavated inner rampart will almost inevitably encounter highly significant buried archaeology (generally Roman) in most areas.

York Explore / Central Library

Ground-works associated with proposed new construction at the former Central Library building have the potential to impact buried archaeological remains. Though there was certainly extensive impact of existing archaeology when the library was built in the 1920s and 30s, it is nevertheless probable that much may still remain at lower level in the areas not disturbed by cellarage and deep foundations. Monitoring of engineers' test trenching against the E exterior wall of the building revealed very deep deposits (well over 2m, natural not encountered) though much of this appeared to be made ground. Nonetheless it is likely that archaeology, particular from earlier periods, especially Roman, will still survive in many areas.

Rampart to NW

There is little particular threat to the existing city wall rampart bounding the site area to the NW. However it is clear that the rampart top has been reduced in the past (particularly along the exterior wall foot of the city wall) and that the significant archaeology of the rampart internal structure will be very close to the surface. Any additional excavation will likely direct impact such remains.

7.5.3 Standing Buildings and Structures

Fortress wall to the SW - interior

The interior face of the walling of the SW perimeter is in particularly poor condition, this exposed to the wall core in most areas. Having been intended to be covered by an interior rampart this area was never faced with the *saxa quadrata* facing seen elsewhere. Localised repairs have generally failed and there is much active decay, spalling and loose masonry evident. Vegetation growth is particularly noticeable in this area.

Fortress wall to the SW (exterior) and Multangular Tower

The exterior face of the Roman SW wall section, and the interior and exterior faces of the Multangular Tower – areas that are faced with *saxa quadrata* stonework - are more stable generally. However the long-term efficacy of the extensive pointing / re-bedding in cementitious mortars should be re-examined. The exterior of the Multangular Tower in particular has seen extensive re-bedding of facings and many areas of patching – both historic and more recent.

Fortress wall to the NW

The partly exposed areas of the legionary fortress wall to the NW are also in poor condition. These have seen extensive consolidation in c1970 using cement-based materials. Here there is extensive evidence for saturation and considerable vegetation growth in many areas. The interface between the buried parts of the wall and the parts that are exposed must be a particular point of concern as moisture, salts, etc. will particularly concentrate here. The interior face of the wall, again of coarse construction where the rear rampart had overlain it, is of particular concern. This section of fortress wall must be seen as particularly at risk.

Anglian Tower

The Anglian Tower is in very poor condition and at considerable risk. The structure is saturated, with moisture concentration exacerbated by the employment of cement-based mortars used for its repair. The W angle saw an extensive area of reconstruction using cement-bedded stonework that has introduced a rigid element that may be causing localised stress to the structure. The structure has seen repeated vandalism, causing physical damage, and general mis-use, often being regarded as an informal urinal (concentration of sulphates may also even be a conservation issue).

The Oolitic Limestone used in the tower's construction is softer than the Magnesian Limestone generally seen elsewhere and has clearly suffered from localised decay, spalling, etc. Similarly the original mortar of the tower is notably soft – a less robust mix than that employed on the adjacent fortress walling (the excavator of the tower in 1969/70 noted its softness and general poor condition when first exposed)., its quality also doubtless also affected by long burial over 1500 years. There is continuing apparent decay where areas of this mortar are exposed.

Medieval walls - upstanding

The upstanding medieval city walls are generally in good condition and have been long maintained. The ubiquitous repair / localised re-bedding in cementitious mortars are likely to represent a long term threat to their integrity. The effectiveness of the structural underpinning of the wall to the NW should be reviewed by a structural engineer but seems generally stable. There is localised failure of the underpinning along the exterior face, particularly towards the Multangular Tower,

with some indications of localised structural movement. Recent ground reduction of the rampart top externally in this area may have exacerbated the vulnerability of this area.

Medieval walls to NW – excavated area

There are a number of sections of medieval or early post-medieval walling within the excavated inner rampart area to the NW. To reveal the Roman remains the rear faces of these later sections of walling were exposed – these had generally been built against the existing earth rampart with little attempt at facing – when exposed by excavation these wall areas saw extensive consolidation and deep pointing with cement-based materials. This is now in poor condition and, in some areas, there is extensive vegetation growth.

Proposed works – St Leonard's ruin

New works to the St Leonard's infirmary ruin have the potential, no matter how well-considered, to cause some damage to the historic masonry. For example, removal of past cement-based repairs, fixing points, potential removal of the bitumen surfacing of the upper level, etc. will all cause some damage to historic fabric of greater heritage value.

Proposed works – excavated inner rampart area to the NW

Potential threat to the integrity of the monumental remains within the area excavated in c1969-70 are in relation to proposed new works that may be suggested by the options appraisal. If a new structure is proposed for this area there may be a potential impact on the monumental remains – the installation of fixing points, support structures, new footings, etc.

A further threat will be general repair to the monument which, however benign, will inevitably result is some loss of original fabric – particularly early mortars.

7.5.4 Carved stones

There are assorted individual stones around the site – carved medieval architectural fragments and, in particular, Roman sarcophagi. These are important individually and have generally not been maintained or protected. The Roman sarcophagi within the Multangular Tower, most of which have been there since the 19th century, have seen some decay and physical damage. The group of sarcophagi at the NW end of Library lawn have been recently placed there, this process evidently having cause some physical damage and breaks, and this group is particularly vulnerable.

Medieval carved stones within the site area include column sections, bases and capitals from Romanesque structures (the earlier part of the infirmary and a reconstructed fragment from the Theatre Royal within the undercroft). The latter, re-erected within the undercroft, has been directly affected by vandalism.

7.5.5 Roman oven base

The oven base recovered from Miller's 1920s excavations, re-sited upon a concrete base against the inner side of the fortress SW wall, is in particularly poor condition, having suffered from general decay processes during long exposure, physical damage and vandalism. The re-bedding of the remains in cement-based mortars has also clearly been detrimental.

7.6 Collections and Archives

The collections are currently managed by York City Council and the proposals will provide satisfactory safe and secure management and movement of items in the collection, as well as storage in a new extension to the library building.

The collections should be considered as part of a Risk Management and Action Plan for a review of the existing arrangements and for the ongoing management and care of the collections. This should include a disaster management plan for the library building and collection, key issues, recommendations and actions.

All staff involved in the care of the library and archive should be involved in the completion of the Risk Management and Action Plan so that they can fully understand and adopt the plan long term. Education of new staff will also be essential.

7.7 Vulnerability matrix

HERITAGE VALUE	Roman	Sub-Roman and Anglian	Early Medieval/Anglo Scandinavian	Norman 11th and 12th centuries	Late Medieval 13th century to Reformation	Reformation to 17th century	18th century	19th century	20th century to the present
EVIDENTIAL	First earth rampart phase Masonry phase Archaeological potential of lawn Stone sarcophagi	Anglian Tower Minor sub-Roman Construction methods Quarry source Mortar mix in Anglian Tower	Earth ramparts and palisade	St Peter's Church possibly outside site Earth rampart Remains under library lawn and elsewhere Remains of St Peter's Hospital under Theatre Loose stones in vaults and Museum Gardens	City Walls St Leonards' Church St Leonard's Hospital ruin Stone from hospital and Abbey	Minor repairs Alterations to earlier structures Evidence of Seige of York 1643-4	Fragments of stables buildings Widening of Museum Street: destruction of part of St Leonard's Hospital	1839 tunnel Fragments of stables buildings Mews building Breaking through of Roman wall for stables access St Leonard's Place built	Air raid shelter Building of library: destruction of ground archaeology
HISTORICAL	Roman occupation of Britain Roman defences Roman masonry construction and materials	Uncertain construction date Lack of sites to compare	Foundation of St Leonard's Hospital Earth ramparts and palisade Caring for the sick	Second earth bank Mint Yard area granted to hospital Lack of relationship to St Mary's Abbey Relationship to River Ouse Power: one of three great institutions of York Medieval hospital as a social service	City Walls National importance of York Consolidation of a major institution Power: one of three great institutions of York Medieval hospital as a social service	Site of the Royal Mint: name of the area Private owners Picturesque/Antiquarian views Antiquarian interest Civil war damage	City ownership of site Building of Theatre Royal Stable Yard Private annexation Preservation of City Walls and tourism Antiquarian interest	Museum Street and St.Leonard's Place Anglian Tower discovered & cleared 1830 William Etty & Walter Scott preserve City Walls York Philosophical Society and Museum Gardens Antiquarian interest and excavations Mews Buildings	Last example of a Carnegie library Walter Brierley's practice Open access lending library Clearance and display of Roman and Medieval Walls Death of archaeologist Radley Use of the library & lawn during the Second World War Change from library to York Explore
AESTHETIC	Upstanding remains to south east Brick bonding course Dominating façade towards *colonia*				City walls Multangular Tower extension Hospital remains			Picturesque/Antiquarian paintings and views Context of St Leonard's Place Museum Gardens constructed The ruin of St.Leonard's Hospital	Library built in three places Example of Brierley's public buildings style
COMMUNAL	Roman masonry remains Influence of Roman fortress walls Roman sarcophagi	Unique survival of Anglian Tower Development of the site		City management: defence, financial, social Medieval history: St Leonard's Hospital Medical history	City management: defence, financial, social Medieval history: St Leonard's Hospital Medical history Hanging out space Graffiti and damage	Royal mint moves to St Leonard's		Town planning: building St. Leonard's Place History of conservation Antiquarian movement Laying our of Museum Gardens	Library Archives Tourism Interpretation of archaeology and hanging out areas Amenity area

KEY
Highly vulnerable
Quite vulnerable

8.0 CONSERVATION POLICIES

8.1 Introduction

There are a number of reasons for the preservation of an area, site or building and its setting on cultural grounds. These cultural factors have been identified and assessed using English Heritage's system of evidential, historical, aesthetic and communal value.

The aim of this conservation plan is to encourage and inform the repair, conservation and enhancement of the site using the principles of current best conservation practice. This part of the conservation plan provides a set of policies, or guidelines, that aim to inform the future management and use of the site and buildings. The policies are in accordance with the assessed level of significance for the site and its component parts. Adoption of the policies by the owners, managers and users of the buildings and structures will enable the retention and enhancement of significance for the buildings and their setting for the future.

8.2 Resolution, Vision & Adoption

The library, St Leonard's Hospital and the Roman and Medieval Walls form an ensemble of high significance.

Policy 1: Resolution

The Mint Yard Area of York is recognised as a major heritage asset. A conservation-led approach to the future repair, conservation and management should be acknowledged and continued by all stakeholders, based on a sound understanding of its significance.

A firm resolution to act in a conservation-led way must be taken to ensure the principles of conservation are key to its future. This basic policy should encourage the protection and enhancement of the significance of the site and the reduction of risk to fabric, character and setting.

Policy 2 - Vision

Through active and informed conservation, enhancement and interpretation, the Mint Yard area should continue to be an attractive and integral part of the City of York. The structures, buildings and landscape should have a full use either as a part of the purpose of the city or in the interest of their conservation.

This vision for the buildings has been developing over recent years. It has resulted in the current proposals to extend the York Explore building to include the archives. This logical relocation of the archives from York Art Gallery to a more appropriate home is a clear reaction to an overall vision for heritage in York. Part of the reason for locating the archives at Mint Yard is that the site area demonstrates an extraordinarily visible cross section of the history of York from Roman occupation through to the present day. It is very appropriate that the City of York should be sponsoring new architecture as an addition to one of its most important public buildings very close to the most tangible remains of the foundation of York. The Mint Yard area encapsulates history, particularly in the defence and civic management of York over an extraordinarily long period in British history.

A conservation-led approach is not currently consistently being applied across the site. And not all the buildings and structures are used or interpreted to their full potential. There are obvious and understandable reasons for this which are partly

due to the opportunities for change and the funding available. This conservation plan was considered as part of an attempt to make a holistic vision for the whole site and to ensure that all of the significant parts are intelligently and carefully protected and enhanced in the same way as the project to house the archives at York Explore.

Policy 3: Adoption

This conservation plan should be adopted by relevant stakeholders and actively used to help guide the future of the Mint Yard site.

Adopting the plan establishes a formal arrangement and allows policies within the plan to be actively used to help protect and enhance what is important. It places an onus on the council staff and museum trust to use the plan in day-to-day and strategic decisions about its future.

8.3 Conservation Theory and Practice

Conservation theory is well established in Britain with a history of its own extending back over 200 years. It arose from the Romantic and Antiquarian Movements of the 19th century, both of which found expression in the Mint Yard area at an early stage. There is also plenty of experience about the application of conservation theory and practice within York and within relevant statutory bodies.

Policy 4: Conservation Theory and Practice

The work to protect the buildings and structures should follow well established conservation practice. There is a wide variety of structures and issues at Mint Yard but the same basic conservation principles are applicable to all of the structures within the site area.

The following best practice conservation guidelines should be adhered to when considering any change to fabric, landscape or structures in Mint Yard:

- Minimum intervention – remove or change as little as possible of what is there, introduce or change only where necessary to protect the significant values of the site or to enhance its physical and financial sustainability.
- Reversible change – wherever possible, any work carried out should be capable of subsequently being undone without lasting damage.
- Priority should be given to repairing what is there rather than replacing it with new fabric, and there should be a presumption against removing material from the site.
- Repair should use like-for-like techniques and materials. Materials should be salvaged and re-used where possible. New, traditional materials should be used rather than materials salvaged from other sites.
- Priority should be given to maintaining and enhancing the integrity of the historic fabric over other regulations and requirements.
- New work should not be intrusive, and should be of simple, high quality, contemporary or complimentary design; facsimile work should only be used where there is indisputable evidence of an appropriate and accurate earlier design.

- Adequate historical research, investigative opening-up, recording and sampling should be carried out before and during work to inform the best design and technical solutions.
- New work should not be 'aged' – new and old should be clearly distinguishable without being visually intrusive.
- Particular attention should be paid to matters of detail to help preserve and enhance significance including the fabric and character including, for example, specific choice of materials, detailed location of services and methods of fixing.
- Fabric or spaces to be replaced, altered or removed should be adequately recorded following relevant guidelines and the record lodged in the public archive and in York's Historic Enviroment Record.
- Detailed design development should precede implementation of all on-site works.
- Any compromises proposed to the above principles should flow from an options analysis which includes an assessment of impact on significance should be fully justified and agreed by all stakeholders.

This is a comprehensive policy which protects the significance of the Mint Yard site and its structures from risk associated with a non-conservation-led approach. It sets out the theory to be followed when considering changes and can broadly be applied to decisions such as management as well as repair and conservation. The policy contains recognised conservation principles and is the basis for works to historic fabric and spaces, but it should be sufficiently flexible to achieve the necessary balance between protecting the significance of the building and the desire to secure its viable, accessible use.

The following policies build upon some of the statements in Policy 4.

Policy 5: Intactness & Composition

The site should be considered as a whole, including all building groups and their setting. This will ensure that the significance of the site including its component elements, buildings and spaces, and the relationships between them are protected and enhanced. There should be a presumption in favour of retaining and conserving *in situ* all buildings, structures and archaeological deposits at the site. There should be a presumption against demolition of any building, structure or other feature, including partial demolition or removal.

This policy is designed to counter the potential harm which could result from differing approaches or standards at different parts of the site, such as changes in appearance or character. A holistic approach will be crucial to prevent acting against the interests of any one part. The policy also sets a general presumption against demolition, wholesale or partial, of buildings or smaller elements.

The unusual variety of structures within the Mint Yard area, ranging from fragmentary ruined Roman walls to an intact 1920s neoclassical building, means that the application of a holistic approach to the conservation of the site is possible more challenging than it is on a site where all of the buildings have a similar history, appearance, and condition.

The Mint Yard is a site which does not have a consistent underlying design with buildings or landscape that were intended to be seen or understood together. There

is a clear contrast between the way that the Mint Yard area has come down to us, as a disparate collection of buildings and values and Museum Gardens around the York Museum which is a single, overall, 19th century design of public building and associated landscape. In the case of Museum Gardens, the landscape successfully draws together historic and fragmentary elements, such as the ruins of St Mary's Abbey, into a unified design. A single unified design is unlikely to be possible to address the conservation issues on the Mint Yard site but the underlying principles that causes changes to be made should be consistent across the site.

The conservation needs of the various parts of the site vary between work required to intensify use of an already active public building, to work to protect and interpret vulnerable ruins. This is likely to produce a variety of design responses and such a variety could be considered to be appropriate. In order for the various responses to be successful overall, they should be considered together as a single strategy which includes the current proposals for York Explore. They must be based on the kind of overall analysis of the history, significance, and issues relating to the site that this conservation plan is intended to provide.

Policy 6: Building & Archaeological Recording

A decision to allow any works that might disturb, damage or destroy archaeological remains at York Explore or the Mint Yard site should be based on an informed analysis of their impact.

Consideration of new construction work will relate to a prior detailed assessment of the site, a process that is in part represented by the assessment embodied within the present Conservation Plan.

Supporting information in the form of desk-based analysis, structural recording, geographical survey or trial trenching is likely to be required through the planning process and in relation to the statutory protections that encompass the site before an informed decision can be made in relation to specific proposals. This will include works in the immediate vicinity of building groups. The requirements for such work and any subsequent publication should be agreed with City of York Council, and English Heritage.

If potentially damaging works are required, some form of mitigation might be necessary which might include a watching brief, detailed historic building survey or more extensive excavation.

This policy amplifies the need to prepare for and record works to the site. The project design / written scheme of investigation for archaeological works must be agreed with City of York Council, and English Heritage as appropriate. The project design should relate proposed works to existing archaeological research frameworks.

Policy 7: Restoration and Reinstatement

Restoration and reinstatement would only be considered appropriate where there is sufficient evidence of an appropriate earlier design of a lost or incomplete feature to enable accurate reproduction. Restoration and reinstatement should only be considered when there is a clear case that stability, safety, understanding or interpretation of a building or landscape component would be significantly enhanced. Restoration and reinstatement work should be identifiable and recorded and should follow appropriate national guidance.

Replication and reconstruction are controversial practices at historic sites as they tend to go against the principle of authenticity and minimum intervention. However, there will be cases where reinstating lost fabric or even wholesale reconstruction will be appropriate or desirable, usually to ensure stability (e.g. a lost supporting wall) or to aid interpretation (e.g. an element crucial to understanding the site).

Design interventions can suggest or make reference to elements of the history of the site. Often, a successful design is one which uses the historical context of a site as part of the creative impulse of the new design, whether historicist or contemporary in approach. It is interesting that the self-confident, Edwardian inspired library design does not do this. A mid-19th century design on this site might have been Gothic, to respond to the history of St Leonard's Hospital and a contemporary intervention might be a more deferential response to the historic context of the site.

New structures introduced to protect the vulnerable Roman walls and the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital could have a design element which helps to interpret the history of the site. This need not be by an attempt at accurate or historically convincing restoration. Indeed, a lack of documentary evidence means that an attempt at authentic rebuilding is unlikely to be successful.

Restoration, in its narrow definition of putting back something which is believed to have existed in the past, is not applicable to the Mint Yard site but making interventions which are designed with an understanding and possibly with reference to the history of the site is a desirable approach to design and conservation. Such works must be preceded by and informed by a proper understanding and record of the remains to be affected.

8.3.1 Building Fabric

The work recommended in this conservation plan is primarily concerned with the conservation, restoration and repair of the existing buildings and structures within the study area. A degree of restoration of missing elements may be justifiable.

Policy 8 – Restoration and Repair

The design of restored elements, where justifiable, should be carried out in such a way that it achieves the following objectives.

i. The repair and the restoration of missing element should follow detailed examination of the relevant parts of the existing structure or an existing feature. The specification of materials in building restoration should match the existing in terms of quality, materials, colour, and finishes, unless the existing element has been shown to be defective.

ii. The fabric should be recorded before the work is carried out.

iii. The fabric of a restored element should have a clear but unobtrusive mark with the date of its construction.

Policy 9 – Condition

A further condition inspection should be carried out for the York Explore building. It should examine each part of the fabric and not be considered as an update of the 2008 report. The report should include an assessment of the interior. Its should include specialist input from structural and M&E engineers and the recommendations should be costed by a quantity surveyor. Recommendations should be presented according to urgency. Typically there might be 3 levels of priority – within one year, within five years and works which are desirable.

A condition report was written for the York Explore building during 2008. Since that inspection, the work to form York Explore has been carried out. Some of the recommendations for repair noted in the report were included in the York Explore project but the majority of repair works have yet to be implemented. It is possible that the prioritisation of repair works in the report was overly pessimistic about the rate of decay of the roof finishes.

Physical interventions may be necessary within some of the building and structures. New designed elements might be required to improve access, meet statutory requirements and change the use of the existing building.

Policy 10 – Design Objectives

Conservation work, repairs, or interventions should be designed so that they meet the following objectives:

i. Conservation work must be based on thorough physical and historical understanding of the structures including a full understanding of their significance. The design of repair works should be undertaken with a thorough knowledge of traditional construction history and practice and with full awareness of their impact on the significance of the heritage asset.

ii. The work should be designed so that it can be carried out safely and consideration must be given to safety issues arising from the continued maintenance of the building.

iii. It is essential that conservation work is carried out by experienced tradespeople, and designed and inspected by a conservation accredited architect. A large part of the success of any project is in the understanding of the task and sharing of experience between all professionals and all tradespeople involved.

Policy 11 – Urgent Works

Urgent works listed in the condition assessment should be carried out within the next 12 months to slow deterioration of fabric.

Policy 12 – Relocation of City Archives

The relocation of the archives to York Explore is a highly desirable initiative which will rationalise and intensify the use of York Explore. Additions to the building should be made in places which do not affect the context of the most significant sides the building to the south east and south west. An addition is possible to the upper floor of the north block of the building without compromising the external significance of the building elsewhere. It is possible that such an addition was intended within the original design of the building. Internal alterations which remove unnecessary clutter from significant interiors and which involve some degree of repair and restoration of significant interiors are desirable.

There is a current project for relocation of the archives collection of York City Council from the York Art Gallery to the York Explore building. These proposals include the construction of an upper floor at first floor level to the north block of the central library building and alterations to some of the rooms at first floor level.

The design of an intervention to York Explore/Central Library should be carried out in such a way that it achieves the following objectives:

- The design must respect the significance of the existing buildings and its setting. It should be innately attractive but it should not intrude on aesthetic or historical appreciation. Any intervention to the existing fabric should be fully justified in terms of the findings of this conservation plan.
- The design must respect the existing fabric of the building that it is associated with. In building conservation it is important to avoid alteration or damage to the existing fabric wherever possible. The interface between a new element and the existing fabric must be carefully considered to avoid damage to the existing building, for instance by differential erosion or by damage at fixing points.
- Interventions should, be clearly identifiable as such, both physically, by dating, and by documenting the construction and alteration process. The interventions throughout the building should be well designed and have a design-integrity of their own. This is because they should be interpreted as being part of a single datable campaign of alteration. Records should be kept of all works undertaken.
- The materials used in interventions should be of good quality and long lasting.

8.4 Retention of Significance

It is important that the significance of the Mint Yard area and its components is respected, retained and where possible enhanced in future use and management of the site.

Policy 13 – Guidelines

In general, work should be carried out in accordance with the *British Standard Guide to the Principles of Conservation of Historic Buildings BS7913* (1998), and *Conservation Principles, Policies and Guidance for the Sustainable Management of the Historic Environment* (2008).

Policy 14 - Methods & Materials

Appropriate professional or craft skills and experience should be used in all work including inspection, maintenance and repairs. All contractors and consultants should have relevant historic environment qualifications and experience. Earlier inappropriate repairs and materials should be reversed providing doing so will not cause further irreversible harm to the significance of the site.

Inexperienced or amateur work can cause irreversible damage to historic fabric, no matter how well intentioned. Relevant skills include archaeologists, structural surveyors, conservators, and specialists who work with mortar, stone, and timber.

The library is in good condition and has been carefully maintained but some elements of the building need to be repaired. Some of the structures within the area need substantial repair.

Policy 15 – Existing Building Fabric

The original building fabric, the walls and the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital should be treated with respect and should be retained, conserved and repaired. There should be a presumption against the loss of significant fabric unless its loss

can be proven to be beneficial to the overall fabric and significance of the building.

Policy 16 – Items of High Significance

Elements of the buildings or site identified as being of high significance should be retained, conserved and protected. These parts of the Mint Yard site should not be adversely affected by any future works, use or management.

At the Mint Yard site, some of the items of highest significance are also the most vulnerable. Some radical action is needed to protect and interpret them. It is possible and desirable that items of high significance will be affected or changed by future works. This careful but creative management of that change is crucial to the conservation of the site.

Policy 17 – Items of Medium Significance

Elements of the buildings or site identified as being of medium significance should be retained and respected. Some parts of the building may be changed, with care and in an appropriate manner, to make them suitable for a new use, or in relation to improved performance standards (e.g. Equality Act compliance). Changes should however not reduce the significance of these elements.

Changes to these elements should be recorded in minutes, descriptions, photographs or drawings and further physical investigation of the fabric undertaken, as appropriate.

Policy 18 – Items of Moderate Significance

Elements of the building identified as being of moderate significance should be retained as evidence of original or early fabric where possible, but changes may be acceptable.

Changes to these elements should be recorded in minutes, descriptions, photographs or drawings and further physical investigation of the fabric undertaken, as appropriate.

Where these elements are rooms in York Explore, they should be repaired. There should be a general presumption towards removing or concealing services, redecoration using original colours, and retention of original furniture. Adapting furniture to a new use is preferable to its removal.

Policy 19 – Items of Neutral Significance

Neutral elements may be removed, altered or retained as required subject to the appropriate consents.

Any change to these elements should be recorded in minutes, descriptions, photographs, or drawings and physical investigation of the fabric undertaken, as appropriate.

Some elements or previous alterations to the building are considered to have an intrusive, or negative, effect on its appearance, appreciation or integrity.

Policy 20 – Items of Negative Significance

Negative elements should be removed from the site as part of any future works where the opportunity arises to restore original fabric or design, or to enhance elements of higher significance.

These changes should be recorded in minutes, descriptions, photographs, or drawings and physical investigation of the fabric undertaken, as appropriate.

There are relatively few items of negative significance within the Mint Yard area or surrounding it. Negative significance generally applies to short term or poor quality additions and accretions within the York Explore building and to the rear of St Leonard's Place outside the boundary of the site, to the north. The accretion of cables, signs, servicing, inappropriate furniture within significant interiors of York Explore is a negative element which is being partly addressed by the current archives project. The St Leonard's Place buildings have changed ownership and it is important that proposals for the St Leonard's Place buildings also address elements of negative significance.

8.5 Polices for York Explore building

8.5.1 East Front

Policy 21 – East Front

The east front of the York Explore building is its entrance front and is important in the architectural design and public perception of York Explore. It should be repaired and accretions, such as cables, should be removed or disguised.

There is some staining from lead flashing to parapet. The alarm system box marked "Mayfair Selby" is intrusive and should be removed. The lightning conductor tape is unduly prominent. It could be replaced with rod encapsulated in red plastic which would be a lot less obvious.

Over the front door as seen from the landing of the stair, there is lead over the pediment but the inner part is asphalt which is badly cracked. This asphalt is also wrinkled near to the columns at the base of these small pitches. This small roof clearly needs to be renewed.

Some action has been taken to prevent birds roosting on the window sill above the front door. This has involved strips with spikes on. The spikes are now missing and the birds are again standing and leaving droppings on this window sill. The glue used to fix the strips of spikes has left a mark on the upper surface of the stone. Most of this glue and the plastic strip base is now removed leaving only the scar.

8.5.2 South Front

Policy 22 – South Front

The south front of York Explore is an elegant and significant neoclassical design. It should be repaired and maintained. Accretions such as cables should be rerouted internally or otherwise disguised.

Cabling is prominent to the east side of centrepiece. Further disfiguring external cabling passes across the surface of the building at string course level on the western block and passes down across the elevation and entering at a basement window. There are stone cope to ridges and hips. The condition needs to be checked.

Figure 80 The south façade of York Explore.

There is evidence of repair. The rainwater goods are apparently in fair condition although one piece has been replaced in plastic on the west side of south east projecting section. This might be a consequence of theft of lead.

8.5.3 West Side

Policy 23 – West Side

The west side of the York Explore building is less significant than the south or east sides. However, accretions such as cabling should be rerouted so that they do not disfigure the elevation, wherever possible.

There is a large amount of cabling on the wall surface above the windows.

8.5.4 North Side

Policy 24 – North Side

The simple design of the north side of the York Explore building should be respected. This elevations should be repaired and inappropriate accretions, such as cabling, removed.

It is this north elevation which would be most affected by the current proposals for an upwards extension to the north block. The proposals offer an opportunity to make a positive contribution to the design and significance of the building.

It might be possible to add to the north wing in a way which could replicate Brierley's design but that type of design is less likely to be successful in terms of conservation theory. An accurate replica design can be appropriate where some part of a design of significance is missing or incomplete. But, at York Explore, the important parts of the design are complete. The upper part of the north block is a relatively minor part of the building and it the significance of the building overall is not affected by the lack of an upper storey. This suggests that an accurate reproduction of a missing design or a building in the style of Brierley is not necessary in this position.

The design for an upwards extension on this part of the York Explore building could be obviously a design of the early 21st century. A successful design could be legibly contemporary in appearance and should be an elegant architectural statement in itself. It should be modest in appearance and not distract from the architecture of the significant faces of the existing building to the east and the south which should remain the dominant characteristic of the site.

8.5.5 Roofs

The roofs are not in particularly good condition although appear generally serviceable. There is an area of ponding and silt on the section to the south of the south library clearstorey.

The rooflights in this southern flat roof are covered with plastic sheeting. This is a replacement for the original glass panes. It is likely to reduce the amount and quality of light entering into the main space from the original design.

Some pointing is needed at open joints on the library south clearstorey wall.

Insulating the roof space should be considered.

Policy 25 - Roofs

Roofs should be regularly inspected and kept in good repair. Rooflight and other elements of the roofs, such as flashings, should also be inspected and repaired as necessary. All flat roofs and gutters should be regularly maintained and cleared of blockages. In general, original materials should be used in repair unless the revised specification is higher in quality and longer lasting. Plastic sheeting is inappropriate in the rooflights. Glass that matches the original opacity and character of light should be restored to the octagonal rooflight over the main non-fiction library space.

8.5.6 Interiors

Some interior spaces were not inspected: ground floor accessible WC, basement, some cupboards.

Policy 26 – Interiors

The decorative history of all ceiling and wall surfaces, and all joinery should be investigated by means of microscope section paint analysis.

This analysis will indicate the history of colours since the start of the building. It is possible that there will be colours associated with phases of completion of the building. Within the entrance hall spaces it is possible that the joinery was not painted white as it is now. It is also possible that stone colours were used rather than the current beige, white and grey scheme. In microscope analysis layers of dirt can indicate which coats were undercoats and which were top coats. It also indicates where a paint layer has been left exposed for a long period and others have been repainted within a relatively short time.

It is not essential to follow the findings of the paint analysis exactly. It is possible to argue, however, that the colour of the interior was an important part of the architect's initial vision for a room and that the selection of colours in repairs and redecorating should at least take account of the original design intentions. The logic behind the original selection of colours - the use of white in an entrance hall is for a different reason than stone colours, for instance - should be understood before selecting new colours.

The selection of colours is not as significant as other alterations to a building with heritage significance. Colours are always likely to be changed in the future and so the selection of colours can be influenced by the design intentions and intended function of the space within the current proposals. In the longer term these designs and functions are likely to be modified and it is appropriate to modify a colour scheme at the same time.

The light fittings should be cleaned. Some research is required into the character and design of the original shades. Ideally the same method of wiring where the cable is interwoven with the chain should be repeated.

Policy 27 – Light Fittings

Original light fittings should be retained. Light fittings can either be overhauled to continue their use as light fittings or separate lighting provided. New light fittings should not imitate the existing fittings so that the original design and method of lighting remains legible.

The column radiators should be retained. However, it is recognised that they might need to be modified to meet current health and safety standards. Protective guards should be carefully designed so that they are not intrusive to the general quality of the interior. These radiators have evidential and aesthetic value and are an important part of the original library design.

Policy 28 - Radiators

Original radiators should be retained within the building. They still function and they are a record of the original heating system. Some replacement radiators detract from the significance of the rooms they heat. In rooms of high or medium significance it is preferable that these replacement radiators are either replaced with radiators to match the original or concealed by a screen.

Policy 29 - Furniture

The list of furniture which pre-dates the building should identify its previous location where possible and its original location within the present building. The list of furniture designed for the building should also identify its original position or room where possible.

Pre-existing or original furniture should be respected and returned to its original location where possible within the current interior design. Furniture which is moved should be recorded on photographs and the new location recorded on the list of furniture.

Pre-existing furniture is likely to be a record of furniture associated with the library in York from the 19th century. Retaining this furniture within the building retains some historical significance. However, if an appropriate use can be found for this furniture elsewhere then it could be moved away from the York Explore building.

Asbestos has been noted in the basement, boiler room (room 1), store (room 3), in the female toilets, ground floor, and roof voids (space 61). Of the asbestos in the building, the highest rating is 12 of a total risk score maximum of 24.

8.5.7 Upper Entrance Hall

Figure 81 Photographs of the upper entrance hall York Explore.

Policy 30 – Upper Entrance Hall Rooflight

The dome rooflight should be repaired and restored to its original appearance, including the character of the glass, paint colours, and the character of the plasterwork. Design work is needed to realise the potential of light through this domed rooflight into the upper and lower entrance halls.

This dome does not meet its full potential. It is currently dirty and one pane of glass has been replaced so that the character of the glass is not consistent. The replacement is insufficiently frosted so that the character of the roof light beyond is more visible than it should be. The amount of daylight coming through the glass is slightly restricted. There is some graffiti written in to the dirt on the upper side of the glass and some spills of paint to be removed. The glass itself is probably original and

should be treated as significant. Three sodium lights have been fitted but the amount of light they provide is poor compared with the amount of daylight which should be passing through this roof light. These secondary lights should be removed because they are the wrong colour of light source.

It would be possible to radically improve the amount of light coming through this dome using a light source which more accurately imitates the effect of daylight. However, it would be a mistake to over-light this roof light. The space within the attic could be painted white with white boards or even mirrors placed to reflect as much daylight as possible onto the upper side of the dome. The lack of opacity on the replacement glass to the west should be addressed. The glazing of the windows in the roof slope should also be cleaned to allow the maximum amount of light through. It would be less harmful to the overall significance of the fabric of the building if these sheets of glass in the roof pitches had to be replaced than it would be for the glass in the dome itself.

The decoration has become clogged with layers of emulsion paint which has reduced its architectural quality. Although the history of decoration in paint layers within this space is of interest. It is of lower significance than the architectural quality and level of craftsmanship implied in the original work.

Policy 31 – Paint on Plaster Decoration

Paint which clogs up decorative plaster detail detracts from the significance of significant rooms. It would be appropriate to remove paint to reveal the original plaster decoration design as long as the paint layers are recorded.

The decorative history of paint layers within this and all significant spaces within the library should be analysed and understood but, in the case of this richly decorated plasterwork in the stair and entrance halls, it should be removed using an appropriate technique applied by skilled and experienced tradesmen to reveal the original detail.

This recommendation also applies to the acanthus decorated brackets, the dentils, the egg and dart frieze, and the other decorations in the entablature. The Ionic pilaster capitals should also be stripped in the same way before repainting. The pilaster to the south of the central window on the west wall has a crack at its base and may need to be taken down and refitted. Refitting of existing plaster work is preferable to remodelling.

The original scheme is likely to be more subtle than the current one. It might have been based on different tones of white. The paint analysis should distinguish between different shades of white which are unlikely to have been the current bright white colour used on the entablature. Where possible, the original type of paint should be established. The glossy brown/beige used on the upper walls does not look like a convincing 1920s colour and it is possible that the architect originally intended a much chalkier, less reflective, surface associated with the use of distemper paints. This consideration of the appropriate character of a paint surface is as important as the choice of colours.

The walls have a degree of clutter with surface wiring, cable boxes, PIR detectors, notices, fire break glass points, mountings for fire extinguishers, no smoking signs, fire detectors and emergency lighting. Although some of these items could be considered essential, a lot are redundant and unnecessary. There are, for instance, five signs indicating the position of the lift within a distance of 9m on the upper

entrance hall alone. The last three signs are within the context of very characteristic lift doors and so are unnecessary.

A full audit of all accretions on walls should be carried out with the question asked if each is necessary and useful. Surface wiring should be stripped out and concealed. In the case of some walls this will mean making channels in the plaster and then plastering over. The junction and cable boxes, together with detectors, should be painted the colour of the background rather than the colour of the joinery. Where they are redundant or not necessary they should be removed. Sockets have been placed above the level of skirtings and there is trunking on the west wall for computer cabling. In these cases it would be better to run cables behind the skirting rather than fitted to its outer face. Sockets fitted the right way up can contravene EU requirements for the amount that a cable from the plug is allowed to bend. However, there is no reason that sockets can not be fitted upside down onto the face of the skirting. This would make them less disruptive in the overall design of the space.

There is a pressing need to remove clutter from this upper space in the same way that has been achieved for the lower entrance hall. Although it is understood that all parts of a public building need to serve a purpose and that the inclusive and welcoming feel of a library building can be assisted by removing some of the Edwardian exclusive and reticent quality of the main circulation spaces, these spaces are among the most significant parts of the interior of the building and should be respected.

On the north bow wall a pinboard has been introduced with some crude edge framing and mouse beading. This pinboard was not used at the time of the inspection and is visually intrusive. It should be removed and the wall made good.

The chairs and tables for the computers are visually intrusive and have negative significance.

At the north end is a simple Renaissance style counter which was a part of one of the reception desks, originally supplied to the library. It is now used for storing leaflets and other information. It looks incongruous in this position and a better position should be found for it. See furniture policy.

The floor is a black and white floor which is made out of granolithic panels. Some panels have been repaired, others have discoloured. There is a crack or easing below the line of the north beam where original joints of about 5mm wide have opened up to about 10-15mm wide. Some panels appear to have been replaced. There is a general level of dirt and discolouration on this floor. The overall geometric pattern is not particularly easy to read or successful at this level. This is partly because it is covered by display cases and computer benches so that the total arrangement of the floor pattern is not legible but also because the floor pattern is less easy to read than the ground floor entrance hall because the shape of the oculus has been cut through it.

Policy 32 – Entrance Hall Floors

The black and white floors of the upper and lower entrance halls should be repaired and cleaned. Repair will involve careful grouting at joints and cracks.

Research into methods of cleaning, repair and improving the appearance of this floor is needed.

The importance of the original handrails is that they unify the design of the stair and the upper entrance hall. When standing on the corner landings it is clear that the

view of metal balustrades passing up the stairs in two parts, together with the balustrade in the outer arches where the stair meets the upper entrance hall and the design of the rail around the oculus have all been considered carefully together when the building was designed. As the uppermost and curving element, the oculus is the culmination of this careful design but the impact of this design is reduced by the inclusion of furniture and the addition of handrails. The use of these handrails is particularly effective in this view because they cross over the windows to make complex patterns in silhouette.

Figure 82 Photographs of the upper entrance hall of York Explore from the stair.

Policy 33 – Entrance Hall Handrails

The sequence of handrails at the stairs and around the oculus should remain visible and uncluttered because it is an important part of the design of the interior of York Explore.

These wrought iron panels should not be compromised either visually or physically, and it is preferable that they remain prominent within this space.

8.5.8 Stair Hall

The same policies for accretions, plasterwork, wall paint colours, amount of paint clogging up the cornice as noted for the upper entrance hall applies for the stair hall.

There is no reason why these niches should be empty. They are typical niches for displaying sculpture in Classical practice and, indeed, the grand stair was a common place to display figure sculpture. The architecture of this space is sufficiently robust to display objects which are not pieces of Classical architecture. A set of museum objects could be placed in these niches. There would be some benefit in having the six niches filled with a group of similar looking objects.

Apart from surface mounted wiring, the elements that most detract from the significance of this space are the handrails which have been placed at the lower part of the stair, where the stair passes through a door opening with timber architraves, and at landing height where a brass handrail has been fixed around blocks which are characteristic of Classical design as used in the 1920s.

Figure 83 Photographs of the original brass stair handrails of York Explore.

The handrails are intrusive to the general quality of the stair but have been fitted to meet a perceived need. It is unfortunate that the brushed stainless steel handrails at the foot of the stair and the brass handrails are different. The brushed stainless steel handrails are a better design, but the character of the design is overwrought and possibly not as simple as it could be. The choice of brushed steel works better with the cool and reticent quality of late Edwardian style architecture than the brass at the landings. It is also obviously an addition, which is positive in terms of conservation principles. The brass rails at the landing level are more in keeping with the architecture visually because brass is a material more associated with old buildings. However, in detail the intrusion of these handrails is unfortunate. The brackets which have been used are too large for the mouldings on the face of the marble and the disk at the back of the bracket passes over mouldings. This is an unfortunate although relatively minor distraction from the overall significance of this interior.

The floor is a granolithic cast floor. It is a light yellow colour, but possibly this has discoloured from the lighter colour originally intended to imitate limestone. Black bands have been added to highlight the front of each step. This is a necessary but unfortunate visual intrusion. More subtle bands, possibly in stainless steel ridging, could be cut into each step. Such a design might be an improvement but it would impact physically on the fabric of the building.

The stair is particularly effective in direct sunlight where the light from the central east window casts the shadow of glazing onto the surface of the steps.

8.5.9 Lower Entrance Hall

The same policies for surface clutter, surface wiring and switches apply as noted for the upper entrance hall above. There is a half-submerged junction box in the north west part of the ceiling which has been poorly concealed. The policies for floor cleaning and paint clogged plasterwork also apply.

Figure 84 Photographs of the oculus between the lower and upper entrance halls of York Explore, and the domed rooflight above.

The heaters are intrusive in this space. They have been placed to either side of the screen which passes from the entrance hall into the main library. They would originally have had the same type of column radiators as in the upper entrance hall. They have been filled with much larger and less attractive electric heaters. The heaters are the same size but do not fit into the recess.

Policy 34 – Entrance hall heaters

These heaters are visually intrusive to an important heritage space. They should be replaced either with column radiators or by fitting modern heaters into the recess and then fitting screens into the front. It should be possible to find a mesh which would be appropriate and not intrusive to the general quality of the space.

The clock at the centre of the north wall is an original fixture. It is attractive and appropriate for this position, but was originally in the Main Library, above the central doorway from the entrance hall.

8.5.10 Ground Floor - Main Library, Non-Fiction

The floor has been covered with carpet tiles, restricting inspection. Some unevenness of the floor surface is noted which should be further inspected to ascertain the cause. This matter should be addressed quickly as it may avoid costly remedies in the future.

The condition of this space is generally fair and in good decorative order. The space has a large number of accretions including pipes, former fixings now removed below many of the windows at cornice level. There is trunking in the walls and on the ceilings. The trunking on the ceiling is possibly the more disruptive visually and should be changed if possible. The light fittings are proprietary fluorescents. The position of original fittings is not evident.

Most of the furnishing is late 20th century but some of the original bookcases have survived. In many cases they have been cut to form narrower bookcases and some have been raised on wheels. This is not an attractive way of presenting these bookcases and this alteration is considered unfortunate. These bookcases are similar to other custom designed furniture for the library in using profiled mouldings in a manner derived from folk art and relating to Arts & Crafts design. The bookcases survive undivided and without having been raised on wheels in the southern parts.

Policy 35 – Non-Fiction Library

The main non-fiction library is a significant space. Removing surface mounted cabling and trunking is desirable. Original furniture and bookcases should be retained within this room.

8.5.11 First Floor - Local History Room - South Block, East Room

The condition of this room is fair. Peeling paint and paper on the ceiling at the head of the vault. This might be caused by condensation as much as a leak. One might expect to find leaks along the lower edges of the vault rather than the head. There are modern striplight fittings on the ceiling and emergency lights and smoke detectors. The position of the original lighting for this room is not obvious but it was probably pendant fittings.

This room has moderate significance. There are some original tables. Chairs and other furniture have been introduced. There are modern filing cabinets to the south end of the room but two simple map chests made of oak of high quality.

The green scheme may be similar to the original scheme for this room. The history of decoration should be investigated because repairs will be needed. The painting of joinery is clearly on top of timber which was originally left finished as timber in the same way as the bookcases. The simple band of timber on the side facing this room seems too simple, particularly since the side facing the main history library has the same Baroque architrave as seen elsewhere.

8.5.12 First Floor – Reference Library

The condition of the room is fairly poor with quite a lot of mouldy, flaking and lost paintwork. This is particularly the case along the southern edge just above the cornice. Plaster repairs have been needed at the eastern end and the plaster at the cornice is decaying at the south west corner. In addition, there is flaking paint on the north wall between the first and second window from the eastern end. The room has an unusual barrel-profile ceiling.

The floor is covered with carpet tiles, restricting inspection.

The furniture in this room is various forms of tables. The tables with vase shaped legs appear to be contemporary with the bookcases and the building. The chairs are upholstered with curving back, with a slight Art Nouveau influence in the arms. At the western end are tables with slanting tops, for supporting large books and newspapers. On the western wall is a 19th-century clock.

The Policy on redecoration is the same as other spaces.

There is a lot of surface mounted wiring, particularly at the western end, which disfigures this room.

The room also has a mix of pendant globe lighting with boxes containing strip lights. From a grid of junction boxes it seems that there were pendant lights in this area originally. These were placed centrally.

Figure 85 The first floor reference library of York Explore.

8.5.13 First Floor – Stack Room – South West Room

This room was designed as a service space. It can sustain more changes than rooms of higher value.

Policy 36 - First Floor – Stack Room

Alterations should respect the overall scale and shape of the room, and should retain the stair to the north.

The condition is fairly poor with staining on the ceiling and water ingress at the south western corner. To the north is a timber stair with timber square section balusters which leads up to the roof space. This includes the plant for the book lift. The shelving within this room is not original. The floor is parquet laid to a herringbone pattern with a double line of border throughout. This border shows that the partitions along the north side are in their original locations.

Policy 37 – Repair of all internal walls

Walls should be repaired and accretions such as cabling and other services should be removed and concealed. Appropriate repair and conservation might involve some restoration of surface finishes and paint colours. A full assessment of all existing cables, signs, junction boxes, and other non-original elements attached to

the walls should be made. Any item which is unnecessary should be removed. Electrical cables should be concealed.

8.6 Policies for Collections

Policy 38 - Archive

A review of the care of the collection has been completed and the proposals for their care should be implemented. This should be reviewed every five years, or earlier if circumstances within the building change (such as change of use or management). This should include a risk assessment and action plan, including a review of security and fire measures.

8.7 Policies for ruins of St Leonard's Hospital

Figure 86 Photographs of the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital.

The ruin of St Leonard's Hospital is a significant fragment of a much larger building. Part of its significance is that it is a record of a very important medieval institution.

Some structural strengthening has been needed in the western north/south line of the vaults of the principal vaulted space. Buttresses have been built against the western face of the western line of columns and there are iron ties running between these columns the next row of columns to the east. Whether this structural intervention is still necessary or whether it can be replaced if the building is extended in any way will need to be considered by an experienced structural engineer.

An exhibition has been fixed directly to the walls of the original entrance pend. Unfortunately this has allowed some litter to be left on the supporting timbers on the back of the exhibition boards. Lighting has also been fitted with cabling fixings to the wall. Although this is relatively unobtrusive visually this does mean that there are fixings into medieval masonry. From outside the structure, in the evenings, the lights are obtrusively bright.

Policy 39 – St Leonard's Hospital

This building should be repaired, including repointing and improved arrangement for water disposal. Inside the vaults better drainage is required. The building is vulnerable to vandalism. It should be assessed by a structural engineer.

These vaulted spaces are beautiful and evocative. Their current use and character are various. The pend is used as an exhibition/interpretation space and is well used by people visiting and wishing to understand museum gardens. However, the pend is

not an entrance way, though it still looks like one, and visitors are constantly frustrated by passing through it, only to find that they cannot walk around the building. There is the fairly unusual evidence of a desire line which leads to a dead end.

Figure 87 Photographs of the vaulted undercroft of the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital.

The larger space to the west is characterful because it is a large space with a beautiful subdued quality of light from the windows to the south and from the open arcade to the west. There are also impressive views out from this space, westwards, looking towards the interior of the Multangular Tower and with the south elevation of the York Explore/library building to the north of the library lawn. Recently this space has acted as a shelter for teenagers to congregate. Although clearly a social use, this function has an unfortunate effect of severe vandalism including spray painting on the medieval walls and incidental damage to carved and ashlar masonry. During wet weather this space floods.

What is not made clear on the site, as there is very little interpretation available, is that this is only part of a grid of vaults which extended a considerable distance westwards over the area now occupied by the library lawn. The opportunity to explain the use of the building and the extraordinarily grand scale of the hospital is missed.

The perception of the building as a medieval ruin is straightforward but its interpretation as a fragment of a much larger building is less easily communicated. Only about half the outside walls of the building were originally outside walls. The walls to the south and to the north retain most of their original ashlar masonry although buttresses and some other architectural detail have been robbed. The walls to the west and east were not originally outside walls. At the upper level the difference is even more stark with parts of the south wall extending upwards and the block over the smaller northern vault having upper walls but the west and east parts having no walls above the level of the upper floor. The fragmentary nature of this ruin interpretation more difficult but conversely it provides more opportunities for creative re-use.

The future use of the lower floor is inhibited by the lack of communicating doors between the pend, the undercroft open to the library lawn and the undercroft used as a store by York Explore.

Policy 40 – Principals of architectural interventions at St Leonard's Hospital

Because the building is a fragment of a larger design and not a single unified design, it can sustain intervention or an addition. An intervention should not harm

the most significant or attractive parts of the building, the vaults at ground floor level, but it might be a creative intervention which does not have to imitate a previous design on this site. It should be a guiding conservation principle that intervention in this building should not involve altering, damaging, disguising or covering up medieval masonry.

This guiding principle does constrain proposals for a new use. It might suggest that the uses of the building as it currently stands at ground level are broadly satisfactory and could be consolidated. The room to the north should be more publicly accessible than it is now.

A further constraint is in the unsuitability of the ground floor spaces to become heated or habitable spaces. In order to heat these spaces, they would have to have doors, windows, and a floor containing insulation and, possibly, some method of insulating the walls. Adding anything to the inner face of the walls to improve insulation would be patently inappropriate but other requirements such as windows or excavation to provide a stone floor including under-floor heating and insulation could also be physically and visually intrusive.

There is a much greater opportunity for alterations to facilitate a new use at the upper level. The issue with the upper level is how to reach it. Most uses would require both stair and lift access. Lift access might be acceptable in locations to the south west or against the outer face of the wall facing Museum Street.

There are various approaches to how the upwards extension of this structure could be designed. Many different responses are appropriate and it is easy to see that a thoughtful and well detailed entirely contemporary response could be more in the interests of the building than a poorly detailed response of any kind. The best response to this building is in terms of high quality architectural design which can cover any style or type of architecture. For instance, the designer might wish to develop a design based on the original roof form, though the effects of this on the Victorian Museum Gardens and on views should be assessed.

The design of new work in close association with historic buildings always requires particular architectural knowledge, judgement, skill and care. There may be several appropriate ways of carrying out such work, the relative advantages of which will depend on the assessed level of significance and potential impact of any proposed works.

Policy 41 –Architectural interventions at St Leonard's Hospital

The design of an intervention at the ruin of St Leonard's Hospital should be carried out in such a way that it achieves the following objectives:

- **The design must respect the significance of the existing buildings and their settings. It should be innately attractive but it should not intrude on aesthetic or historical appreciation. Any intervention to the existing fabric should be fully justified in terms of the findings of this conservation plan.**
- **The design must respect the existing fabric of the building that it is associated with. In building conservation it is important to avoid alteration or damage to the existing fabric wherever possible. In this case it is desirable that there is no physical intervention, other than repair to the existing masonry. An intervention to this building should be entirely additional to the existing masonry. The interface between a new element and the existing fabric must be carefully considered to avoid damage to the existing building, for instance by differential erosion or by damage at fixing points.**

- **Interventions should, be clearly identifiable as such, both physically, by dating, and by documenting the construction and alteration process. The interventions throughout the building should have a common character so that they can be interpreted as being part of a single datable campaign of alteration and records should be kept of all works undertaken.**
- **The materials used in interventions should be of good quality and long lasting.**

8.8 Policies for other buildings and structures

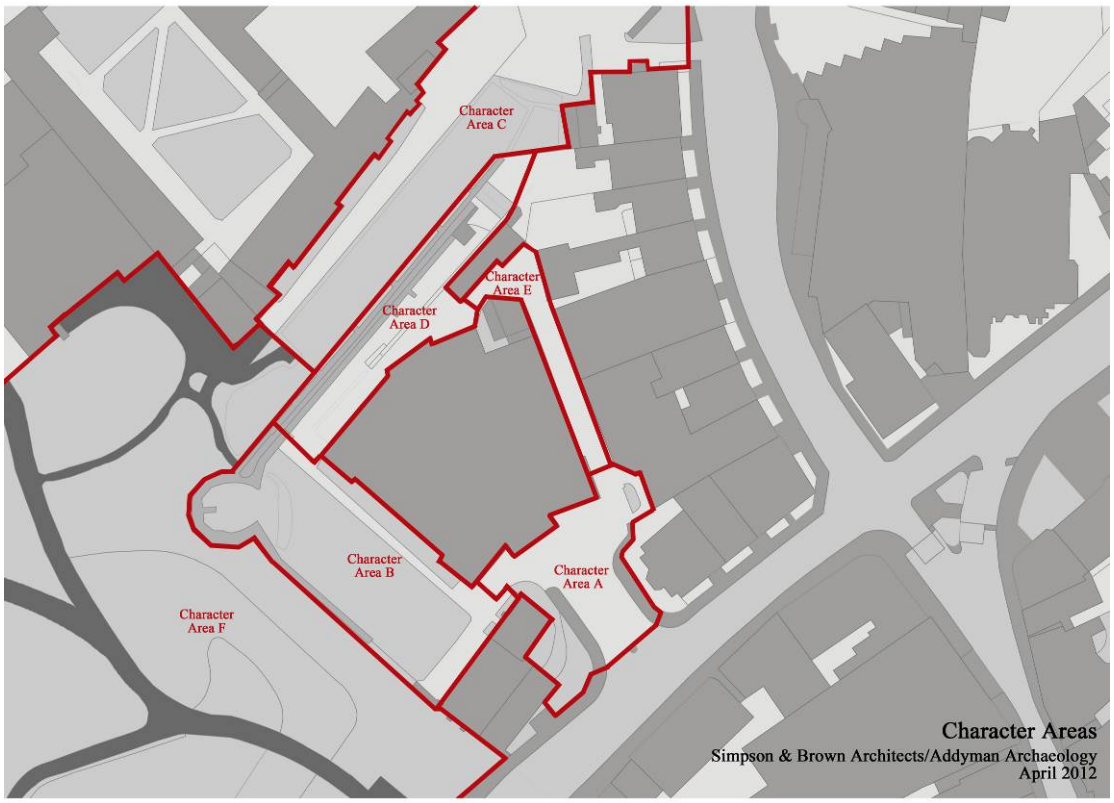


Figure 88 Plan of character areas.

8.8.1 Character Area A

The lack of access from the north end of the pend of St Leonard's Hospital is an unfortunate anomaly in the planning which needs to be addressed.

This lack of access could be addressed by a change in the railings. The railings are important because they are part of the landscaping context design of the Brierley Library front. However railings to the north are currently hidden by a hedge. To the south, at the end of the pend, it would be possible to design alterations to the railings so that the railings have a gap in them possibly between the first and the third pier. The railings could be made to return along the curve as an abrupt termination probably would not be appropriate. A further option would be to form a gate within the railings. Such a gate could be placed centrally between either the first and second or second and third piers due north of the pend.

Policy 42 – Character Area A

It is desirable to improve access between the entrance pend of St Leonard's Hospital and the area which has been designed to the south east of the York

Explore/Central Library building to act as its main approach. An alteration to provide a gate or other form of access is desirable in the southern section of these walls and railings.

The landscape context of the ruin is desirable, and trees should be retained if possible, to retain the setting of the ruin, as part of Museum Gardens. However, the trees are secondary in importance to the medieval structure and should be removed if they pose a threat of damage.

8.8.2 Character Area B

Multangular Tower

This building is of very high significance historically. It is impressive and easy to interpret, particularly from outside the walls. The inside has been excavated and presents a rather gloomy character at lower level than the rest of the lawn to the south of the library. The area is poorly drained and has loose stones in it with some litter. People seldom walk down into this area because they can see it well enough from the path that leads through the medieval wall between the library lawn and museum gardens.

Policy 43 – Character Area B - Multangular Tower

The Multangular Tower is an important and extremely rare survival of Roman defensive architecture. It also is significant for the medieval upper parts of this tower. The building should be repaired and brought to as good a condition as possible for a freestanding masonry structure. There are opportunities for creative reuse of the Multangular Tower either in access to the battlements or in providing a stage or access deck.

The interior of the Multangular Tower is not particularly interesting to the general visitor. It is obviously of high significance in archaeological terms but this does not translate into an interesting visitor experience. An effective city walls interpretation panel is placed on the medieval wall nearby.

Figure 89 Photograph of interior of the Multangular Tower.

It might be possible to introduce a structure to the interior of the Multangular Tower in a way that aids interpretation and does not detract from its significance.

Policy 44 –Architectural interventions at the Multangular Tower

The design of an intervention to the Roman and medieval walls should be carried out in such a way that it achieves the following objectives:

- **The design must respect the significance of the existing buildings and its setting. It should be innately attractive but it should not intrude on aesthetic or historical appreciation. Apart from repair, the intervention to these structures should be kept to a minimum.**
- **The design of an intervention must respect the existing fabric of the walls. It is important to avoid alteration or damage to the existing fabric. The interface between a new element and the existing fabric must be carefully considered to avoid damage to the existing building, for instance by differential erosion or by damage at fixing points. Fixing points into the Roman and medieval masonry could only be justified by a considerable conservation or interpretation benefit.**
- **Interventions should, be clearly identifiable as such, both physically, by dating, and by documenting the construction and alteration process. The interventions throughout the building should have a common character so that they can be interpreted as being part of a single datable campaign of alteration and records should be kept of all works undertaken.**
- **The materials used in interventions should be of good quality and long lasting.**
- **The red brick band should remain visible and should not be altered, damaged, disguised or covered up.**

Sarcophagi

In the interior lower level of the Multangular Tower ruin are seven sarcophagi, including one for a child, and two sarcophagi lids. There is no interpretation of what they are or where they were excavated. They are vulnerable to the effects of weathering and vandalism. They should be catalogued, recorded and consideration given to their conservation.

South City Walls

The Roman wall to the east of the Multangular Tower is of very high significance in archaeological terms. It is relatively easy to interpret because it is easy to understand it as a piece of Roman legionary fortress and it is easy to show in interpretation. The wall is remarkably complete. It seems to be largely complete with wallhead and has relatively few alterations. There is a gap in the wall close to the surviving remains of St Leonard's Hospital.

Policy 45 – Character Area B - City Walls

The south part of the city walls are an important survival. Within the masonry they contain significant areas of Roman masonry but also contain evidence of alterations and even events, such as damage during the civil war. These walls should be repaired and maintained in as good a condition as possible for freestanding masonry walls. The gap towards the eastern end of this wall next to the St Leonard's Hospital requires architectural treatment, possibly to retain the existing barrier.

On the south side of the Roman wall are three mature trees. These trees could present a long-term threat to the masonry by falling branches, etc. The health of these trees should be monitored and the trees managed appropriately. Also to the south of this wall is an area of grass which allows both inspection and interpretation of the wall but this is compromised by a serpentine flower and shrub bed which contains some pieces of Roman and Medieval masonry. This flower and shrub bed disguises the significance of both the Roman wall and the entrance to St Leonard's Hospital. It is advised that this flower bed and the trees should be removed and replaced with grass, although some of the trees could remain in the medium term. The same is the case with the trees to the south which hide the section of wall to the south east.

The part of this wall which is broken down has been made secure with a railing. The gap in the wall relates to the history of the site because it was formed to provide access to the stables which occupied the area of the library in the 18th and early 19th centuries. This railing appears to date from the 1920s because it is in the same style as railings next to the library. The railings are placed about 2m in front of the outer face of the wall. The position of these railings is a bit confusing in terms of interpretation because it forms a barrier which is not on the line of the wall. In the past, there has been a barrier built into the broken ends of the wall but this has been removed.

The cement capping of the wall foundation where it has broken down is not successful. It has eroded and will soon break down further. There are some tree roots in this area. It is suggested that the physical barrier for this gap should be placed on the line of the Roman wall. However, some consideration should be given as to whether a physical division is needed here. In terms of interpretation, it is clearly important to show that this wall was a continuous barrier, although underneath it should be obvious to most visitors. This gap in the wall does provide an opportunity for more permeability between some areas on the abbey grounds and the library lawn. It also offers an opportunity for better circulation and views to and from the St Leonard's Hospital ruin. Removal or replace this barrier would require Scheduled Monument Consent.

8.8.3 Character Area C

This area has an interesting history associated with the medieval walls. There is also the interesting and historically significant tunnel, cut through from this western side of the medieval rampart, to one of the mews buildings in character area D. This led to the early nineteenth-century antiquarian interest in the Anglian Tower before it was excavated in the twentieth century. The tunnel was filled in at some point in the early twentieth century. The physical, archaeological evidence of the tunnel structure is important.

Policy 46 – Character Area C - City Walls bank

It is desirable that the 19th century tunnel is opened up and restored so that it can be interpreted. The passage to the tunnel through the Anglian Tower into the mews building should also be interpreted for visitors.

8.8.4 Character Area D

These remains consist of a section of Roman wall with some evidence of an interval tower. To the north of the interval tower is the "Anglian" tower, a vaulted tower constructed with a different type of limestone and built into the Roman wall. This is

a survival of exceptional rarity. A 19th century passage has been cut through the tower and the tower vault has been repaired in brick at roughly the same time. The Roman wall had an earth bank to the east of it. The profile of this bank is one of the former ground level profiles interpreted at the north end of the excavation site. The east side of the Roman wall is rough because it was a retaining wall facing into earth on this side. Roman masonry of the same quality as the masonry seen on the south wall is evident on the west face. This is also a remarkable survival. There is quite a lot of evidence of alteration on this wall which is of general interest archaeologically.

To the west, and dominating the site, is the medieval city wall. This stands to its full height including remains of the wall and the embrasures, merlons and a double triangular cope. This wall had its footings at a higher level than the surviving Roman wall and it is probable that when the city wall came to be built the line of the Roman wall had become hidden. Otherwise it would have been possible to build up from the line of the Roman wall as was done at the Multangular Tower. The area below the city wall on the eastern side has been supported with concrete columns. This is a considerable work of engineering which was required to allow the excavated archaeological site to the east to remain visible. The columns and the general area below the foundations of the medieval city wall have been filled in with concrete with a mosaic of rounded stones placed here to make it evident that this is modern infill rather than historic masonry. A similar technique has been used to show the profiles of the banks at the northern end of the site.

Figure 90 Photographs of the mews buildings.

Although a relatively humble building, this building has a vernacular quality which is attractive and worth retaining. It is more attractive than any of the other mews buildings on the lane to the north of the library. The building would look better if the two extensions in the third and fourth openings from the north were removed and the original wall line recovered. It would be a pity to lose this attractive background building and better to find a use for it.

This building is significant as a record of the mews provision associated with the houses on St Leonard's Place. It has higher evidential and aesthetic value than the other mews buildings, which are much more altered, and is therefore more significant. The significance is added to by the link between the garden of the house at the north western end of St Leonard's Place and the central mews building is evident in the remains of the tunnel which was cut through. This tunnel is an interesting historical fact rather than having any aesthetic significance but it does show how a mews building could be linked to a house and the importance for one particular owner to link two elements of their property. The west wall of this building is the medieval wall associated with St Leonard's Monastery. If the mews buildings were demolished, which is not advised in this conservation plan, then this back wall should remain as freestanding medieval masonry.

The exposure of the Roman and Anglian remains was controversial when the archaeological work was done. The archaeological remains that were exposed are of very great interest to archaeologists and tell us a considerable amount about the Roman wall, together with the discovery of the Anglian tower and information about the walls associated with St Leonards and the medieval city wall. However, in terms of condition, these walls are now far more vulnerable than they were when covered by the Norman and later banks. The remains that we have now were safe from decay for a period of over 800 years because they were protected under the ground. They have suffered more damage through erosion of weather and, to some extent, by poorly judged clearance work, in the last 40 years than at any time in the preceding 1600 years. This damage will continue unless action is taken to improve the way that these walls are protected.

Figure 91 Photographs of character area D.

Part of the reason that the walls are not particularly well protected is that they are not valued by people other than by specialists interested in Roman, "Anglian", and Medieval history. A general visitor, even if interested in York's history, will understand relatively little from the experience of visiting this site. There is little interpretation and the way that the area is presented makes it look like a series of passages rather than a series of retaining walls. The route through the Anglian tower was originally intended to form a through route for the visitor between the east and west passages but this has now been blocked off with an ugly and ad hoc arrangement of timber frames and plastic coated wire mesh to prevent access to the interior of the Anglian tower. One of the most important factors which explains the history of these walls - the earth bank between them and over them - is missing.

In addition, the experience of visiting this area is not particularly pleasant. On the day of inspection, there were pools of water in poorly drained areas around the Anglian tower. There are pieces of stone debris which have fallen off the walls, together with general rubbish, such as beer cans and plastic bags. This gives the area an intimidating quality. There is no natural surveillance over the area. A visitor might not feel comfortable in walking along these paths because they would not be able to see an "escape route" and, in fact, the two passages are dead ends which could pose a risk to personal safety.

There is a considerable imbalance here. The archaeological remains are of great significance but that significance cannot be understood by the general visitor who can hardly be impressed by the confusing arrangement of masonry, the general untidiness, and the lack of explanation of what they are seeing. The significance of this site led to a considerable investment of money in presenting the site in the 1960s. The engineering works that support the medieval wall and allowed the spaces to the east to be excavated must have been a considerable investment, as was the stone

paving in the eastern of the passages with the walls of the interval tower picked out in small stones. An archaeologist, Jeffrey Radley, was killed during these excavations.

The rate of decay of the remains suggests that it is not sustainable to leave the walls without further action taken to protect them. There are various options that allow the conservation of this area to be addressed.

Policy 47 – Character Area D - Walls

It is essential that the rate of decay on the Roman Wall is reduced to a negligible amount of decay per year. The current rate of decay is an unacceptable conservation issue which requires an alteration to protect these walls.

These walls could be protected by rough racking, turf topping, the construction of some form of shelter over the walls.

In simplest terms, it would be necessary to improve the weathering ability of the walls. This is particularly the case with the Roman wall. The city wall still retains its copes, although some further weathering protection is desirable on the wall walk line. The remains of the St Leonard's wall also could benefit from better wallhead protection. This wallhead protection could be made by better quality rough racking using hydraulic lime mortar which is a better quality version of the work which was done when the walls were first consolidated, or by turf topping. Turf topping is a way of placing clay and grass on top of the wall in a way which protects it. Turf topping would reduce the amount of interpretation possible in the wall and might further inhibit interpretation but it is a more effective way of protecting exposed masonry wallheads than rough racking.

A more effective way of protecting the archaeological remains would be to build a shelter over them. Some of the Roman coffins could be better placed in this area. Using them as planting boxes is no worse than their current arrangement in flower beds.

Policy 48 –Architectural interventions around the Roman walls and Anglian Tower

The design of an intervention at the Roman walls should be carried out in such a way that it achieves the following objectives:

- **The design must respect the significance of the existing buildings and its setting. It should be innately attractive. Any intervention to the existing fabric should be fully justified in terms of the findings of the conservation plan. The main need for intervention is driven by the condition of the walls, and the need to protect them from rainwater.**
- **The design must respect the existing fabric of the structure. It is important to avoid alteration or damage to the existing fabric. The interface between a new element and the existing fabric must be carefully considered to avoid damage to the existing structure, for instance by differential erosion or by damage at fixing points. Fixings can be made to 1970s masonry or to the wall at the brick mews building, but not to earlier masonry.**
- **Interventions should, be clearly identifiable as such, both physically, by dating, and by documenting the construction and alteration process. The interventions throughout the building should have a common character so that they can be interpreted as being part of a single datable campaign of alteration and records should be kept of all works undertaken.**
- **The materials used in interventions should be of good quality and long lasting.**

8.8.5 Character Area F

There are many important views within the museum gardens. The landscape is designed to frame and reveal views along paths towards important buildings, such as the Yorkshire Museum. Almost all the views along paths and towards buildings within the museum gardens are significant and should be respected.

The views towards the Mint Yard area and its buildings are some of the least designed views towards important buildings in Museum Gardens. On entering from Museum Street, there is a restricted view towards the south side of St Leonard's Hospital. This is further restricted by an ice-cream kiosk. Views which could be expected from the path a few metres in from the gates (about 10m) through the gap in the wall towards the centre of the City Library/York Explore building are restricted by trees and flower beds. This might partly be because the museum gardens were laid out when there was nothing particularly interesting to look at beyond the City Wall. Now that library lawn and the York Explore building have been built this design might be modified. The original layout of the gardens is significant and it should be recorded.

There has been a significant change in the maturity of the trees. Some trees could threaten the condition of the wall. These trees stand within 1m of some very significant historic masonry. It must be expected that, at some point in the future, they will grow to such an extent that they will threaten the masonry and will need to be removed.

The recognition of the significance of the Roman and Medieval Walls across the south side of library lawn, together with the view through the gap has much greater significance in contemporary perception than it did when Museum Gardens were laid out. The Museum Garden layout is significant but we now have greater understanding of the design and intended impression to be conveyed by the Roman fortification. The current layout of Museum Gardens with dense trees and flower beds blocking most views towards the south wall works against the interpretation and understanding of the Roman remains. Some modification of the flower beds and some removal of trees, particularly where the flower bed comes closest to the gap in the wall, could be desirable in terms of retention of significance and interpretation. A very careful analysis of the relative significance of the wall and the landscape needs to be considered to justify any change.

Sarcophagi and masonry fragments

Within the flower beds of Museum Gardens to the south of the Mint Yard area, some Roman sarcophagi have been placed in a decorative but slightly *ad hoc* fashion. Although the impression is supposed to be a romantic one of ancient masonry scattered within a flower bed, the actual impression is different. Firstly, some of the coffins have been left vertically projecting out of the ground. This gives some of the quality of a horror film and looks bizarre. The second impression is of significant carved ancient masonry left to decay. The stones are covered in moss and have many cracks. Some are on their side. Some of the coffins are likely to collect water which will damage them by freezing and thawing.

There is a careless character to leaving stones of heritage value in this position. Perhaps it suggests that York has so many ancient stones of importance that some can just be left lying on the ground. In addition, there is no interpretation to explain what these stones are or where they are from. Even if interpreted, they are clearly in

the wrong place. There are unlikely to have been coffins in this area with this relationship to the Roman fort wall.

Similarly, the stones used to form edges to flower beds in the area to the retaining walls in the rock garden and fernery to the north west of the Multangular Tower are tracery stones from St Mary's Abbey and possibly also from St Leonard's Hospital. Many of these stones are significant. Again, the impression is that medieval stones are of so little consequence in York that they can be left in a flower bed to decay.

These stones will decay eventually because they are exposed to the rain, because they have been located into position roughly with cement and because they will be subject to the action of frost. This decay will be slow but some significant traces, such as mortar in bed joints or any traces of painted or lime wash finish on tracery will be lost. It is important to understand whether this use of medieval stones to form retaining walls is an original design feature of the layout of Museum Gardens or whether it has been adopted more recently. Even if it is an original feature it should be considered along with the significance that we now place in medieval tracery stones compared to the relative lack of interest in their conservation when this fernery was formed.

An additional issue is that the walls as formed are not particularly attractive, particularly due to their cement pointing. They will have to be rebuilt when they become unstable due to the action of roots and water washing through them. The garden is also made unattractive by the use of bitumen paths and concrete steps.

All masonry fragments should be catalogued, recorded and proper consideration given to their conservation.

8.9 Materials

There is guidance available for almost all circumstances that might be encountered in a building of historic significance on the site. English Heritage produce a number of useful guides. When specifying materials it is important that the designer understands how buildings and structures were intended to function technically when constructed and how changes in design or operation might have changed this system.

Policy 49 - Materials

The construction materials in significant buildings and structures should be respected, and repairs should be carried out with regard to the policy on repairs in this conservation plan. In specifying repairs or replacement of materials in any building it is important to have read the relevant guidance.

8.9.1 Brick

Brick is the material of the bonding courses of the Roman structures, the walls of the library and the buildings and walls around character area E.

Where bricks have decayed, brushing back is preferable to replacement because it is difficult to make bricks match to an original in colour or texture. Brickwork can be repointed. Original pointing should be understood by analysis but it might be necessary to form a new and softer pointing mix if the brick is clearly decaying compared to the mortar surrounding it.

The approach to brickwork in its traditional use is similar to that of any other masonry. In most cases on this site, the brickwork is a facing skin in front of a cavity which will be drained. The use of brick as a cladding material will influence the practicality of repair but also the specification of mortars and location of weep holes. Historic brick is also used as a material for retaining walls, for example in character area C.

8.9.2 Rubble Stone

Within the structures on the site, rubble stone is used in a variety of ways in structures dating from different periods. In the Roman structures, it is used behind the ashlar *saxa quadrata* (squared stones) of the outward-facing parts of the elevations. Because the inner face of the walls was intended to be concealed beneath a rampart, there is no ashlar facing, and with the partial removal of the inner ramparts, the rubble is largely exposed. The Anglian Tower is built of oolithic limestone rubble, bonded with mortar. The medieval city walls and St Leonard's Hospital also have rubble stone, used for the foundations, and core between outer skins of ashlar. However, there are also some areas of rubble outer skins, sometimes where there has been repair.

The general forms of decay of rubble stone are loss of pointing, and erosion to the stone surface caused by mortar with excessive amounts of cement, salts from cement or clay content in the stone itself, laying stone on the wrong bedding materials, and incorporating ferrous fixtures that expand and crack the stone.

In the conservation of stone, it is essential to understand that the way that the stone wall works is to absorb water in wet weather and evaporate in dry weather. Traditional construction enables moisture movement, and modern construction generally forms an impermeable barrier. Cement is an impermeable material. Most defects in masonry walling and its repair result from the misunderstanding that the mortar joint is designed to prevent rather than accommodate moisture movement. The use of traditional lime mortars is essential to the conservation of stone masonry. The mortar in a joint is, to some extent, sacrificial since it is easier to repair and repoint a joint than it is to replace an eroded stone. The mortar in the joint should be softer and better at absorption and evaporation than the stones it surrounds.

Analysis of any original or long surviving lime mortars is a good basis for specifying appropriate replacement mortars.

Buildings built in the early twentieth century, like the library, sometimes had cement added to traditional mortar mixes in order to speed up setting and drying times. In these circumstances it would not be appropriate to match the original mortar specification if it has caused decay in the stonemasonry.

Policy 50 – Rubble Masonry Repair

The most common type of work required to masonry is to rake out and repoint the joints. All pointing should be carried out using a lime based mortar so that the wall will have an improved ability to evaporate moisture. By using a well-judged mix of lime mortar, masonry can be made to perform well technically. Some physical investigation is needed to analyse existing mortar mixes.

8.9.3 Ashlar Stone

This type of stone finish is used as an outer facing on the facing parts of the Roman structures, the city walls and St. Leonard's Hospital. Ashlar dressings are also used on the library.

Very few stone indents are required on the buildings generally following comprehensive repair.

The most common form of decay in ashlar stone is similar to the decay described above for rubble stone masonry and also has similar causes. The use of lime mortars is also essential although the work of repointing is often more technically demanding because the joints are narrower. The narrower joints require a finer aggregate. The finer joints are more likely to dry out rapidly and so require more careful protection than is generally adopted for a rubble wall.

The normal repair work to a dressed stone is to cut out the entire extent of the stone and replace it with matching stone of the same colour, weathering, characteristics and surface tooling. Often during an indenting programme stones are cut out to a particular depth, say 150mm, and secured back to the original masonry using non-ferrous cramps and dowels.

Policy 51 – Replacement of ashlar stones

Where the condition of dressed stones threatens the structure of a wall, they should be replaced with new limestone to match the original in every respect including density and porosity, colour, texture and coursing pattern.

The conservation approach to masonry repair is not to replace every dressed stone which has a blemish on it. The stone can be technically effective within a wall and not visually distracting, even if it has lost some of its surface through erosion or by the surface peeling away. Stones should be selected for replacement only where their decay affects the structural capability of a wall or where the erosion conducts water into the wall masonry.

The decay of stone is a slow process and the likely frequency of masonry repairs should be considered when stones are being chosen for indenting or renewal. It might be judged, for instance, that a building could be scaffolded again in 50 or 75 years time. Some stones will have decayed to the point where they need to be replaced the next time the building is scaffolded and so do not need to be replaced in a particular campaign.

A need to replace stones because they reinstate a missing part of the design is discussed in the separate 'Restoration and Reinstatement' policy above.

8.9.4 Cement and Lime

The need for traditional mortars in repair work is described above for rubble and ashlar masonry. Analysis of original mortars should be undertaken but the results should be reviewed critically because the original mortar is not necessarily right for the stone. Often, the walls were built with a different bedding mortar from the pointing mortar used to fill the joints up to the surface of the wall.

Because mortars were designed to encourage the maximum amount of evaporation from a wall, traditional practice was to bring the mortar flush to the wall plane rather than recessed some millimetres behind it. In a wall which has eroded stone, this often means increasing the area of mortar considerably. A decision has to be made about

the aesthetic issues in leaving a greater amount of mortar visible. The aesthetic quality will depend on the skill of the mason carrying out the work.

In many places, cement repairs have been made at dressed stones, generally to avoid the expense of an indent.

Policy 52 – Cement and lime

Cement repairs are almost always an inappropriate repair and should be reversed where possible.

8.9.5 Lead

It is relatively rare to find lead of such historic significance that it should be preserved in situ. This could apply to lead downpipes and hoppers as much as it could to roof cladding. In most cases, lead is not conserved but replaced. The reason for this is that lead has a 100 to 120 year lifespan even when it is well detailed. Replacement to contemporary Lead Sheet Association detailing is generally the best way to be certain that a roof will perform adequately.

Where graffiti exists on old leadwork, this sometimes gives useful information about previous campaigns of repair. Graffiti should be recorded and sometimes panels with graffiti should be cut out and preserved when the rest of the lead is removed. Such panels can be discretely lead burned onto the face of new leadwork or fixed in a roof space near to the access to a roof.

The plumbing and copper working industry has particularly good guidelines for successful technical design. The critical issues are to ensure that the design allows for expansion and contraction, and that the underside of the lead is ventilated because lead can be corroded by condensation. The main factor that erodes lead is organic acids at the run off points from slates and so sacrificial flashings should be inserted at all of these run off points and below the points where a rainwater pipe discharges onto leadwork. These sacrificial flashings are expected to last 20 to 30 years and should be specifically inspected during regular inspection reports.

Specification of lead and copper roofs carries a current concern of theft. Security measures should be considered wherever a lead or copper roof is designed or specified.

Policy 53 - Conservation of Leadwork

In repair and reinstatement, leadwork should be detailed to a standard well established for historic buildings work and maintained by members of the Lead Sheet Association. Sacrificial flashings should be used at all points where water that has run over slates passes on to lead surfaces.

8.9.6 Paint

A regular cycle of repainting external timber and metalwork is desirable. Some original paints will contain lead. In general, it is not desirable in conservation terms to remove all paint since the previous paint layers contain evidence about the history of the building. However, there may be circumstances where the removal of previous paint layers will allow original decorative detail to be fully expressed, without years of clogging paint, for example in ironwork. Sometimes the removal of paint layers back to bare metal or timber is the correct preparation for a paint system.

Where possible, original colours should be established and reused. Original colours can be established by microscope paint analysis. The surface scrape is not always reliable because it is not always clear which colours were surface colours and which were undercoats. It also does not account for colours fading. Pure white paints were difficult to achieve in historic buildings and so even where the original colour was a white, it is likely to be an off-white, cream, or canvas colour on modern colour palettes.

The choice and specification of paint colours is usually less of a risk to the overall significance of a building than repairs to longer lasting materials like stone. Because paint has to be renewed relatively frequently within the life of a building, the choice of paint colours can be more subject to contemporary taste in the appropriate appearance for a building.

York Explore retains evidence of significant paint schemes from the period of its construction. The spaces of interest in this respect include the upper and lower entrance hall, the main ground floor rooms, the external window colour.

8.9.7 Windows and doors

Policy 54 – Metal Windows

Metal windows should be overhauled and painted. In general, later inserted vents and alterations to windows should be removed and the pane affected by the alteration replaced using float glass. Opening parts should be returned to working order.

Guidance for the conservative repair for timber windows has been produced both by Historic Scotland and by SPAB. If replacements are made they should match the section width of the original frame, glazing bars, mouldings, sill etc. exactly. A paint sample analysis should be carried out which would indicate the decorative history and the original colour.

Secondary glazing of historic windows is often required, either to protect glazing of value, such as leaded or stained glass, or to improve the heat retention or sound deafening properties of a window opening.

Policy 55– Secondary Glazing

Secondary glazing on the inside of openings may be possible but care should be taken to align the frame with divisions in the existing windows so that secondary glazing is not obvious.

External glass is sometimes subject to vandalism. Methods of protecting glass from vandalism include secondary glazing or fitting mesh guards. Often, mesh guards are preferred because they do not create a blank external appearance and because they do not create overheating and ventilation problems. Stainless steel guards are less susceptible to corrosion damage than mild steel or galvanised equivalents. Guards look best if they are powder coat painted in a mid to dark grey colour so that they blend in with the leaded glass behind.

Policy 56 – External Doors

Original joinery should be finished with original colours and timber treatment, as far as can be determined from microscope paint analysis. Paint analysis should investigate door, frame and fanlight joinery. Individual repairs should be made to

decay at doors. In situ replacement of decayed timber is preferable to wholesale replacement joinery elements.

Ironmongery which is original to doors and windows or which was fitted very early in the life of doors and windows should be retained, overhauled and reused wherever possible. There are many sources for appropriate replica ironmongery which would be compatible with the general appearance of a door or window. Although expensive, it is possible to overhaul and recondition existing locks so that they are serviceable.

Policy 57 – Ironmongery

Where it is not possible to determine the original arrangement for the ironmongery and door handles and locks, the appearance of new ironmongery should not distract visually from the appearance of the doors.

8.9.8 Slate

The south and east blocks of the library are roofed in stone slates.

Where possible, slated pitches should be overhauled by replacing slipped, cracked, missing or any inappropriate replacement slates with second hand salvaged slates to match the existing. Where overhauling is not possible, for instance due to general corrosion of the underside of slates, extensive cracking and splitting of slates, by wholesale corrosion of the nails, or defective lath, then stripping and reslating is recommended. Sound existing slates should be reused wherever possible. Sometimes the appearance of the salvaged slates is not the same as the second hand slates brought to the site and so it makes sense, in terms of the appearance of the building, to reuse all of the slates salvaged from its roofs on some more prominent pitches, leaving other pitches to be entirely slated with slates from another source.

Slating should be carried out to current guidelines. Copper nails are used in high specification conservation projects. The need for ugly ventilators is reduced by the use of a vapour and air permeable underslate felt.

In some cases, when the conservation of a design depends on an appearance of slate which matches the original appearance, it is appropriate to use newly-quarried slate.

Policy 58 – Slates

As many as possible of the existing slates should be reused. Maintenance of slating should continue and roof coverings should be periodically overhauled.

8.9.9 Flat roofs

There are roofs covered in felt and asphalt on the Library building. These types of roof are not significant. They were not intended to be seen in the context of the design of the building and are possibly a replacement for an earlier roof material. Some 20th century buildings had asphalt roofs originally. It is conservation practice to replace materials like-for-like and this applies to asphalt roofs. However, it sometimes makes more sense for maintenance that short life materials should be replaced with materials of longer life, such as lead or copper.

The biggest effect on the appearance of a building in changing the material is on a flat roof at the junctions at the edge of a roof.

8.9.10 Gutters and Downpipes

The downpipes on the library building on the south and east side overflow during heavy rain with water running down the outside face of the wall. The downpipes are also clearly inadequate in carrying away water from the flat area on top of the vaults of St Leonard's Hospital. During heavy rain, water cascades over the downpipes on the western edge.

The gutters and downpipes are however generally in fair condition but require continued regular maintenance. The cycle of painting of all external ironwork should be between five and ten years. Each time external ironwork is painted it should be thoroughly prepared and treated with a rust inhibiting primer. Where joints are leaking they can sometimes be re-caulked in situ. Taking down of profiled gutters is to be avoided due to the large amount of consequent slating work and the difficulty of returning gutters to precisely their original position. Removing gutters for resetting often damages the cast iron elements more than the damage that the repair was originally intended to solve. Sometimes the original design of pipes and hoppers can be determined from photographs.

Policy 59 – Gutters and Downpipes

Gutters and downpipes should be repaired wherever possible and replaced in a like-for-like basis in terms of material and design.

If any cast elements are cracked or are damaged, new iron elements can be cast using the existing pieces as templates.

All external metalwork should be kept well maintained and painted.

Frequent inspection is required to ensure that gutters are cleared out and that pipes are not blocked.

8.9.11 Ventilation

Traditional buildings worked by encouraging ventilation. In simple vernacular buildings, ventilation was through the gaps around doors and windows, and was encouraged to circulate by fires in fireplaces. As construction became more complex with the introduction of new materials, such as panelling or cavities behind plasterwork, the ventilation of an entire structure became less consistent and reliable. Consideration needs to be given to the ventilation of concealed voids, particularly where there has been a history of water penetration or damp masonry. Sometimes it is necessary to introduce ventilators to skirtings or plasterwork to ventilate a void where there has not been ventilation before. Ventilation is also needed at positions where condensation would cause damage, such as under slated roofs or lead roof decks.

8.9.12 Inspection and Maintenance of Buildings and Structures

Every building needs regular maintenance to keep the wearing and weathering surfaces in good order and to protect the vulnerable internal fabric from consequent damage. Systematic care based on good maintenance and housekeeping is both cost-effective and fundamental to good conservation. Early action can often prevent decay and avoid the need for major repair later.

Policy 60 – Maintenance

Regular maintenance and good housekeeping is required to maintain York Explore and the other structures within the policies in good repair, particularly at roof and wallhead level.

Regular inspections should be made as follows:

- **A normal watch should be kept from the ground for leaks, overflowing gutters, blocked downpipes, drains etc**
- **Every month the pipes from the flat roofs around the library and of the St Leonard's ruin should be checked for blockages**
- **Every six months, at the end of the autumn and in the spring, the roofs and rainwater goods of all buildings should be inspected and the gutters cleaned out, as required**
- **Every year, the whole building should be inspected with the aid of a tradesman. All roof spaces and coverings, installations, fittings and woodwork should be examined, and particular attention paid to any sign of damp, insect or fungal attack. Drains should be rodded out**
- **Fire extinguishers and all other appliances are to be serviced annually;**
- **Every five years there should be a conservation accredited architect or surveyor's 'quinquennial' inspection. The recommendations of the inspection should be adopted and implemented;**
- **Electrical wiring and other installations should be tested every five years.**

A maintenance regime for the building and walls should be prepared by a conservation accredited professional. The regime should be formally adopted as part of the overall management strategy for the site.

An annual sum should be set aside for inspection and maintenance purposes, and an allowance made for inflation.

The main areas which require regular maintenance are the slated pitches, flat roofs and gutters. Some of these areas have relatively easy access such as the flat roofs over and around the central part of the main ground floor library. The gutters on the outward facing pitches of library could be cleared using ladders.

The building owner, managers and staff working on the building must consider risks to their health and safety when carrying out maintenance work. Clearly, there is less risk if the same people are responsible for maintenance each time. As well as experience, there will be a well established way of doing the work which can be recorded in a method statement attached to the maintenance plan.

Fall-arrest wire fixing points to support safety harnesses could be introduced through the slating next to the gutters.

Policy 61 – Maintenance: Health & Safety

Full advice on the measures which might improve health and safety are outside the scope of this conservation plan and should be sought separately.

A maintenance plan and schedule is needed and should be prepared for the building and structures within the landscape.

As part of a maintenance plan, a health and safety method statement should be included. This should record the risks involved in maintaining various parts of the building. It should also indicate what measures are necessary to minimise these risks. Advice from an access equipment specialist, in discussion with the staff who carry out the maintenance, would consider the additional safety measures, such as barriers and harness points.

8.10 Views

The view from Museum Street and its southern part towards the bridge emphasised the site of St Leonard's Hospital. St Leonard's is largely screened by trees which pass up much higher than the height of the hospital ruins or the library behind it. To the right is a view along Museum Street and the tower of St Wilfrid's RC Church and the northern of the two western towers of the Minster beyond. Both the St Wilfrid's tower and the pinnacled towers of the Minster are the most characteristic and exciting part of this view. Museum Street curves around to meet the west front of the Minster but there are trees blocking the view of the lowest level.

In views from Lendal Bridge the trees next to and in front of St Leonard's Hospital obscure the hospital ruin and York Explore is not visible. Lendel Tower is more prominent in views from the bridge. From the western pathway of the bridge, there is no view towards the Minster. This view is obscured by the buildings on Museum Street and the tower of St Wilfrid's Church, which is the most prominent point in this view.

In the view from the City Walls and the wall walk south of Barker Tower along the river, there is an important view. This is a much photographed view where the minster rises up over Lendal Bridge and the red brick buildings on the east side of Museum Street. The central tower of the Minster and the two western towers with their pinnacles are prominent. The tower of St Wilfrid's church is also visible but rather oddly dominated by the Minster. Views towards the Mint Yard site, the library, and St Leonard's are completely hidden by trees.

Views of the standing structures in the site could be enhanced in darkness with lighting. They are currently invisible in the dark, in comparison with other well-illuminated buildings, like York Minster. As discussed in this conservation plan, many structures in the Mint Yard are of high cultural significance and therefore of international importance. This could be emphasised with lighting structures like the Multangular Tower. Lights in a highly archaeologically-sensitive area would require careful design by a lighting contractor with experience in lighting heritage assets, archaeological assessment of specific plans, and monitoring by an archaeologist during installation. Suitable permissions would also be required from City of York Council and English Heritage.

8.11 Archaeology

If potential archaeological issues are considered at an early stage, there may be considerable potential for improving understanding and therefore the efficiency in developing future proposals that effect changes to archaeology.

Policy 62 – Archaeological Issues: General

A pro-active awareness of potential archaeological issues that may have a bearing upon future development proposals should be maintained by managers and staff of Mint Yard.

A gazetteer of sites, buildings and major site features has been drawn together as part of this conservation plan. This has listed the major features that constitute the significance of the site. Gazetteers provide both a comprehensive record of the site and a systematically organised management tool.

Policy 63 – Gazetteer

Consideration should be given to up-grade the existing gazetteers prepared for the conservation plan to provide a systematic feature-by-feature gazetteer (or detailed catalogue) of the buildings, gardens and structures and to link these with a detailed mapping exercise.

While a building recording exercise would be in accordance with requirements such as Listed Building Consent, a general approach to recording could be more systematically applied, imaginatively organised, and coordinated with wider research at the site.

This would be a particular advantage for planning-related matters and provides the possibility of proactive assessment of the cultural heritage implications that can be fed into any application process at an early stage.

Policy 64 – Building Recording

A pragmatic regime of building recording should be developed in advance of, and during repairs/alterations to historic structures on the site.

Policy 65 – Wider Research

An inter-disciplinary approach to the research of the site should be promoted and a research framework established.

In general terms it is suggested there is considerable potential for research and conservation.

Policy 66 – Publication of Research

The results of any recording and archaeological work should be formally published, in conjunction with the results of any ongoing historical study.

8.12 Access, Interpretation and Management

At present, the public are able to access key spaces within York Explore and they are also able to see all of the surrounding area.

Policy 67 – Public Access

Public access to the buildings and site should continue and be encouraged.

At the moment, access is restricted to the north vault of the St Leonard's Hospital ruin. It is not possible to gain access at all to the upper level.

Compliance with the Equality Act may create potential conflicts with recommendations in the conservation plan for protection of historic fabric and visual appreciation of the buildings and landscape.

The listing of a building does not in itself preclude access improvements. However, where a solution to improve access conflicts with the need to preserve the heritage value of a property, discussions should be held with the local authority and EH. The local authority has now instigated a formal pre-application process (see City of York Council webpages).

Figure 92 Accessibility plan.

Policy 68 – Accessibility

The implications of conforming to the Equality Act should be carefully considered with regard to its potentially intrusive effect on the architectural integrity of the building in general, and on the surviving historic fabric.

An Access Audit should be undertaken. The results of the Access Audit must be considered in the context of an intended use and its potential impact on historic fabric.

The site is even more restricted and difficult to access for people with restricted mobility, such as people who depend on wheelchairs.

- Access is possible to the entrance pend of St Leonard's Hospital and from the museum gardens but, as with able bodied people, not between the pend and the rest of the ruin.
- Access is possible from the east to the library lawn but not from the lawn to museum gardens through the gateway to the north of Multangular Tower because this gateway is approached by steps to the eastern side. This gate does have ramp access to the outside of the city walls but this ramp access is too steep for wheelchair access.
- The access around the Roman Walls is more restricted than it would be for able bodied people because there are steps and a change of level around the Anglian Tower. Even if the route through the Anglian Tower were restored, it

would not be accessible for wheelchairs due to restricted width of openings and changes of level.

- Access into the vaults at St Leonard's Hospital building is restricted to some extent by the uneven finish of the floor within the largest of the vaulted areas.
- Access within the York Explore building has been considerably improved by the insertion of a lift. A new access to the centre of the south front would have to be fully accessible by providing platforms and ramps to the exterior area, depending on differences in floor and ground levels.

Although the site contains a major public building and is generally accessible to the public during the day, it does contain barriers to the movement of people across the site. Many of these barriers are an important part of the history of the site and can not be changed. Other barriers are a consequence of ad hoc planning or design over the last century. The nature of the site has always involved physical division. It is an obvious consequence of a site in which the city defensive walls are such an important element. The city walls provide very significant barriers to the south and west. In the western wall there is a door through the wall immediately to the north of the Multangular Tower which is frequently used for visitors passing between museum gardens and the library lawn. The gap in the southern wall is a record of a historic access to the stabling in the 17th and 18th centuries. However, it has now been returned to a physical barrier of railings without the reinstatement of the wall. The library itself was a physical barrier with its south and east fronts being imposing but also slightly intimidating. There is at present no direct access from the south front of York Explore to the library lawn.

The ruin of St Leonard's Hospital contains further barriers which have an impact on the visitors' ability to understand or interpret the hospital. The entrance pend to the east is used as an exhibition area but does not explain the historic role of the entrance way itself. Visitors are often frustrated by the lack of access at the north end of a very obvious historic architectural route. The gate between the area to the north of the entrance pend and the vault to the west is kept locked, although it is possible to see in. There is no access between the entrance pend and the area in front of York Explore or to the library lawn. It is desirable that the railings to the north and south of the access between Museum Street and the front elevation of York Explore would be modified to provide access from the St Leonard's Hospital entrance pend to the south. The northern vault of St Leonards Hospital is not normally accessible to the public.

Although the Roman walls to the north west of the York Explore building are accessible whenever the library lawn is open to the public, this access is not particularly satisfactory. It comprises two separate north-south routes. This is because the route which was intended to connect them in the 1970s, through the Anglian Tower, has now been blocked. The visitor is forced to pass down one or both of two routes along walls and then return back along the same route.

The lane to the north of York Explore is seldom used as a pedestrian access across the site because it looks like a service access. There is a service gate, which is usually open. It provides an almost unrestricted access to the library lawn around the north west side of York Explore. This is not particularly logical since the more heavily used public access to the library lawn to the north west of the St Leonard's Hospital ruin and through the door to museum gardens in the north of the wall to the Multangular Tower are both locked overnight.

The biggest barrier around the site, in terms of its influence on the way that people approach it and move across it, is the development of St Leonard's Place. This block of buildings prevents access to the whole northern edge of the site. When combined with the city walls it means that there is no access either to enter or view the site for the entire edge of the north west or north east - about 50% of the boundary of the study area. This barrier to access has an interesting historical reason. It is due to the way that new housing development in the early 19th century turned its back on the use of the Mint Yard area so that houses face north towards the newly formed street. It would be possible to improve access to a view at the northern corner of the site by providing a path or steps up the bank so that a view down and along the Roman Walls is provided. Further access is possible to the northern end of the medieval city walls to the north west of the site by reinstating the tunnel. It is unlikely, however, that this tunnel could provide an unrestricted public access and would be more appropriate for access for interpretation or as a fire escape from a building.

The information provided on site to inform the tourist or local visitor is remarkably little considering the exceptional significance and interest of the standing remains and the archaeological deposits.

Policy 69 – Interpretation and presentation

Interpretation should be provided on site to explain the history and significance of the various defensive walls and their inter-relationship, to explain the history and significance of St Leonard's Hospital, and to explain the significance of the central library building. The site is of sufficient interest and complexity to need a booklet which can explain the history and development of the site in words and illustrations. There could be some low-level lighting at night.

The current interpretation on the site is not coordinated or consistent. Some very interesting parts of the site, such as the Roman walls to the north west of York Explore and the fragment of St Leonard's Hospital, have very little interpretation considering the importance and interest of the upstanding walls. There is better interpretation to the north of the Multangular Tower which gives the visitor an impression of how the side of the Roman fort facing the side of the River Ouse might have looked. Interpretation of the walls to the north of the Multangular Tower is restricted to an indication of the position of an intermediate tower on the walls and the interesting and creative interpretation of the different ground levels in the bank to the north. Although both of these indicators are of interest in themselves, it would not be possible for the visitor to understand the indications of the different levels of the bank. The fact that the Roman wall and Anglian Tower were under the ground for so long is not made clear, and neither is the very interesting historical circumstance of the discovery of the Anglian Tower during the 19th century.

The interpretation within the entrance pend of St Leonard's Hospital is recent and well written and illustrated. However, this is interpretation about museum gardens rather than the hospital building. It leaves the hospital building and its most significant aspects without interpretation. The visitor is not made aware of the previous extent of the hospital. The scale and ambition of this medieval institution is one of its most significant aspects.

York Explore is a building dedicated to research and understanding. This existing use will be complimented when the archive resource is added.

It is remarkable, however, that there is very little interpretation available about the building itself. It is possible that the building has not been considered to be

significant or worthy of interpretation compared with the more historic walls and areas around it. People should be informed that this building is the last of the Carnegie libraries and that it is a late work by one of Yorkshires most important architects. At the moment, they would have to understand the building from the plaque within the entrance hall and the photographs within the Brierley Room, when the Brierley Room is available for public access. The archive contains copies of the original drawings for the building. These drawings would be of interest and should be more generally accessible to the visitor.

This lack of visual interpretation on boards is the most obvious deficiency in interpretation across the site. In the same way that the conservation issues across the site need to be considered holistically rather than as individual sites with a variety of conservation needs.

Policy 70 – Interpretation: constancy of approach

The interpretation should also be consistent across the entire site. The visitor should be able to readily understand how the site has developed from its inception as a Roman fort through to the present day.

This extraordinary development is one of its most interesting aspects. Although a coordinated set of interpretation boards would help to explain this, there are other possibilities, such as a brochure, audio tour, website, and phone apps.

There are current initiatives for walking tours around York. The Mint Yard site is an essential part of such a walking tour because it is one of the few places where the Roman history is easily interpreted. It has been suggested that the northern vault at St Leonard's Hospital could be used as a venue, meeting place, or meeting and starting place for walking tours. In the presentation associated with walking tours, views towards buildings are important. Physical interventions in the Multangular Tower and city walls to provide better access could detract from views towards buildings that are used to help explain them.

8.12.1 Further Research and Recording

It is recognised that research will remain ongoing for this site. A conservation plan is a dynamic document that should be adapted and updated as required when further information is located or buildings repaired or altered.

Policy 71 – Further research and updating the conservation management plan

Any new information obtained through further research should be used to update this conservation plan as it comes to light. The conservation management plan should in any case be periodically reviewed and updated every five years.

Policy 72 – Recording and Archiving

Prior to any works within the library or any of the structures within the study area, a photographic survey or recording exercise should be undertaken to record the existing fabric.

Copies of any building recording should be kept together with written records in the appropriate archives, particularly the local authority HER.

A copy of this conservation plan, along with a copy of the above records of the building should be deposited in a permanent archive, such as the National Monuments Record. This conservation plan can be edited in the interests of security. The records associated with the conservation of the site should continue to be made publicly available, subject to constraints on security and privacy.

Appendix 1 - Bibliography

Addyman, P V (ed.)

The Archaeology of York (AY) Volume 3, The Legionary Fortress

- 3. Ottaway, P., 1996. 'Excavations and Observations on the Defences and Adjacent Sites, 1971-90'

- 4. Hall, R.A., 1997. Excavations in the *Praetentura:* 9 Blake Street'

Addyman, P.V., 1975. `Excavations in York, 1972-3: First Interim Report', *Antiquaries Journal* 54, 200-31

Addyman, P V and Black, V E (eds), (1984)

Archaeological Papers from York presented to M. W.Barley (York Archaeological Trust)

Archaeological Institute, (1847)

Memoirs Illustrative of the History and Antiquities of the County and City of York (Annual Meeting of the Archaeological Institute, July 1846), London.

Arup (1992)

York Development and Archaeology Study.

Benson, G (1915)

Notes on a Cobble-Road : Uncovered under the vaulted Archway of St. Leonard's Hospital, York; reprint from the Report of the YPS, 1915

Benson, G (1919)

An account of the City and County of York, pt. 2. *Later Medieval York (1100-1603),* York.

Benson, G (1930)

St Leonard's Hospital, Associated Architectural and Archaeological Societies Reports and Papers, Vol 40, pt 1.

Bidwell, P and Hartley, E, with Corcoran, S (2009)

'Constantine at York', paper given in Niš

Bidwell, P (2006)

'Constantius and Constantine at York', in E. Hartley, J. Hawkes, M. Henig and F. Mee (eds.), *Constantine the Great: York's Roman Emperor* (London, 2006), 31-40. York Museums Trust

Cullum, P H (1991)

Cremetts and Corrodies: Care of the Poor *and Sick at St Leonard's Hospital, York, in the Middle* Ages, York, Borthwick Institute of Historical Research (Borthwick Paper 79).

Cullum, P H (1993)

'St Leonard's Hospital, York: The spatial and social analysis of an Augustinian hospital' in Gilchrist, R and Mytum, H (eds). *Advances in Monastic Archaeology,* Oxford, BAR British Series 227 (Oxford), 11-18

Drake, F (1736)
Eboracum

Fawcett, B (2009)
'St Leonard's Place: Its Development and Buildings' in *York Historian* Vol 26, 18-47

Fawcett, B (2011)
George Townsend Andrews of York : 'The Railway Architect', YAYAS / NERA

Gilchrist, R (1995)
Contemplation and Action: The Other Monasticism. London.

Heinrich, A (2002)
'The Making of the Civic Theatre: The History of the Theatre Royal between 1744 and 1945' *York Historian* vol. 19, 74-99

Hunter-Mann, K (2003a)
St Leonard's Hospital, Museum Street, York: Training excavations 2003- 4 (Project Design, unpublished)

Hunter-Mann, K (2003b)
St Leonard's Hospital, Museum Street, York: Training excavations 2001- 2 (York Archaeological Trust, Field Report 2003/15)

Hunter-Mann, K (2003c)
St Leonard's Hospital, Museum Street, York: Training excavations 2003 (York Archaeological Trust, Field Report 2003/55)

Hunter-Mann, K (2004)
St Leonard's Hospital and Roman fortress defences, Museum Street, York: Training excavation 2004. Project design (York Archaeological Trust, Field Report 2004/2)

Hunter-Mann, K (2005)
'From Roman Fortress to Medieval Hospital: Excavations at St Leonard's, York,' *Yorkshire Archaeology Today*, 8, 11-15

Hunter-Mann, K, (2009)
'New light on the Roman fortress defences: A Trajanic date for the Multangular Tower?,' *Yorkshire Archaeology Today* 17, 1-4

Lister, Dr M (1693)
'Roman Wall and Multangular Tower at York', Royal Society, *Philosophical Transactions* XIV, 238

Miller, S N (1925)
'Roman York: Excavations of 1925', *Journal of Roman Studies* 15

Miller, S N (1928)
'Roman York: Excavations of 1926-1927', *Journal of Roman Studies* 18, 61-99

Norton, C (1998)
'The York Fire of 1137: conflagration or consecration?' *Northern History 34,* 194-204

Orme, N and Webster, M (1995)
The English Medieval Hospital 1050-1570, Newhaven: Yale U P.

Ottaway, P J (1993, 2004)
Roman York. English Heritage / Batsford

Palliser, D (1978)
`The mediaeval street names of York', *York Historian 2,* 2-16

Pevsner, N., et al. (1992)
The buildings of England: Yorkshire: York and the East Riding (London, Penguin), 138

Poole, D C (1996)
'St Leonard's Place - A Terrace of Splendour' in *York Historian* Vol 13, 46-61

Radley, J (1972)
`Excavations on the defences of the city of York in an early mediaeval stone tower and the successive earth ramparts', *Yorkshire Archaeological Journal,* 44, 38-64

Raine, A (1955)
Mediaeval York

Rawcliffe, C (1995)
Medicine and Society in later medieval England. Sandpiper Books

RCHME (RCHMY) (1962)
An inventory of the Historic Monuments in the City of York: I. Eburacum, Roman York, HMSO

RCHME (RCHMY) (1972)
An inventory of the Historic Monuments in the City of York: II. The Defences, HMSO

RCHME (RCHMY) (1981)
An inventory of the Historic Monuments in the City of York: V. The Central Area, HMSO

Sloane, B (2000)
'St Leonard's Hospital, York', *Medieval Life* 14, 14-20

Tillott, P M (ed.), (1961)
The Victoria County History of Yorkshire: The City of York. London

Wellbeloved, Rev C, (1842)

Eburacum, or York under the Romans. York and London

Wenham, L P (1968)
'Excavations in King's Square, York, 1963', *Yorkshire Archaeological Journal* 42, 165-8

Wilson, C and Burton, J (1988)
St Mary's Abbey York, The Yorkshire Museum

YAT (2001)
St. Leonard's Hospital, Museum Street, York: Research Design for an Archaeological Training Excavation (Project Design, unpublished)

YAT (2002)
York Training Excavation 2002: St Leonard's Hospital and Roman Fortress Interval Tower SW6, Museum Street, York (Project Design, unpublished)

Cummin, D. (1972)
'The Garrison City' in Stacpoole A. (ed.) *The Noble City of York*. Cerialis Press, 757-796

English Heritage, (1991)
Exploring Our Past

English Heritage, (1999)
Exploring Our Past 1998: Implementation Plan

English Heritage, (2000)
Power of Place: the future of the historic environment.

Hall, R.A., (1994)
Viking York (London, English Heritage / Batsford)

Hall, R.A., (1996)
York (London, English Heritage / Batsford)

Ordnance Survey 1988. *Viking and Mediaeval York, Historical Map and Guide*

YAT, (2001)
St. Leonard's Hospital, Museum Street, York: